3

REPORT RESUMES

ED 010 460 04

SWAHILI, BASIC COURSE.
BY- STEVICK, EARL W. AND OTHERS
FOREIGN SERVICE INST., WASHINGTON, D.C.
REPORT NUMBER NDEA-VI-332 PUB DATE 63
EDRS PRICE MF-$0.90 HC-$23.56 589P.

DESCRIPTORS- *LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION, *BASIC VOCABULARY, *LINGUISTICS, *TEXTBOOKS, LANGUAGE PATTERNS, GRAMMAR, STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS, COURSE ORGANIZATION, INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS, *SWAHILI, DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA

A COURSE IN STANDARD SWAHILI, A LANGUAGE SPOKEN IN MOST OF EAST AFRICA, WAS DESIGNED FOR USE IN THREE GENERAL TYPES OF STUDY--(1) A FULL-TIME LANGUAGE PROGRAM OF 30 HOURS PER WEEK, (2) A LANGUAGE PROGRAM FOR ONE OR MORE PART-TIME STUDENTS WHO ATTEND CLASS FOR 3 TO 6 HOURS PER WEEK, AND (3) INDIVIDUAL STUDY. TAPE RECORDINGS ARE DESIGNED TO ACCOMPANY THE COURSES, AND A BRIEF DIALOG AND A SERIES OF SHORT EXERCISES COMPRISE THE 150 UNITS. (RS)

ED010460

332

REIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

SWAHILI

U. S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION AND WELFARE
Office of Education
This document has been reproduced exactly as received from the person or organization originating it. Points of view or opinions stated do not necessarily represent official Office of Education position or policy.

BASIC COURSE

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

SWAHILI

BASIC COURSE

This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

E. W. STEVICK J. G. MLELA F. N. NJENGA

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1963

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
CARLETON T. HODGE

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington 25, D.C. - Price $3.00

P R E F A C E

This text is a part of the Foreign Service Institute's program in the preparation of teaching materials for certain ofthe most important languages of Sub-Saharan Africa. It has been produced under an agreement with the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, under the National Defense Education Act. The course is intended for general use by speakers of English of many occupational backgrounds who are living or expect to live in the areas were Swahili is used.

The Swahili sentences in this course were provided by E. J. Kazi and Johannes G. Mlela of Tanganyika, and by Frederick H. Njenga of Kenya. The linguist in charge was Earl W. Stevick, Coordinator of the Special African Language Program. Anicet Nkwabi and Daudi Ballali of Tanganyika, and John Ngumbi of Kenya assisted in the teaching and checked the original version of the manuscript. The original was also sent for verification to United States Foreign Service posts in Swahili-speaking areas, and Unit 1 - 80 were kindly checked by a representative of the East African Swahili Committee.

Suggestions from all the above mentioned sources have been used in the preparation of the present edition. Where there appeared to be clear disagreement among two or more critics of the original draft, the alternative wordings have usually been indicated in the text. The Foreign Service Institute, while gratefully acknowledging the generous help of the many readers of the earlier version, takes full responsibility for the present edition.

The recordings which accompany the text were made in the Foreign Service Institute Language Laboratory, under the supervision of Gabriel Cordova.

HE Sollenberger

Howard E. Sollenberger, Dean
School of Language and Area Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State

PRECEDING PAGE BLANK-NOT FILMED

Introduction

Swahili Basic Course aims first of all at assisting the student to develop ability in understanding and speaking everyday Swahili of a standard variety. On the basis of well-established speech habits, he can then go on with relatively high efficiency to the further skills of reading and writing.

The course is designed for use in any of three general types of study situation: (1) a full-time language program of thirty or more hours per week, (2) a language program in which one or more part-time students attend class for three to six hours per week, and (3) (much the least desirable) individual study in the absence of any speaker of the language.

In any of these situations, the class should be guided in such a way that it concentrates on one small task at a time. For this reason, the 150 units of the course are comparatively short. Each unit is in turn divided into a brief dialogue (with notes) and a series of short exercises. The dialogues and exercises are further broken up into individual lines. In most of the exercises, there is a further division into two or three columns. The word or phrase at the left is called the 'cue.' The sentence in the next column is the 'desired response' to that cue. In those exercises having a third column in Swahili, the sentence in the second column is intended to serve as a secondary cue, and the corresponding sentence in the third column is the desired response to it.

In teaching with these materials, it is suggested that the instructor emphasize the following activities:

With dialogues:

1. Individual and group repetition of the dialogue line-by-line, immediately after the instructor. Books should be closed at first, so that the students may become accustomed to depending on their ears. The instructor may correct errors by repeating the mispronounced word as it should have been said.

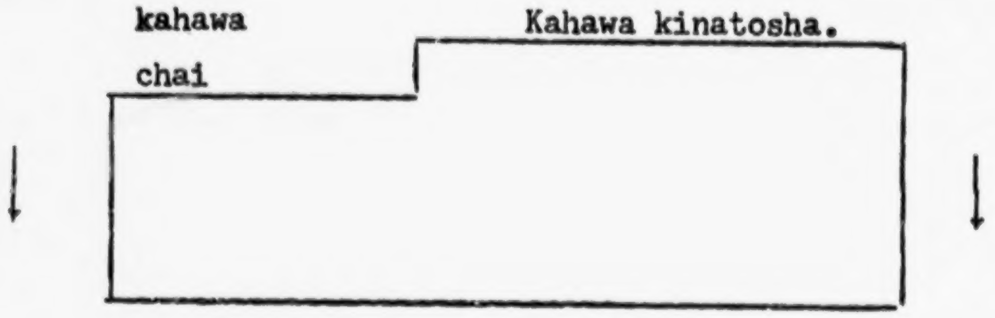
2. When the students are able to repeat the lines of the dialogue correctly, they should open their books. The instructor reads the dialogue and the class repeats, line-by-line, at the same time following with their eyes the printed words.
3. After going through the dialogue two or three times in this way, students should take turns reading aloud.
4. Finally, students should close their books, and practice assuming one of the roles in the dialogue until they are able to do it from memory—without mistakes.

With exercises:

1. Students repeat after the instructor the 'desired response' sentences of the exercise.
2. The instructor gives only the 'cue' for each line. Individual students give the desired responses.

It should be noted that very little English is needed in any of these activities. In fact, the instructor or the student who finds that more than 20% of the words he uses in class are in English, may be sure that he is proceeding with less than maximum efficiency.

For individual study, tape recordings of the dialogues and the exercises are available. It is also suggested that while practicing the exercises, the student make use of a notched card which can be slid down the page as he goes along. As soon as he has given his own response to a particular cue word or phrase, he slides the card down to reveal the answer, thus receiving immediate confirmation or correction of his own reply. At the same time, the next cue word or phrase appears in the notch:



(cf. Unit 17, Exercise 2B.)

Rate of progress and total achievement, then, should be measured in terms of answers given to the following questions:

Concerning each dialogue:

Level 1. Can the student repeat the dialogue accurately, line-by-line, after the instructor, with book closed?

Level 2. Can the student read the dialogue aloud independently of the instructor, with excellent pronunciation and intonation?

Level 3. Can the student take any role in the dialogue, without hesitation or mistakes, book closed?

Concerning each exercise:

Level 1. Can the student repeat the Swahili sentences of the dialogue accurately, line-by-line, after the instructor?

Level 2. Can the student give the Swahili sentence after hearing the Swahili cue word, or the English translation, with his book closed?

General Hints to the Instructor

1. When you speak to a student, look directly at him, and insist that he speak directly to you when he replies.

2. Don't spend too long with one student; if a student continues to make the same mistake after three or four tries, go on to another student. Later, come back to the student who made the error.

3. The students should learn to understand and speak Swahili at a normal rate of speed. For this reason, do not speak to them more slowly or clearly than the slowest and clearest style in which you might speak with another speaker of Swahili.

4. The students' books should be closed about 80% of the time in class.

5. Don't try to explain how the language works: teach the language, not the grammar.

6. Emphasize:

hearing before *understanding*,
hearing and understanding before *repetition*,
repetition before *independent production*,
speaking before *reading and writing*.

The Pronunciation of Swahili

The pronunciation of Swahili varies slightly from one geographical area to another. In addition, since most speakers of Swahili have learned it after first learning some other language, there are noticeable discrepancies among the speech of persons with different national or tribal backgrounds. The following notes do not attempt to set forth any of these variations but only to indicate those points which are essential to an intelligible and widely acceptable pronunciation of the language.

The standard treatment of this subject is A. N. Tucker and E. O. Ashton, *Swahili Phonetics* (Johannesburg: University of the Witwatersrand Press, 1942). It consists of bound reprints of two major articles which appeared originally in *African Studies* for that year.

Vowels. There are five vowels.

Letter	*Description*	*Examples*
a	When stressed, similar to *a* in *father*, or *o* in (American English) *odd*. Technically: a low central unrounded vowel.	basi 'only' kitabu 'book'
	When unstressed, between *a* of *father* and *u* of *up*. Technically: a slightly raised low central unrounded vowel. Speakers of English must still take care not to 'reduce' the quality of unstressed /a/ as	kusoma 'to need' birika 'water vessel'

much as they would in English.

Letter	Description	Examples
e	Similar to *e* in *bet*. Technically: a lax lower-mid front vowel. Other varieties of this sound have been reported in certain environments, but those allophones are absent from the speech of the two speakers who served as principal sources for this investigation.	kuleta 'to bring' kujenga 'to build' embe 'mango'
i	Roughly similar to the vowel of English *eat*. Technically: a high front unrounded vowel, unglided, and less tense than its nearest English counterpart.	vita 'war' rafiki 'friend'
o	Between the vowels of English *boat* and *bought*. Technically: a lax, lower-mid, back rounded vowel, unglided.	m̀toto 'child' ng'ombe 'ox'
u	Reminiscent of the vowel of English *too*, but lying somewhere between that vowel and the vowel of *took*. Technically, a slightly lowered high-back rounded vowel, unglided.	bure 'free' kuruhusu 'to permit'

Consonants

b, d, j, g These sounds may be pronounced as in English *bow*, *dough*, *Joe*, *go* respectively.

	Technically: Bilabial, alveolar, palatal, and velar voiced stops. When not in combination with a nasal consonant, these sounds are pronounced implosively by most speakers. The sound represented by the letter *j* has little or no affrication.	baba 'father' dada 'sister' jambo 'matter' gogo 'lag'
p, t, ch, k	These sounds may be pronounced as in English *peas*, *tease*, *cheese*, *keys* respectively. Technically: Bilabial, alvealar, palatal, and velar unvoiced stops. The palatal stop has strong affrication. The degree of aspiration associated with these sounds varies. None of the speakers consulted in the preparation of this course has a contrast of aspirated *vs.* unaspirated unvoiced stops, however.	panga 'large knife' tisa '9' chache 'few' kaka 'elder brother'
m, n	These sounds may be pronounced as in English. Technically: There is no noticeable difference between these sounds and the corresponding nasal sounds of English.	mama 'married woman' nene 'fat'
ng'	This sound is pronounced like *ng* in English *sing*. But in English, this sound never occurs at the beginning of a syllable, while in Swahili it always occurs there. Technically: A dorso-velar nasal resonant. Before vowels this sound	ng'ombe 'ox' ngozi 'leather'

	is spelled ng', but before other consonants, it is spelled n.	
ny	As in Spanish cañon, Portuguese nenhum, French gagner. Technically: A palatal nasal. Before vowels, this sound is spelled ny, but before other consonants, it is spelled n.	nyumba 'house' ǹchi 'land, country' ǹje 'outside'
th, dh	These sounds are like the initial sounds of English thin and then, respectively. Technically: Unvoiced and voiced ungrooved dental fricatives.	thelathini '30' kadhalika 'likewise'
s, z,	Like the initial sounds of English sue, zoo, respectively. Technically: Alveolar grooved unvoiced fricatives.	saa 'hour' kuzaa 'to produce offspring'
sh	Like the sound spelled the same way in English she, with accompanying lip-rounding. Technically: An unvoiced palatal grooved fricative. (Note the lack of a voiced counterpart.)	shamba 'farm' kurusha 'to cause to fly'
h	Like the initial sound of English how.	kuhama 'to change residence'

f, v	Like the initial sounds of English *fine*, *vine*, respectively. Technically: Unvoiced and voiced labio-dental fricatives.	kuficha 'to hide' vivu 'idle'
r	This sound is pronounced like the sound written with the same letter in the standard British pronunciation of *very*. It is thus not very different from the sound written *tt* in the common American pronunciation of *witty*. Technically: A voiced apico - alveolar flap.	kuruka 'to fly'
l, w, y	These sounds may be pronounced as in English.	kulala 'to lie down' sawa 'equal' haya 'these'
gh	This is the only Swahili sound that is likely to cause noticeable difficulty for speakers of English. It is made with the back of the tongue against the soft palate, in the same position as for English 'golly.' For English 'g', however, the tongue makes momentary contact with the soft palate, completely cutting off the flow of air. For Swahili *gh*, on the other hand, the back of the tongue does not make contact all the way across the soft palate. Instead, it comes so close to it that the flow of air from the	ghali 'expensive' gharama 'amount of money'

lungs is constricted. This gives rise to audible turbulence, or 'friction.'
Technically: A voiced dorso-velar fricative.

Syllabic Nasals.

In some words in which they precede other consonants, the nasal sounds may be pronounced as separate syllables. In these materials, syllabic nasals are indicated by a grave accent. This seems to be true for n, ny and ng' only when they are at the beginning of a word and when only one vowel comes after them in the word. It is also true of these three nasals that the consonants before which they occur are those which are formed at the same position of articulation as the nasal:

ǹ	ǹne	'four'
ǹy	ǹchi	'land'
ng'	nge	'scorpion' (pronounced ng'ge)

The sound m, on the other hand, may be syllabic in words of any length:

m̀géni	'stranger'
m̀letée	'bring to him'
ham̀júi	'he doesn't know him'

Syllabic and non-syllabic m contrast with one another in:

m̀bóvu	'bad' (personal class singular)
mbóvu	'bad' (N class)

These are not distinguished from one another in the customary spelling of Swahili.

Accent

In general, the next to last syllable of a Swahili word or phrase receives an accent, which consists of a slight increase in loudness, usually with some increase also in length. In those instances where the accent falls on some other syllable, its location is indicated in these materials by an acute accent: lázima 'necessary.'

In Swahili, each vowel counts as a syllable, and in addition, pre-consonantal nasals are sometimes syllabic. These facts must be taken into account in calculating which syllable is the next-to-last. Examples:

	sim̀letéi	'I don't bring to him'
	kukáa	'to stay'
	niliḿpa	'I gave to him'
	kuómba	'to request'
	nám̀na	
or:	naḿna	'kind, sort'
	haḿna	'you don't have'

Word Juncture.

In Swahili, there exist, at least for some speakers, two distinct pronunciations for a number of pairs of expressions which are identical with respect to their vowels and consonants. One such pair of expressions is spelled with the letters:

wafanyaghasia

One of the pronunciations corresponding to these letters means 'they create a disturbance,' while the other means 'rioters.' The most conspicuous difference between them is that in the first, the syllable *fa* is more prominent than it is in the second. In neither pronunciation is *fa* as prominent--as heavily stressed--as the syllable *si*. We may attribute the differing degrees of stress on *fa* to the presence or absence of word boundary, writing the two pronunciations respectively:

wafanya ghasia	'they create a disturbance'
wafanyaghasia	'rioters'

In so doing, of course, we have introduced into our inventory of the Swahili sound system an entity which might be called word juncture.

Some linguists may prefer to do without the word juncture, introducing instead an intermediate degree of stress, which might be called 'secondary.' Morphological word boundaries (for almost all words) would then fall after the first syllable following a primary or secondary stress. *A strictly phonemic* transcription of utterances would then contain no word spaces, and each stress would be marked explicitly.

The lessons in this book do not employ that kind of transcription. Instead, they make use of a pedagogical orthography, which is thought to be most suitable for the use of foreign learners of the language. In it, word space sets apart units (words) which have been established on a non-phonological basis; stress is written only when it does not occur on the next-to-last syllable of a word which has been established on this basis.

A practical writing system, unlike either the phonemic transcription or the pedagogical orthography, can afford to do away with the marking of any and all stresses. It is important not to confound these three types of graphic representation of a language.

Pitch Phenomena.

Swahili, unlike other Bantu languages, is not a tone language. That is to say, there do not exist in the language pairs of words which are identical in their vowels and consonants, but different in musical pitch patterns and in meaning. Swahili does make use of a system of sentence intonation which is comparable to the intonation systems of Indo-European languages, although the details of Swahili sentence intonation are, of course, peculiar to Swahili. This aspect of the language has been discussed in some detail by Mrs. Ashton, and will not be described further here.

E. O. Ashton, Swahili Grammar (Including Intonation) (London: Longmans, 1944).

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

Unit 1 'Routine greeting sequence.' 1

Unit 2 'Midday greetings.' 3

Unit 3 'Routine evening greetings.' 4

Unit 4 'Greetings to a lady.' 5

Unit 5 'Some variants on the greeting routine.' 6

Unit 6 'One more common variant in routine greetings.' 7

Unit 7 'Test' 8

Unit 8 'Breakfast in the dining room of the hotel.' 9

- A. Je at the beginning of a yes-no question.
- B. The subject prefix slot: ni (1 sg.) vs u (2 sg.)
- C. Tafadhali.
- D. Ni as subject or object prefix.

Unit 9 'Breakfast at the hotel, revisited.' 12

Unit 10 'Aramian enters the dining room, in company of his friend Beltrano, who speaks no Swahili.' 14

- A. Subject prefix m̀ (2 plu.).
- B. Subject and object prefix tu (1 plu.).

Unit 11 'Aramian brings his children into the dining room between meals.' 16

- A. Subject prefixes with -na.
- B. Subject and object prefix wa (3 plu.).

Unit 12 'One of the hungry children.' 19

- A. Subject prefix a (3 sg.).
- B. Object prefix m̀ (3 sg.).

Unit 13 'Luncheon or dinner at the New Africa.' 21

- A. Negative prefix ha-.
- B. Combinations of ha with a-, u- and ni-.
- C. The linking word -a.

Page

D. Negative present forms, including change of final *a* of affirmative stem to *i*.

Unit 14 'Afternoon tea.' 27

A. Independent subject pronoun *mimi*.

B. More concerning negative counterparts of the *na* - tense.

Unit 15 'Bread and butter with the tea.' 31

A, B Concord: Various classes of third person subjects.

Unit 16 'Preparing to buy food at the door.' 35

A. 'Applied' or 'prepositional' stem.

B. The N class singular.

C. Affirmative vs. negative forms of a verb with vowel-final root.

D. Concord shown in object prefix, N class.

E. Object prefix for singular of WA class.

F. Concords: N class singular *vs*. plural.

G. Table of animate subject and object prefixes.

H. Literal meaning of *hapana*.

Unit 17 'How are the oranges?' 41

A. (1) A verb with stem final *i* in the affirmative.
(2) An example of the *a*-tense.

B. Concord exemplified in possessives.

C. Concord exemplified with certain adjective stems.

D. Table of concords encountered in preceding lessons.

E. *Si* as negative of *ni*.

Unit 18 'What do we need?' 48

A. Concord exemplified in 'objects' of *na*.

B. Details of concord with certain adjective stems.

C. N concords with adjective stems beginning in a consonant.

D. The VI class.

Unit 19 'Buying at the door.' 52

A. Use of WA class concords for all nouns denoting

Page
living beings.
B. Contrast between mb- and m̀b.
Unit 20 'Where do you live?' 58
A. Adjective used, without antecedent, in a noun position.
B. Demonstratives in h- -o.
Unit 21 'Where is Morogoro from here?' 63
A. Polite yes-no replies in Swahili and English.
Unit 22 'In a village.' 66
A. Demonstratives in hV_1-V_1.
B. The locative stems -ko, -po.
C. Phrases with linking -a used without antecedent.
D. Special form of 3 sg. animate subject prefix with the locative stems.
Unit 23 'Where are you going?' 72
A. The locative suffix -ni.
B. ku- as 'sign of the infinitive.
C. Use of kw in inflected forms with the stem -enda.
Unit 24 'Where has Juma gone?' 76
A. Adjectives which do not take concordial prefixes.
B. Adjective stems preceded by subject prefixes.
C. The me-tense.
D. Use of kw in inflected forms with the stem -isha.
Unit 25 'Gone to pay taxes.' 82
A. -mekwisha plus verb stem.
B. The -ja- negative counterpart of the me-tense.
Unit 26 'Where has Hamisi gone?' 86
A. Regular formation of applied stems.
Unit 27 'Who is that?' 91
A. Use of ku in certain inflected forms of verbs with monosyllabic stems.
Unit 28 'An introduction.' 94
A. Bwana used with given names.

Page

B. Me-forms of certain verbs translated into English with present tense.

C. Na with personal pronoun stems.

Unit 29 'Do you know Mr. _____________?' 96

A. Difference between concords used with m̀ji and m̀jini.

B. Some prepositions.

C. 'Animate' and 'personal' subdivisions of the N class of nouns.

D. Difference between m̀ji and kijiji.

Unit 30 'Mr. Ochieng.' 101

A. Special form (mw) of 3 sg. object prefix before a verb stem that begins with a vowel.

Unit 31 'What kind of work do you do?' 104

A. Noun plus -a plus infinitive.

Unit 32 'You're a farmer, aren't you?' 108

A. Complete sentence consisting of absolute personal pronoun plus noun.

B. Contrast in meaning between -panda and -otesha.

Unit 33 'What do you do with your crops?' 112

A. The adjective ~ingine as an equivalent for both 'some' and 'other.'

Unit 34 'I'm a cook nowadays.' 115

A. Complete sentences consisting of first or second person subject prefix plus noun.

Unit 35 'He's a day laborer.' 118

A. Hu-tense.

B. 'VI-animate' nouns.

C. The word juu.

Unit 36 'Where were you yesterday?' 123

A. Li-tense.

B. Locatives with -ni corresponding to 'at' 'to' 'from' depending on the context.

C. Literal translation of saa ngapi?

Page

Unit 37 'What is your tribal background?' 129
- A. Articulation of *gh*.
- B. Past negative forms with -*ku*-.

Unit 38 'Where have you been?' 133

Unit 39 'Do you speak Luo?' 135
- A. The prefix *ki*- in the names of languages.

Unit 40 'Planning a holiday trip.' 139
- A. *Ta*-tense.

Unit 41 'Getting ready for church.' 147
- A. *Peke y*-
- B. Use of *ijapokuwa*.
- C. Negative of *ta*-tense.
- D. The *mahali* class.
- E. ~*o* ~*ote*.

Unit 42 'Trouble in the kitchen.' 153
- A. Subjunctive forms.
- B. *Lázima* plus subjunctive.

Unit 43 'More trouble in the kitchen.' 158
- A. Neuter stems.
- B. *Afadhali* plus subjunctive.
- C. Negative subjunctive with -*si*-.

Unit 44 'Bicycle trouble.' 163
- A. Some additional pairs of simple and neuter stems.

Unit 45 'Trouble with a pen.' 167
- A. An additional pair of simple and neuter stems.
- B. -*lazimu* plus subjunctive or infinitive.

Unit 46 'I've lost a letter.' 171
- A. Causative stems.

Unit 47 'Broken dishes.' 176

Unit 48 'Lighting the lamp.' 181
- A. Imperative of one verb, followed by subjunctive of a second.

Unit 49 'Lighting the lamp.' 186

Page

Unit 50 'I'm not hungry.' 190
- A. The phrase sasa hivi.

Unit 51 'What grade are you in?' 195
- A. Juu with no possessive following it.
- B. First and second person subject prefixes used with locative stems.

Unit 52 'If you don't drink too much...' 199
- A. The distal demonstratives (-le).
- B. The ki-tense.

Unit 53 'Juma hurt his leg.' 204
- A. Passive stems.
- B. Passive stems formed on roots which contain vowels.
- C. Difference in meaning between -umwa and umia.
- D. The reflexive prefix -ji-.

Unit 54 'Where have you been recently?' 210
- A. Huko with names of places.
- B. Verb phrases in which the first verb is -wa.

Unit 55 'How's the family?' 214
- A. Numerals which take concordial prefixes.
- B. Stating the ages of persons.

Unit 56 'When are you coming to see us?' 218
- A. The days of the week.
- B. The noun baada.

Unit 57 'Where will you go after your leave?' 223
- A. Statements in indirect discourse.

Unit 58 'Why didn't you come to see us?' 227
- A. Concordial agreement involving numeral phrases.

Unit 59 'Is your wife feeling better?' 230
- A. -po- as an equivalent for 'when.'

Unit 60 'The children have coughs.' 234
- A. -faa with 'impersonal prefix.'
- B. The phrase -pa pole.

Unit 61 'I don't feel too well.' 244

Page

Unit 62 'You've hurt your finger!' 247

A. Grammatical subject *vs*. logical subject.

Unit 63 'Late to class.' 250

A. Plural imperative.'

B. *Kitako*.

Unit 64 'Classroom routine.' 254

A. The prefix -*ka*- with subjunctives.

Unit 65 'A letter from a student abroad.' 258

A. The prefix -*ka*- with indicatives.

B. -*tuma* and -*peleka*.

Unit 66 'My parents are going to night school.' 263

Unit 67 'What is it like at night school?' 267

A. Relative counterparts of the *na* and *li*-tenses.

Unit 68 'What about the fees?' 272

A. Relative counterparts of forms with the stem -*na*-.

Unit 69 'A shortage of professional people.' 276

A. Relative counterparts of the *a*-tense.

Unit 70 'A day off.' 280

Unit 71 'Let's visit the farm.' 286

A. Further example of the meaning of -*ka*-.

B. *Hivi* 'about'.

Unit 72 'The farm needs rain and fertilizer.' 290

A. The MU, KU and PA locative concords.

Unit 73 'Should I get a crop loan?' 294

A. Relative affixes in agreement with the objects of verbs.

B. *Ndi*- plus relative affix.

C. Combination of the constructions described in Notes A and B.

D. Concords of VI (plu.) class in expression of manner.

Unit 74 'Farm implements.' 299

A. Locative concord plus possessive stem, with no antecedent.

Page

    B. The spelling of -*ki(i)sha*.
Unit 75 'Times for planting and weeding.' 303
Unit 76 'Boy or Girl?' 307
    A. *Wala* between negatives.
Unit 77 'Prenatal care.' 311
    A. Sequence of verbs joined by *na*.
Unit 78 'Post-natal care.' (cont'd from Unit 77) 314
Unit 79 'When are you getting married?' 317
    A. Relative future forms with -*taka*-.
    B. Two verbs that are followed by subjunctive forms.
Unit 80 'Come along to the wedding!' 321
    A. Relative phrases with *amba*-.
    B. Object affix(es) for second person plural.
Unit 81 'Getting into town from the airport.' 331
    A. The stem ~*enye*.
Unit 82 'A trip to Tanga.' 335
Unit 83 'How much is the basket?' 338
Unit 84 'Settling on a price.' (continued) 341
Unit 85 'Settling on a price.' (concluded) 344
Unit 86 'Buying trousers.' 347
Unit 87 'Settling the price of the trousers.' 350
Unit 88 'Where is the consulate?' 354
Unit 89 'Where is the consulate?' (concluded) 356
Unit 90 'Clothes for the laundryman.' 357
    A. Abstract nouns of the U class.
    B. U class singulars.
Unit 91 'Doing the wash.' 365
    A. Relative counterparts of the *a*-tense.
Unit 92 'A good-looking uniform.' 369
Unit 93 'Making a bed.' 372
    A. A verb with two objects.
    B. -*uliza* plus subjunctive.
    C. -*li* as a verb stem.

Page

Unit 94 'The mosquito net.' 376
  A. *Pa* as a subject prefix.
Unit 95 'A guest is coming for dinner!' 380
  A. Concord with a noun having the prefix *ku*.
Unit 96 'At the table.' 383
  A. Concord with two or more nouns.
  B. ~*ake* with an inanimate plural antecedent.
Unit 97 'Washing dishes.' 387
  A. The subjunctive with *ili*.
Unit 98 'Caring for the lawn.' 391
  A. The reciprocal suffix.
Unit 99 'Trials of a baby-sitter.' 395
  A. The verb -*ruhusu* with infinitive or subjunctive.
Unit 100 'Trials of a baby-sitter.' (continued) 398
Unit 101 'Riding a bicycle on the streets.' 407
  A. 'Next' and 'last' with units of time.
Unit 102 'Conditions of employment.' 410
Unit 103 'Conditions of employment.' (continued) 414
  A. The stem ~*ote* 'all.'
Unit 104 'Rearranging the furniture.' 418
  A. Negative relative present verbs.
  B. The 'reversive' suffix.
Unit 105 'Planning a trip by car.' 422
Unit 106 'Planning a trip by car.' (continued) 426
Unit 107 'In a shoe store.' 429
Unit 108 'In a shoe store.' (continued) 432
Unit 109 'In a shoe store.' (continued) 436
  A. The negative word *wala*.
Unit 110 'I live in the country.' 440
Unit 111 'I live in the country.' (continued) 445
  A. Further examples of *pa* concords.
  B. The verb prefix -*nga*-.
Unit 112 'You'd better not go hunting without a license.' 451

Page

Unit 113 'You'd better not go hunting without a license.' (continued) 454
Unit 114 'Time to get up.' 457
Unit 115 'Time to get up.' (continued) 460
Unit 116 'Time to get up.' (continued) 464
Unit 117 'Where does the highway go?' 468
Unit 118 'Footpaths can be dangerous.' 471
Unit 119 'Footpaths can be dangerous.' (continued) 475
Unit 120 'Footpaths can be dangerous.' (continued) 478
Unit 121 'Fetching water.' 482
Unit 122 'Planning a hunting expedition.' 485
Unit 123 'May I go along?' 489
Unit 124 'Hunting.' 493
Unit 125 'Hunting.' (continued) 497
Unit 126 'Hospitali za mjini.' 504
Unit 127 'Hospitali za mjini.' (continued) 505
Unit 128 'Hospitali za mjini.' (continued) 506
Unit 129 'Uuzaji wa vyakula sokoni.' 507
Unit 130 'Uuzaji wa vyakula sokoni.' (continued) 508
Unit 131 'Uuzaji wa vyakula sokoni.' (continued) 510
Unit 132 'Uuzaji wa vyakula sokoni.' (continued) 511
Unit 133 'Uuzaji wa vyakula sokoni.' (continued) 512
Unit 134 'Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam.' 513
Unit 135 'Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam.' (continued) 514
Unit 136 'Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam.' (continued) 516
Unit 137 'Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam.' (continued) 517
Unit 138 'Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam.' (continued) 519
Unit 139 'Duka la nguo.' 520
Unit 140 'Duka la nguo.' (continued) 521
Unit 141 'Duka la nguo.' (continued) 523
Unit 142 'Duka la nguo.' (continued) 524
Unit 143 'Duka la nguo.' (continued) 525
Unit 144 'Watu wazima na maendeleo.' 526
Unit 145 'Watu wazima na maendeleo.' (continued) 528

		Page
Unit 146	'Watu wazima na maendeleo.' (continued)	529
Unit 147	'Watu wazima na maendeleo.' (continued)	531
Unit 148	'Safari ya kwenda bara.'	532
Unit 149	'Safari ya kwenda bara.' (continued)	534
Unit 150	'Safari ya kwenda bara.' (continued)	536
Glossary		538

Unit 1

1. Basic Dialogue. Routine greeting sequence.

Mutisya

jambo (MA)	matter, affair
bwana	master, sir, Mr.
Jambo, bwana.	Hello! (said to a man)

Sangai

Jambo.	Hello!
habari (N)	news
-a	of
asubuhi (N)	morning
Habari za asubuhi?	How are you this morning?

Mutisya

~ema	good
Njema.	Fine. ('good')
or	
Habari njema.	Fine. ('good news')

Notes

A. This is an exchange of greetings between two men between the hours of daybreak and noon. Mr. Mutisya is a member of the Wakamba tribe, of Kenya. Sangai is a member of the Wabondei tribe, of Tanganyika.

B. Note that the first sound of *jambo* is not quite the same as the usual English pronunciation of the first consonant in *Jim*.

C. Note that in each word it is the next-to-last syllable that is accented. For that reason, we will not need to mark accented syllables in Swahili except in the very few words which violate the rule.

D. The symbols (MA) and (N) which follow certain words in the build-ups will be explained in Unit 15.

Unit 2

1. Basic Dialogue. Midday greetings.

Sangai	
hujambo	you have no affair/trouble?
Hujambo, bwana.	Hello! (said to a man)
Mutisya	
sijambo	I have no affair/trouble
Sijambo.	(reply to *Hujambo*.)
m̀chana	daytime
Habari za m̀chana?	How are you today?
Sangai	
Njema.	Fine.

Notes

A. Greeting at any time of day may begin either with *jambo* or with *hujambo*. The replies to each are as shown in Units 1 and 2. *Jambo* is an abbreviation of *hujambo*.

B. In pronouncing the word *m̀chana*, do not produce a vowel sound either before or immediately after the *m̀*.

C. The greeting with *m̀chana* may be used at any time during the daylight, but particularly in the middle part of the day.

Unit 3

1. Basic Dialogue. Routine evening greetings.

Sangai

Jambo, bwana.	Hello (sir) !

Mirambo

Jambo, bwana.	Hello (sir) !
usiku (U)	night
Habari za jioni?	How are you this evening?
or	
Habari za usiku?	

Sangai

Habari njema.	Fine!

Notes

A. These simple perfunctory greetings (Units 1-7) are those which would be used by people who see each other almost every day.

B. Be sure you have not been pronouncing the last *a* in *bwana* and *njema*, and the first *a* in *habari*, like the last vowel sound in English *sofa* or the first in English *above*. The quality of both vowels in *bwana* and the first two vowels in *habari* should be practically identical. Speakers of English are particularly likely to 'reduce' such vowels when they are in unstressed syllables.

C. Mr. Mirambo is a member of the Nyamwezi tribe (Western Tanganyika).

Unit 4

1. Basic Dialogue. Greetings to a lady.

Hamisi

mama	mother
Hujambo, mama.	Hello (ma'am)!

Mrs. Mirambo

Sijambo.	(reply to *Hujambo*)
Habari za asubuhi?	How are you this morning?

Hamisi

Njema.	Fine!

Notes

A. Some people may use *bibi* 'lady' in place of *mama* in the above exchange. *Mama* is used only to middle-aged or older women; its basic meaning is 'mother.' *Bibi* is a more general word, but in some parts of the Swahili - speaking area, it has lost its flavor of respectability.

Unit 5

1. Basic Dialogue. Some variants on the greeting routine.

Mirambo	
Jambo, bwana.	Hello (sir)!
Sangai	
Sijambo.	(another reply to *jambo*)
Habari za m̀chana?	How are you today? ('News of daytime?')
Mirambo	
~zuri	good, beautiful
Nzuri.	Fine. ('good')
or	
Habari nzuri.	Fine. ('good news')

Notes

A. The new expressions in this exchange are interchangeable with their counterparts in the preceding units. In some parts of East Africa, the word *nzuri* is preferred to *njema* in these contexts.

Unit 6

1. Basic Dialogue. One more common variant in routine greetings.

Sangai

Hujambo, bwana.	Hello!

Mirambo

sana	very much
Sijambo sana.	(Another reply)
gani?	what kind of?
Habari gani?	How are you? ('What kind of news?')

Sangai

Habari njema.	Fine.

Notes

A. The questions in Units 5 and 6 may be combined to give:

Habari gani za m̀chana?	('What kind of news of daytime?')

The answer of course remains the same.

Unit 7

Test. Listen to the following dialogues. After each, summarize it by specifying the sex of the person spoken to, and the time of day or night.

Hujambo, bwana.
Sijambo.
Habari za m̀chana?
Nzuri.

Jambo, bwana.
Sijambo bwana.
Habari gani za asubuhi?
Nzuri, bwana.

Jambo, mama.
Jambo, bwana.
Habari za asubuhi?
Njema.

Jambo, bwana.
Jambo.
Habari za usiku?
Habari njema.

Unit 8

1. Basic Dialogue. Breakfast in the dining room of the hotel.

Waiter

je	well!/tell me! (used here to introduce the yes-no question)
-taka	to want
unataka	you want
chakula (VI)	food
Je, unataka chakula?	Would you like [some] food?

Aramian

ndiyo	that is it
Ndiyo, bwana.	Yes, please.
kuna	there is
gani?	what kind?
Kuna chakula gani?	What kind of food is there?

Waiter

tunda (MA)	a piece of fruit
matunda	fruit
na	and
uji (U)	thin porridge/gruel
yai (MA)	egg
mayai	eggs
Kuna matunda na uji na mayai.	There is fruit, gruel, and eggs.

Aramian

tafadhali	please
-letea	to bring for/to
niletee	bring me
Tafadhali, niletee mayai.	Please bring me [some] eggs.

Notes

A. *Je* at the beginning of a yes-no question.

The word *je* is used at the beginning of a question to focus the hearer's attention. In this way it is somewhat comparable to English *Say!* *Je* is not necessary in yes-no questions.

B. The subject prefix slot: *ni* (1 sg.) *vs.* *u* (2 sg.).

Compare the forms:

unataka	'you want'
ninataka	'I want'

The syllables *u*- and *ni*- are 'subject prefixes' partly corresponding to the English subject pronouns you (sg.) and I.

C. *Tafadhali*.

Though we have given *please* as a rough English equivalent of *tafadhali*, the latter is used in Swahili less often than *please* is used in English.

D. *Ni* as subject or object prefix.

Compare the forms:

ninataka	'I want'
niletee	'bring me'

In both forms, the syllable *ni*- is a first person singular prefix standing for *I* or *me*. In the form which ends with *-e* it stands for the object (*me*).

E. The form *kipo* is used in some parts of East Africa where in this dialogue we have used *kuna*.

2. Substitutions in single sentences.

A. Je, unataka ________?

chakula	Je, unataka chakula?	Do you want food?
mayai	Je, unataka mayai?	Do you want eggs?
matunda	Je, unataka matunda?	Do you want fruit?
chakula	Je, unataka chakula?	Do you want food?

B. Tafadhali, niletee ________.

mayai	Tafadhali, niletee mayai.	Please bring me eggs.
matunda	Tafadhali, niletee matunda.	Please bring me fruit.
mayai	Tafadhali, niletee mayai.	Please bring me eggs.
uji	Tafadhali, niletee uji.	Please bring me porridge.
chakula	Tafadhali, niletee chakula.	Please bring me food.

3. Substitution in sets of sentences.

uji	Kuna chakula gani?	What kind of food is there?
	Kuna uji.	There is gruel.
	Unataka uji?	Do you want gruel?
	Ndiyo. Niletee uji.	Yes. Bring me gruel.
matunda	Kuna chakula gani?	What kind of food is there?
	Kuna matunda.	There is fruit.
	Unataka matunda?	Do you want fruit?
	Ndiyo. Niletee matunda.	Yes, bring me fruit.
mayai	Kuna chakula gani?	What kind of food is there?
	Kuna mayai.	There are eggs.
	Unataka mayai?	Do you want eggs?
	Ndiyo. Niletee mayai.	Yes, bring me eggs.

Unit 9

1. Basic dialogue. Breakfast at the hotel, revisited.

Waiter

Je, unataka matunda?	Would you like ('do you want') some fruit?

Aramian

Ndiyo, bwana.	Yes, [I would] (sir).
Kuna matunda gani?	What kind of fruit is there?
ndizi (N)	banana/bananas
Kuna ndizi?	Are there [any] bananas?

Waiter

chungwa (MA)	orange
machungwa	oranges
embe (MA)	mango
maembe	mangoes
Kuna ndizi na machungwa na maembe.	There are bananas and oranges and mangoes.

Aramian

-moja	one
Tafadhali, niletee chungwa moja.	Please bring me one orange.

Notes

N. B. In some parts of East Africa, the plural of embe 'mango' is embe (N).

2. Kuna __________?

A.

	Kuna machungwa?	Are there any oranges?
ndizi	Kuna ndizi?	Are there any bananas?

maembe matunda uji chakula mayai

B. Kuna __________ na __________.

	Kuna ndizi na maembe.	There are bananas and mangoes.
uji	Kuna maembe na uji.	There are mangoes and gruel.
matunda	Kuna matunda na mayai.	There is fruit and eggs.
ndizi	Kuna mayai na ndizi.	There are eggs and bananas.

3. Substitutions in sequences of sentences.

Kuna matunda gani?

Kuna maembe na ndizi.

Niletee ndizi.

Substitute various combinations of names of fruits in this conversation.

Unit 10

1. Basic dialogue. Aramian enters the dining room, in company of his friend Beltrano, who speaks no Swahili.

Waiter

karibu	near
Karibu.	Come in.

Aramian

-starehe	to be at rest
asante	thank you
Starehe, starehe, asante.	Don't trouble. Thank you.

Waiter

m̀nataka	you (pl.) want
M̀nataka chakula?	Do you want food?

Aramian

tuletee	bring us
Ndiyo, tafadhali tuletee matunda.	Yes, please bring us some fruit.

Notes

A. Subject prefix m̀ (2 plu.).

Compare the forms

ninataka	I want
unataka	you (sg.) want
m̀nataka	you (pl.) want

The subject pronoun for second person plural is m̀-. Be careful not to pronounce a vowel between the m and the n in m̀nataka. Be careful also not to pronounce a vowel before the m.

B. Subject and object prefix *tu* (1 plu.).

Compare the forms:

niletee	bring me
tuletee	bring us

The object (and subject) pronoun for first person plural (*we*, *us*) is *tu-*.

2. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. First vs. second person, singular and plural.

A.	Unataka chakula?	Ndiyo. Niletee matunda.
	Ṁnataka chakula?	Ndiyo. Tuletee matunda.
B.	Unataka matunda?	Ndiyo. Niletee ndizi.
	Ṁnataka matunda?	Ndiyo. Tuletee ndizi.
C.	Ninataka chakula.	Unataka chakula gani?
	Tunataka chakula.	Ṁnataka chakula gani?
D.	Niletee matunda.	Unataka matunda gani?
	Tuletee matunda.	Ṁnataka matunda gani?

3. Free conversation. A goes into the dining room for breakfast. B is his waiter. A is joined by his friend C.

Unit 11

1. Basic dialogue. Aramian brings his children into the dining room between meals.

Aramian

watoto	children
m̂toto (WA)	child
~angu	my
wangu	my
wana	they have
njaa (N)	hunger
Watoto wangu wana njaa.	My children are hungry.
m̂na	you have
M̂na chakula?	Have you anything to eat? ('do you have food')

Waiter

tuna	we have
m̂kate (MI)	bread
Ndiyo. Tuna matunda na m̂kate.	Yes, we have [some] fruit and [some] bread.

Aramian

waletee	bring them
Tafadhali, waletee m̂kate.	Please bring them some bread.

Notes

A. Subject prefixes with -*na*.

Compare the forms:

na	and, with
tuna	we have
m̀na	you (pl.) have
wana	they (animate) have
kuna	there is

A more literal translation for *tuna* is *we with*.

B. Subject and object prefix *wa* (3 plu.).

The prefixes *tu*- and *m̀* are familiar from Unit 10. The prefix *wa*- is used for third person plural, animate subjects and objects.

2. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A.

Watoto wana chakula gani?	What kind of food do the children have?
Wana m̀kate.	They have bread.
M̀na chakula gani?	Tuna m̀kate.
Una chakula gani?	Nina m̀kate.

(etc., the above to be repeated in random order as long as needed.)

B.

Nina njaa.	Niletee chakula.
Tuna njaa.	Tuletee chakula.
Watoto wana njaa.	Waletee chakula.

3. Substitution in sequences of sentences.

A. Wana njaa.

Wanataka chakula gani?

Wanataka matunda.

For the first word in this conversation, substitute *nina*, and continue the conversation accordingly. Do the same with tuna. Use other words in place of matunda.

Unit 12

1. Basic dialogue. One of the hungry children.

Mutisya

Hamisi	given name (male)
ana	he/she has
Je, Hamisi ana njaa?	Is Hamisi hungry?

Aramian

Ndiyo.	Yes, he is.

Mutisya

Anataka m̀kate na uji?	Would he like [some] bread and porridge?

Aramian

tu	only
basi	that is all (an interjection)
M̀letee m̀kate tu, basi.	Just bring him some bread.

Mutisya

vizuri	good (things)
Vizuri.	Very well.

Notes

A. Subject prefix a (3 sg.).

Compare the forms:

una njaa	you are hungry
ana njaa	he/she is hungry

The subject prefix for third person singular of animate nouns is a-.

B. Object prefix m̊ (3 sg.).

Compare the forms:

tuletee m̊kate	bring us some bread
m̊letee m̊kate	bring him/her some bread

The object prefix for third person singular of animate nouns is m̊-.

2. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Hamisi _______ ana machungwa.	Hamisi has some oranges.
Watoto _______ wana machungwa.	The children have some oranges.
B. Hamisi _______ anataka m̊kate.	Hamisi wants some bread.
Watoto _______ wanataka m̊kate.	The children want some bread.
C. Ana njaa.	M̊letee chakula.
Wana njaa.	Waletee chakula.
Nina njaa.	Niletee chakula.
Tuna njaa.	Tuletee chakula.

3. Free conversation.

Aramian brings his hungry children into the dining room. He orders food from the waiter. The children chime in, but Aramian knows that their eyes are bigger than their stomachs.

Unit 13

1. Basic dialogue. Luncheon or dinner at the New Africa.

Waiter

supu (N)	soup
Unataka supu?	Are you having the soup? ('Do you want soup?')

Aramian

Ndiyo, tafadhali niletee.	Yes. Please bring me [it].

(after the soup)

Waiter

samaki (N or N-animate)	fish
Unataka samaki?	Will you have the fish? ('Do you want fish?')

Aramian

sitaki	I do not want
la	no
La, sitaki.	No, I don't want [it].
nyama (N)	meat
sasa	now
Tafadhali niletee nyama sasa.	Please bring me the meat now.
leo	today
Kuna nyama gani leo?	What kind of meat is there today?

Waiter

ng'ombe (N-animate)	cow, ox
Kuna nyama ya ng'ombe.	There is beef.

Aramian

hakuna	there is not
nguruwe (N-animate)	pig
Hakuna nyama ya nguruwe?	Isn't there any pork?

Waiter

La, bwana. Tuna nyama ya ng'ombe tu, basi.	No, we have beef only.

Notes

A. Negative prefix *ha-*.

Compare the forms:

kuna	there is
hakuna	there is not

Most negative verb forms in Swahili begin with the negative prefix *ha-*. Whenever this prefix is used, it always stands at the very beginning of the word, before other kinds of prefixes like *tu-*.

B. Combinations of *ha* with *a-*, *u-* and *ni-*.

Compare the forms:

Affirmative	kuna	tuna	wana	ṁna
Negative	hakuna	hatuna	hawana	haṁna

In these, the negative is simply *ha-*, followed by the corresponding affirmative form. The affirmative forms all begin with consonants.

Affirmative	ana	una
Negative	hana	huna

Here, the affirmative forms begin with vowels. The negative forms consist of h- followed by the affirmative forms. The -a of the negative prefix is said to have been elided.

Affirmative	nina
Negative	sina

Here, where one might expect a negative hani-, the form which actually occurs is si-.

C. The linking word -a.

In the form

nyama ya ng'ombe	beef (lit. cow-meat)

the word ya is used to link the main word nyama and its satellite ng'ombe. Note that the main word comes first. Ya is sometimes translated by English of.

D. Negative present forms, including change of final a of affirmative stem to i.

Compare the forms:

ninataka	I want
sitaki	I don't want

Again, the negative of a form that begins with ni begins with si.

Note also that where the affirmative ends with -a, the negative ends with -i.

2. Substitution in single sentences.

A. Hakuna ______ leo.

supu	Hakuna supu leo.	There is no soup today.
nyama	Hakuna nyama leo.	There is no meat today.

m̂kate samaki maembe

B. Watoto hawana ______.

supu	Watoto hawana supu.	The children have no soup.

njaa	Watoto hawana njaa.	The children are not hungry.

ndizi chakula nyama

C. Hamisi hana _______.

matunda	Hamisi hana matunda.	Hamisi has no fruit.
machungwa	Hamisi hana machungwa.	Hamisi has no oranges.

m̀kate njaa ndizi

D. Ham̀na _______?

nyama	Ham̀na nyama?	Don't you have any meat?
m̀kate	Ham̀na m̀kate?	Don't you have any bread?

samaki maembe chakula

E. Hatuna _______.

ndizi	Hatuna ndizi.	We have no bananas.
chakula	Hatuna chakula.	We have no food.

njaa matunda uji

F. Huna _______?

njaa	Huna njaa?	Aren't you hungry?
m̀kate	Huna m̀kate?	Have you no bread?

machungwa chakula ndizi

G. Sina _______.

ndizi	Sina ndizi.	I don't have any bananas.
nyama	Sina nyama.	I don't have any meat.

samaki m̀kate chakula

H. Sitaki _______.

chakula	Sitaki chakula.	I don't want any food.

uji	Sitaki uji.	I don't want any porridge.

matunda nyama samaki

I. Hatutaki _______.

samaki	Hatutaki samaki.	We don't want any fish.
m̀kate	Hatutaki m̀kate.	We don't want any bread.

maembe ndizi machungwa

J. Negative of -na *vs.* negative of -taka. (1-2, 2-1)

Hatuna machungwa.	Hatutaki machungwa.
Hawana machungwa.	Hawataki machungwa.
Hana machungwa.	Hataki machungwa.
Sina machungwa.	Sitaki machungwa.
Huna machungwa?	Hutaki machungwa?
Ham̀na machungwa?	Ham̀taki machungwa?

K. Affirmative *vs.* negative, -taka, no person change.

Tunataka m̀kate.	Hatutaki uji.
Wanataka m̀kate.	Hawataki uji.
Anataka m̀kate.	Hataki uji.
Ninataka m̀kate.	Sitaki uji.

L. Affirmative *vs.* negative, -taka, with person change.

Wanataka samaki?	La, hawataki.
Anataka samaki?	La, hataki.
Unataka samaki?	La, sitaki.
M̀nataka samaki?	La, hatutaki.

3. Substitutions in sequences of sentences. Replace any of the underlined parts.

A.

X. Watoto wana nyama?

Y. Hawana nyama.

Wana supu.

B.

X. Hamisi anataka m̀kate?

Y. La, hataki m̀kate.

Anataka nyama.

Unit 14

1. Basic dialogue. Afternoon tea.

Waiter

chai (N)	tea
kahawa (N)	coffee
au	or
Ṁnataka chai, au kahawa?	Do you want tea, or coffee?

Aramian

Tafadhali, tuletee chai.	Please bring us some tea.

Waiter

sukari (N)	sugar
maziwa (plu. MA)	milk
Ṁnataka sukari na maziwa?	Do you want milk and sugar?

Aramian

rafiki (N-personal)	friend
yangu	my
-tumia	to use
anatumia	he uses
Ndiyo. Rafiki yangu anatumia sukari na maziwa.	Yes, please. My friend uses milk and sugar.
lakini	but
mimi	I
Lakini mimi, ninatumia maziwa tu, basi.	But I use only milk.

Notes

A. Independent subject pronoun *mimi*.

Compare the sentences:

Ninatumia sukari.	I use sugar.
Mimi, ninatumia sukari.	[as for me], *I* use sugar.

Swahili has a set of subject pronouns which are separate words, and not just prefixes. *Mimi* is one of them. But these pronouns are used as subjects of verbs for emphasis. They are also used when the verb form is in a tense that does not have subject prefixes. The complete set is as follows:

	sg.	plu.
1.	mimi	sisi
2.	wewe	ninyi
3.	yeye	wao

B. More concerning negative counterparts of the na-tense.
Compare the forms:

tunatumia	anatumia	ninatumia
hatutumii	hatumii	situmii

The combinations of *ha*- with the subject prefixes are represented in exactly the same way as in the forms studied in Unit 13.

The affirmative forms in this tense have the tense-sign -*na*- between the subject prefix and the root. In the negative forms, the root follows directly after the subject prefix:

tu - na - tumi - a

ha - tu - - tumi - i

Again, the affirmative forms end with -*a*, while the corresponding negative forms end with -*i*.

2. Substitution in single sentences. Substitute each item, *in the order given*, in the sentence that precedes.

A. Na - present, 3 sg. subject. ↓

	Hamisi anatumia sukari.	Hamisi uses sugar.
anataka	Hamisi anataka sukari.	Hamisi wants sugar.
rafiki	Rafiki yangu anataka sukari.	My friend wants sugar.
maziwa	Rafiki yangu anataka maziwa.	My friend wants milk.
sukari	Rafiki yangu anataka sukari.	My friend wants sugar.
anatumia	Rafiki yangu anatumia sukari.	My friend uses sugar.
watoto	Watoto wanatumia sukari.	The children use sugar.

B. Negative present, 3 sg. subject. ↓

	Hamisi hataki sukari.	Hamisi doesn't want sugar.
hatumii	Hamisi hatumii sukari.	Hamisi doesn't use sugar.
maziwa	Hamisi hatumii maziwa.	Hamisi doesn't use milk.
rafiki	Rafiki yangu hatumii maziwa.	My friend doesn't use milk.
sukari	Rafiki yangu hatumii sukari.	My friend doesn't use sugar.
hataki	Rafiki yangu hataki sukari.	My friend doesn't want sugar.

3. Matching parts of paired sentences, affirmative *vs.* negative.

A. No change of person.

'I use sugar'	'I don't use milk'
Ninatumia sukari.	Situmii maziwa.
Tunatumia sukari.	Hatutumii maziwa.
Hamisi anatumia sukari.	Hatumii maziwa.
Watoto wanatumia sukari.	Hawatumii maziwa.

B. With change of person.

'Do you use milk?'	'No, I don't use [it].'
Unatumia maziwa?	La, situmii.
M̂natumia maziwa?	La, hatutumii.
Hamisi anatumia maziwa?	La, hatumii.
Watoto wanatumia maziwa?	La, hawatumii.

C. Negative vs. affirmative, with change of person.

'I don't use milk'	'Do you use sugar?'
Situmii maziwa.	Unatumia sukari?
Hatutumii maziwa.	M̂natumia sukari?
Hamisi hatumii maziwa.	Anatumia sukari?
Watoto hawatumii maziwa.	Wanatumia sukari?

4. Free conversation.

Aramian brings his children down for their afternoon tea.

Unit 15

1. Basic dialogue. Bread and butter with the tea.

Waiter

-tosha	to be sufficient
M̀kate unatosha, bwana?	Is there enough bread, sir? ('does the bread suffice?')

Aramian

sana	very much
Ndiyo, unatosha sana.	Oh, yes, there's plenty. ('it suffices very much')
siagi (N)	butter
kwa	by, with, at
Lakini siagi haitoshi kwa m̀kate.	But there's not enough butter for the bread.
Tafadhali niletee siagi.	Please bring me [some] butter.

Waiter

vema	good
Vema.	Very good, [sir].

Notes

A. Concord: Various classes of third person subjects.

Compare the phrases:

Hamisi anataka . . .	Hamisi wants . . .
m̀kate unatosha	the bread is sufficient
nyama inatosha	the meat is sufficient

The subjects of all three verbs are 'third person singular', but the subject prefixes are all different. The subject words, with the subject pronouns that follow them, are:

Hamisi	a-
m̀kate	u-
nyama	i-

and other combinations like nyama unatosha or Hamisi inataka are forbidden. This obligatory relationship between subject and subject prefix is an example of 'concordial agreement', or 'concord'.

B. Concord: Various classes of third person subjects.

Here is a list of most of the nouns used so far, together with the subject prefixes which agree with them:

m̀kate	u-	bread
uji	u-	thin porridge

----

matunda	ya-	fruit
maembe		mangoes
mayai		eggs
machungwa		oranges
maziwa		milk

Note that all words in this group begin with ma-, and that the first four are plural or collective in meaning, while the last is the name of a liquid.

chakula	ki-	food
siagi	i-	butter
nyama	i-	meat
chai	i-	tea
kahawa	i-	coffee

Note that these words have no obvious prefix in common. In meaning, none is a plural.

ndizi	zi-	bananas

This word is a plural.

2. Substitutions in single sentences. (Concord of noun subject and subject prefix.)

A. ---------- ---natosha sana.

m̀kate	M̀kate unatosha sana.	There is plenty of bread.
siagi	Siagi inatosha sana.	There is plenty of butter.
sukari	Sukari inatosha sana.	There is plenty of sugar.
nyama	Nyama inatosha sana.	There is plenty of meat.
kahawa	Kahawa inatosha sana.	There is plenty of coffee.
samaki	Samaki inatosha sana.	There is plenty of fish.
chai	Chai inatosha sana.	There is plenty of tea.
supu	Supu inatosha sana.	There is plenty of soup.
uji	Uji unatosha sana.	There is plenty of porridge.

B.

matunda	Matunda yanatosha sana.	There is plenty of fruit.
maembe	Maembe yanatosha sana. or: Embe zinatosha sana.	There are plenty of mangoes.
machungwa	Machungwa yanatosha sana.	There are plenty of oranges.
maziwa	Maziwa yanatosha sana.	There is plenty of milk.
ndizi	Ndizi zinatosha sana.	There are plenty of bananas.
chakula	Chakula kinatosha sana.	There is plenty of food.

C.

m̀kate	Mkate hautoshi.	There is not enough bread.
maziwa	Maziwa hayatoshi.	There is not enough milk.
matunda	Matunda hayatoshi.	There is not enough fruit.
machungwa	Machungwa hayatoshi.	There are not enough oranges.
maembe	Maembe hayatoshi.	There are not enough mangoes.
	or: Embe hazitoshi.	
chakula	Chakula hakitoshi.	There is not enough food.

D.

siagi	Siagi haitoshi.	There is not enough butter.
nyama	Nyama haitoshi.	There is not enough meat.
chai	Chai haitoshi.	There is not enough tea.
kahawa	Kahawa haitoshi.	There is not enough coffee.
uji	Uji hautoshi.	There is not enough gruel.
ndizi	Ndizi hazitoshi.	There are not enough bananas.

3. Free conversation.

Aramian and his family are back again for tea. They have trouble getting enough butter for their bread, and enough milk and sugar for their tea or coffee.

Unit 16

1. Basic dialogue. Preparing to buy food at the door.

Mutisya

-leta	bring
Hamisi analeta matunda?	Is Hamisi bringing fruit?

Aramian

nazi (N)	coconut/coconuts
nanasi (MA)	pineapple
mananasi	pineapples
Ndiyo, anatuletea nazi na mananasi.	Yes, he is bringing us coconuts and pineapples.

Mutisya

Ah! Vizuri sana!	Ah! Very good!
Hatuna mananasi leo.	We don't have any pineapples today.
-jua	know
bei (N)	price
Unaijua bei ya mananasi?	Do you know (it) the price of the pineapples?

Aramian

hapana	no
Hapana, siijui.	No, I don't (know it).

Notes

A. 'Applied' or 'prepositional' stem.

Compare the forms:

analeta matunda	he is bringing fruit
anatuletea matunda	he is bringing us fruit

In the second verb, the syllable -*tu*- is of course the 1 plu. object prefix. The stems of the verbs in these sentences are respectively -*leta* and -*letea*. Both are translated with English *bring*.

The stem -*letea* is used to indicate that the action of bringing is performed with reference to someone or something. A possible gloss would be *to bring to, for*.

The stem -*letea* is called the 'applied', or 'prepositional' form of the simple stem -*leta*.

B. The N class singular.

The word *bei* is in the same concord class as *nyama*. That is, when it is used as the subject of a verb, then that verb has the subject prefix *i*-. Likewise, both words are followed by *ya*:

nyama ya ng'ombe	meat of cow
bei ya mananasi	price of pineapples

The word *nazi* 'coconut' is also in this class. This class of nouns in Swahili (and in Bantu languages generally) is called 'the N - class'. We indicate membership in this class by the symbol (N).

C. Affirmative vs. negative present forms of a verb with vowel-final root.

The forms

unataka	you want
unajua	you know

are parallel to one another, as are the forms

sitaki	I don't want
sijui	I don't know

D. Concord shown in object prefix, N class.

In the form

unaijua? do you know it?

the syllable -i- is the object prefix used in agreement with a singular noun of the N-class (bei). It is possible to use either the object prefix without the noun object, as in the above example, or the noun object without the object prefix, or - as in the basic dialogue - both object prefix and noun object in the same sentence. The object prefix is used alone without the noun object in the reply siijui.

E. Object prefix for singular of WA class.

In the exercises we find the sentence

Unam̂jua Hamisi? Do you know Hamisi?

Here, -m̂- is the 3 sg. animate object prefix, agreeing with the noun object Hamisi.

Unlike the other inanimate object prefixes, the animate object prefixes -m̂- (sg.) and -wa- (plu.) must be used when there is a noun object.

Some people prefer the verb -fahamu to the verb -jua in this context.

F. Concords: N class singular vs. plural.

In the translations of the sentences in 16.2, the N-class words were translated either as singular or as plural, with no change in the form of the Swahili word.

nazi	coconut/coconuts
ndizi	banana/bananas
bei	price/prices

and, for some speakers:

embe	mango/mangoes

All nouns of the N-class are identical in singular and plural, but the concordial prefixes that agree with them differ.

ndizi inatosha	the banana suffices
ndizi zinatosha	the bananas suffice

The noun habari is a noun of the N-class, used here in the plural. Note the difference in concords with the linking -a:

nyama ya ng'ombe

habari za asubuhi

G. Table of animate subject and object prefixes.

The animate subject and object prefixes, in tabular form, are:

	singular		plural	
	s.p.	o.p.	s.p.	o.p.
1.	ni-	-ni-	tu-	-tu-
2.	u-	-ku-	m̀-	-wa-(stem)-eni
3.	a-	-m̀-	wa-	-wa-

H. Literal meaning of hapana.

The literal and original meaning of hapana is 'there is not.' It is, however, often used as a reply equivalent to English 'no'. Another equivalent for 'no' is la.

2. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Subject in first sentence related to object prefix in second.

'We have no bananas.'	'Hamisi is bringing us bananas.'
Hatuna ndizi.	Hamisi anatuletea ndizi.
Sina ndizi.	Hamisi ananiletea ndizi.
Watoto hawana ndizi.	Hamisi anawaletea ndizi.
Daudi hana ndizi. (Daudi is another proper name.)	Hamisi anam̀letea ndizi.
Huna ndizi?	Hamisi anakuletea ndizi.

B.

'We have no coconuts.'	'He is bringing us coconuts.'

Hatuna nazi.	Anatuletea nazi.
Hawana nazi.	Anawaletea nazi.
Hana nazi.	Anam̀letea nazi.
Huna nazi.	Anakuletea nazi.
Sina nazi.	Ananiletea nazi.

C. Root of verb in first sentence vs. object prefix plus applied stem in second.

	'Hamisi is not bringing coconuts.'	'He is not bringing us coconuts.'
nazi	Hamisi haleti nazi.	Hatuletei nazi.
m̀kate	Hamisi haleti m̀kate.	Hatuletei m̀kate.

nyama supu matunda

D. Varying subject prefixes before an object prefix.

'do you know (it) the price of coffee?'	'no, I don't know it.'
Unaijua bei ya kahawa?	Hapana, siijui.
Hamisi anaijua bei ya kahawa?	Hapana, haijui.
Watoto wanaijua bei ya kahawa?	Hapana, hawaijui.
M̀naijua bei ya kahawa?	Hapana, hatuijui.

E.

'do you know Hamisi?'	'no, I don't know him.'
Unam̀jua Hamisi?	Hapana, sim̀jui.
M̀nam̀jua Hamisi?	Hapana, hatum̀jui.

Daudi anam̊jua Hamisi?	Hapana, ham̊jui.
Watoto wanam̊jua Hamisi?	Hapana, hawam̊jui.

F.

'do you know our children?'	'yes, I know them very [well].'
Unawajua watoto wangu?	Ndiyo, ninawajua sana.
M̊nawajua watoto wangu?	Ndiyo, tunawajua sana.
Daudi anawajua watoto wangu?	Ndiyo, anawajua sana.
Daudi na Hamisi wanawajua watoto wangu?	Ndiyo, wanawajua sana.

3. Substitution in sequences of sentences. Run through the entire dialogue, using various foodstuffs and modifying the dialogue appropriately.

Unit 17

1. Basic dialogue. How are the oranges?

Mutisya

~ako	your
Rafiki yako analeta matunda gani?	What kind of fruit is your friend bringing?

Aramian

~dhani	to think
nadhani	I think
Sijui. Nadhani analeta machungwa.	I don't know. I think he's bringing oranges.

Mutisya

~ake	his/her
~zuri	good
ni	is/are
Machungwa yake ni mazuri?	Are his oranges good?

Aramian

kawaida (N)	custom
Kwa kawaida, ni mazuri sana.	They are usually very good.
wakati (U)	time
~ingine	some/other
si	is not/are not
~bivu	ripe
Lakini wakati mwingine si mabivu.	But sometimes they are not ripe.

Notes

A. The verb form *nadhani* 'I think' is different in two respects from the verbs we have met previously.

(1) A verb with stem final *i* in the affirmative.

Its final vowel is -*i* in both affirmative and negative forms:

nadhani	I think
sidhani	I don't think

(2) An example of the *a*-tense.

Breaking the form down alongside *ninataka*, we have:

s.p.	*tense sign*	*stem*
ni-	-na-	-taka
n-	-a-	-dhani

We will say that *ninataka* is an example of 'the *na*-tense of the verb -*taka*.' In the same way, *nadhani* is an example of 'the *a*-tense of the verb *dhani*.' Other persons and numbers of the *a*-tense will be met in later units.

B. Concord exemplified in possessives.

Compare the phrases:

maembe yake or: embe zake	his/her mangoes
ndizi zake	his bananas
ndizi yake	his banana
kahawa yake	his coffee
chakula chake	his food
mkate wake	his bread
uji wake	his gruel

The stem of the possessive pronoun that corresponds to English *his*/*her* is -*ake*. Like the verbs, possessives also take concordial prefixes to agree with the nouns that they go with.

Note that m̊kate and uji, which are followed by identical subject prefixes, also have identical concords with possessives. (They are assigned to different classes, however, for reasons that go beyond the evidence so far presented.)

Note also that the plural of the MA-class (e.g. maembe) and the singular of the N class (e.g. kahawa), which require different subject concords, require identical possessive concords.

C. Concord exemplified with certain adjective stems.

Compare the sentences:

Maembe yake ni mazuri.	His mangoes are good.
Ndizi zake ni nzuri.	His bananas are good.
Ndizi yake ni nzuri.	His banana is good.
Chakula chake ni kizuri.	His food is good.
M̊kate wake ni m̊zuri.	His bread is good.
Uji wake ni m̊zuri.	His gruel is good.

The stem of the adjective that corresponds to English good in these sentences is -zuri. Like the verbs and the possessives, most adjectives must agree with the nouns that they refer to, but the respective forms of the prefixes are different.

D. Table of concords encountered in preceding lessons.

Here is a chart of the noun classes which have been met so far, showing characteristic prefix (if any) of the noun itself, and the prefixes required with adjectives, possessives, and verbs (subject and object prefixes). The numbers are those used for these classes in many scientific discussions of Bantu languages.

		noun	adj.	poss.	subject	object
WA	sg. (1)	m-	m-	w-	a-	-m̀-/-mw-
	pl. (2)	wa-	wa-	w-	wa-	-wa-
MI	sg. (3)	m-	m-/mw-	w-	u-	-u-
	pl. (4)*	mi-	mi-/my-	y-	i-	-i-
MA	sg. (5)	(none)	(none)	l-	li-	-li-
	pl. (6)	ma-	ma-	y-	ya-	-ya-
VI	sg. (7)	ki-/ch-	ki-/ch-	ch-	ki-	-ki-
	pl. (8)*	vi-/vy-	vi-/vy-	vy-	vi-	-vi-
N	sg. (9)	(none, see Note 18C)		y-	i-	-i-
	pl.(10)	(none, see Note 18C)		z-	zi-	-zi-
U	sg.(14)	u-/w-	m-/mw-	w-	u-	-u-

*Not yet encountered in the lessons.

Some details have been omitted from this chart, but it is complete for the forms that will be met in the early units.

E. Si as negative of ni.

The negative of ni 'it is' is si 'it is not'. Compare this with note 13B.

2. Substitutions in single sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and possessive.

machungwa	Sitaki machungwa yake.	I don't want his oranges.
matunda	Sitaki matunda yake.	I don't want his fruit.
mananasi	Sitaki mananasi yake.	I don't want his pineapples.
maembe	Sitaki maembe yake.	I don't want his mangoes.
ndizi	Sitaki ndizi zake.	I don't want his bananas.

nazi	Sitaki nazi zake.	I don't want his coconuts.
nanasi	Sitaki nanasi lake.	I don't want his pineapple.

B. Concord: Noun, possessive, and subject prefix.

ndizi	Ndizi zangu hazitoshi.	I don't have enough bananas. ('my bananas do not suffice')
nazi	Nazi zangu hazitoshi.	I don't have enough coconuts.
machungwa	Machungwa yangu hayatoshi.	I don't have enough oranges.
matunda	Matunda yangu hayatoshi.	I don't have enough fruit.
maembe	Maembe yangu hayatoshi.	I don't have enough mangoes.
mayai	Mayai yangu hayatoshi.	I don't have enough eggs.

C. Concord: Noun, possessive, and subject prefix.

kahawa	Kahawa yangu haitoshi.	I don't have enough coffee.
chai	Chai yangu haitoshi.	I don't have enough tea.
siagi	Siagi yangu haitoshi.	I don't have enough butter.
m̀kate	M̀kate wangu hautoshi.	I don't have enough bread.
chakula	Chakula changu hakitoshi.	I don't have enough food.

D.

machungwa	Machungwa yako yanatosha?	Do you have enough oranges?
mayai	Mayai yako yanatosha?	Do you have enough eggs?
maziwa	Maziwa yako yanatosha?	Do you have enough milk?
kahawa	Kahawa yako inatosha?	Do you have enough coffee?
sukari	Sukari yako inatosha?	Do you have enough sugar?
chai	Chai yako inatosha?	Is your tea sufficient?

E.

ndizi	Ndizi zako zinatosha?	Do you have enough bananas?
nazi	Nazi zako zinatosha?	Do you have enough coconuts?

chakula	Chakula chako kinatosha?	Do you have enough food?
m̀kate	M̀kate wako unatosha?	Do you have enough bread?
uji	Uji wako unatosha?	Do you have enough porridge?

F. Concord: Noun, possessive, and adjective.

machungwa	Machungwa yako ni mazuri?	Are your oranges good?
maembe	Maembe yako ni mazuri?	Are your mangoes good?
mananasi	Mananasi yako ni mazuri?	Are your pineapples good?
ndizi	Ndizi zako ni nzuri?	Are your bananas any good?
nazi	Nazi zako ni nzuri?	Are your coconuts any good?

G.

nyama	Nyama yangu si nzuri.	My meat is not good.
chai	Chai yangu si nzuri.	My tea is not good.
kahawa	Kahawa yangu si nzuri.	My coffee is not good.
chakula	Chakula changu si kizuri.	My food is not good.
m̀kate	M̀kate wangu si m̀zuri.	My bread is not good.
uji	Uji wangu si m̀zuri.	My gruel is not good.
chungwa	Chungwa langu si zuri.	My orange is not good.

H.

machungwa	Machungwa yake si mabivu.	His oranges are not ripe.
maembe	Maembe yake si mabivu.	His mangoes are not ripe.
mananasi	Mananasi yake si mabivu.	His pineapples are not ripe.
ndizi	Ndizi zake si mbivu.	His bananas are not ripe.
nanasi	Nanasi lake si bivu.	His pineapple is not ripe.

3. Substitutions in sequences of sentences.

A. Use other words in place of those that are underlined.

X. Unataka matunda?

Y. Ninataka matunda mazuri tu basi.

X. Matunda yangu ni mazuri sana.

Unit 18

1. Basic dialogue. What do we need?

Aramian

-hitaji	(to) need
Tunahitaji ndizi?	Do we need any bananas?

Mutisya

kwa	for
sababu (N)	reason
kwa sababu	because
tunazo	we have them
~chache	few
Ndiyo, kwa sababu tunazo chache tu.	Yes, we have only a few of them.

Aramian

kiazi (VI)	potato
viazi	potatoes
Tuna viazi?	Do we have potatoes?

Mutisya

~ingi	many
Ndiyo, tunavyo vingi.	Yes, we have a lot of them.

Notes

A. Concord exemplified in 'objects' of na.

Compare the following forms:

Tunazo.	We have them. (e.g. bananas)
Tunacho.	We have it. (e.g. food)

Tunao.	We have it. (e.g. bread)

Corresponding to the English object pronouns them and it is a suffix consisting of a concordial element plus -o.

B. Details of concord with certain adjective stems.

Tuna machungwa mengi.	We have many oranges.
Tuna sukari nyingi.	We have much sugar.
Tuna ndizi nyingi.	We have many bananas.
Tuna viazi vingi.	We have many potatoes.
Tuna uji mwingi.	We have much gruel.

Here, the forms of the adjective stem and of the prefixes themselves are less clear than they were in 17C. It will be simplest to regard the basic form of the adjective stem as -ingi. Then, in the MA class, where one might expect

ma + ingi the form that occurs is mengi

In the N class, which has no uniform shape for prefixes, the form is:

nyingi

The other forms are given in the exercises.

C. N-concords with adjective stems beginning in a consonant.
The adjective stem -chache 'few' is usually used with plurals.
Compare the forms:

MA	maembe mazuri	maembe machache
	ndizi nzuri	ndizi __chache
	ndizi mbivu	
	ndizi nyingi	

With the N class, the stem -zuri takes a prefix n-, while -chache takes no prefix at all.

Adjectives whose stems begin with ch, f, k, m, n, p, s, t act like -chache in this respect, in that they have no prefix at all for the N class.

Adjectives whose stems begin with d, g, j, z act like -zuri in this respect, in that they have as their N class prefix a syllabic nasal homorganic with the initial consonant of the stem. These nasals are written with the letter n.

Adjectives whose stems begin with v or b act like -bivu in this respect, in that they too have as prefix a syllabic nasal consonant, homorganic with the initial consonant of the stem, and written m.

D. The VI class.

A new noun class, the VI class, is represented by viazi 'potatoes', the singular of which is kiazi. The concords for the VI class plural (cf. Note 17D) are:

noun	adj.	poss.	subj. pref.	obj. pref.
vi-/vy-	vi-/vy-	vy-	vi-	-vi-

2. Substitution in single sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and adjective.

viazi	Tuna viazi vichache.	We have a few potatoes.
chakula	Tuna chakula kichache.	We have a little food.
ndizi	Tuna ndizi chache.	We have a few bananas.
nyama	Tuna nyama chache.	We have a little meat.
matunda	Tuna matunda machache.	We have a little fruit.

B.

viazi	Analeta viazi vingi.	He's bringing a lot of potatoes.
ndizi	Analeta ndizi nyingi.	He's bringing a lot of bananas.
nyama	Analeta nyama nyingi.	He's bringing a lot of meat.
machungwa	Analeta machungwa mengi.	He's bringing a lot of oranges.

chakula	Analeta chakula kingi.	He's bringing a lot of food.

C.

maembe	Tunahitaji maembe mengi sasa.	We need a lot of mangoes now.
maziwa	Tunahitaji maziwa mengi sasa.	We need a lot of milk now.
mananasi	Tunahitaji mananasi mengi sasa.	We need a lot of pineapples now.
kahawa	Tunahitaji kahawa nyingi sasa.	We need a lot of coffee now.
sukari	Tunahitaji sukari nyingi sasa.	We need a lot of sugar now.
chai	Tunahitaji chai nyingi sasa.	We need a lot of tea now.

3. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and object suffix.

'do you have potatoes?'	'yes, we have [them]'
Ṁna viazi?	Ndiyo, tunavyo.
Ṁna chakula?	Ndiyo, tunacho.
Ṁna ndizi?	Ndiyo, tunazo.
Ṁna nyama?	Ndiyo, tunayo.
Ṁna machungwa?	Ndiyo, tunayo.
Ṁna ṁkate?	Ndiyo, tunao.

B. Concord: Noun, object suffix and adjective.

'do you have mangoes?'	'I have only a few of them.'
Una maembe?	Ninayo machache tu.
Una nyama?	Ninayo chache tu.
Una nazi?	Ninazo chache tu.
Una chakula?	Ninacho kichache tu.
Una viazi?	Ninavyo vichache tu.

Unit 19

1. Basic Dialogue. Buying at the door.

Aramian

-uza	(to) sell
nini	what?
Unauza nini?	What are you selling?

Hawker

njugu (N)	ground nuts
mahindi	maize (off cob)
muhindi	ear of maize
Nina njugu na mahindi.	I have peanuts and corn.

Aramian

~bovu	bad (i.e. spoiled)
Njugu zako ni mbovu?	Are your ground nuts bad?

Hawker

siyo	(negative of ndiyo)
Siyo, si mbovu.	No, they're not bad.
~zima	good (i.e. not rotten), whole
kabisa	quite
Ni nzima kabisa.	They're quite good.

Aramian

-je	how?
Unauzaje muhindi?	How much is the maize? ('How do you sell the maize?')

Hawker

˜moja	one
senti	cent (E. African)
kumi	ten
M̀moja senti kumi	Ten cents apiece. ('one, ten cents')

Notes

A. In the reply

M̀moja senti kumi.	Ten cents apiece. (One-ten cents.)

the adjective m̀moja agrees with muhindi, 'ear of maize.'

B. Use of WA class concords for all nouns denoting living beings.

The words ndizi 'banana' and nazi 'coconut', as N-class singulars, are found in the phrases

ndizi moja	one banana
nazi moja	one coconut

The words ng'ombe 'ox' and nguruwe 'pig', which in some respects may be regarded as belonging to the N-class, behave differently with adjectives:

ng'ombe m̀moja	one ox
nguruwe m̀moja	one pig

In this respect they are like the singular of the WA-class:

m̀toto m̀moja	one child

Indeed, nouns of any class, when they stand for animate beings, require that the adjectives which accompany them have concords of the animate (WA) class.

Thus *samaki* 'fish', when it stands for a live fish, is

samaki m̀moja

but when the fish has been cooked ready to eat, it may be called

samaki moja

(Some speakers, however, use *samaki* always as a member of the WA class, never as a member of the N class.)

C. Contrast between *mb-* and *m̀b-*.

In the phrases usually written in standard spelling:

Nazi yangu ni mbovu.	My coconut is bad.
Muhindi wangu ni mbovu.	My ear of corn is bad.

the words spelled *mbovu* are not pronounced alike. Accordingly, we shall write *mbovu* (N-class) and *m̀bovu* (WA, MI, U classes). In the latter, the *m̀* constitutes a separate syllable, while in the former it does not.

2. Matching parts of single sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and adjective.

chungwa	Nina chungwa moja tu.	I have only one orange.
embe	Nina embe moja tu.	I have only one mango.

tunda nanasi yai ndizi nazi kiazi samaki

B.

m̀toto	Nina m̀toto m̀moja tu.	I have only one child.
ng'ombe	Nina ng'ombe m̀moja tu.	I have only one ox.

nguruwe muhindi m̀kate rafiki

C. Concord: Noun and two adjectives.

chungwa	Chungwa moja ni bovu.	One orange is spoiled.
embe	Embe moja ni bovu.	One mango is spoiled.
nanasi	Nanasi moja ni bovu.	One pineapple is spoiled.

yai	Yai moja ni bovu.	One egg is spoiled.
ndizi	Ndizi moja ni mbovu.	One banana is spoiled.
nazi	Nazi moja ni mbovu.	One coconut is spoiled.

D.

kiazi	Kiazi kimoja ni kibovu.	One potato is spoiled.
samaki	Samaki moja ni mbovu.	One fish is spoiled.
muhindi	Muhindi m̊moja ni m̊bovu.	One ear of maize is spoiled.
tunda	Tunda moja ni bovu.	One piece of fruit is spoiled.

E.

embe	Embe moja tu ni zima.	Only one mango is good.
nanasi	Nanasi moja tu ni zima.	Only one pineapple is good.
yai	Yai moja tu ni zima.	Only one egg is good.
ndizi	Ndizi moja tu ni nzima.	Only one banana is good.
nazi	Nazi moja tu ni nzima.	Only one coconut is good.

F.

kiazi	Kiazi kimoja tu ni kizima.	Only one potato is good.
samaki	Samaki moja tu ni nzima.	Only one fish is good. (dead)
samaki	Samaki m̊moja tu ni m̊zima.	Only one fish is good. (live)
muhindi	Muhindi m̊moja tu ni m̊zima.	Only one ear of maize is good.

G.

machungwa	Machungwa yangu si mabovu.	My oranges are not bad.
chungwa	Chungwa langu si bovu.	My orange is not bad.
mananasi	Mananasi yangu si mabovu.	My pineapples are not bad.
nanasi	Nanasi langu si bovu.	My pineapple is not bad.
mayai	Mayai yangu si mabovu.	My eggs are not bad.

yai	Yai langu si bovu.	My egg is not bad.
maembe	Maembe yangu si mabovu.	My mangoes are not bad.
embe	Embe langu si bovu.	My mango is not bad.

H.

viazi	Viazi vyako ni vibovu.	Your potatoes are spoiled.
kiazi	Kiazi chako ni kibovu.	Your potato is spoiled.
ndizi (pl.)	Ndizi zako ni mbovu.	Your bananas are spoiled.
ndizi (sg.)	Ndizi yako ni mbovu.	Your banana is spoiled.
nazi (pl.)	Nazi zako ni mbovu.	Your coconuts are spoiled.
nazi (sg.)	Nazi yako ni mbovu.	Your coconut is spoiled.
muhindi	Muhindi wako ni m̂bovu.	Your maize is spoiled.
mihindi	Mihindi yako ni mibovu.	Your maize is spoiled.

3. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Concord in multiple slots.

	'my potatoes are bad;	his are good'
viazi	Viazi vyangu ni vibovu;	vyake ni vizima.
kiazi	Kiazi changu ni kibovu;	chake ni kizima.
ndizi	Ndizi zangu ni mbovu;	zake ni nzima.
ndizi	Ndizi yangu ni mbovu;	yake ni nzima.
nazi	Nazi yangu ni mbovu;	yake ni nzima.
mihindi	Mihindi yangu ni mibovu;	yake ni mizima.
muhindi	Muhindi wangu ni m̂bovu;	wake ni m̂zima.

B.

	'your oranges are good;	mine are bad'
machungwa	Machungwa yako ni mazima;	yangu ni mabovu.

chungwa	Chungwa lako ni zima;	langu ni bovu.
maembe	Maembe yako ni mazima;	yangu ni mabovu.
embe	Embe lako ni zima;	langu ni bovu.
mayai	Mayai yako ni mazima;	yangu ni mabovu.
yai	Yai lako ni zima;	langu ni bovu.

C. Corresponding singular and plural concords.

	'are the potatoes good?'	'one is bad'
viazi	Viazi ni vizima?	Kimoja ni kibovu.
ndizi	Ndizi ni nzima?	Moja ni mbovu.
samaki	Samaki ni nzima?	Moja ni mbovu.
nazi	Nazi ni nzima?	Moja ni mbovu.

D.

matunda	Matunda ni mazima?	Moja ni bovu.
machungwa	Machungwa ni mazima?	Moja ni bovu.
maembe	Maembe ni mazima?	Moja ni bovu.
mihindi	Mihindi ni mizima?	M̀moja ni m̀bovu.

Unit 20

1. Basic dialogue. Where do you live?

Aramian

-kaa	(to) live (reside)
wapi?	where?
Unakaa wapi?	Where do you live?

M̊pagazi

Ninakaa Morogoro.	I live in Morogoro.

Aramian

m̊ji (MI)	town
~kubwa	large
~dogo	small
Morogoro ni m̊ji m̊kubwa, au m̊dogo?	Is Morogoro a large town, or a small one?

M̊pagazi

Ni m̊kubwa.	It's large.

Aramian

m̊kubwa (WA)	the chief
nani?	who?
huo	that
M̊kubwa wa m̊ji huo ni nani?	Who is the chief of that town?

M̊pagazi

Ni Sultani Kunambi.	[He]'s Sultan Kunambi.

Notes

A. Adjective used, without antecedent, in a noun position.

The word *m̀kubwa* is used in two different ways in the dialogue:

M̂ji ni m̀kubwa.	The city is big.

Here, *m̀kubwa* represents an adjective in agreement with a singular noun of the MI-class (*m̀ji*).

m̀kubwa wa m̀ji	the big [man] of the city

Here, the same written and spoken form represents a singular noun of the WA-class or, if one prefers, it may be regarded as an adjective agreeing with an 'understood' antecedent in the singular of the WA-class.

B. Demonstratives in *h-* *-o*.

Compare the phrases:

viazi hivyo	those potatoes
m̀ji huo	that city
yai hilo	that egg

In each phrase, the second word is a 'demonstrative' which corresponds partially to English *that*. All such demonstratives begin with *h-* and end with *-o*; what comes in between the *h-* and the *-o* depends on concord class. The meaning is approximately 'that one that we were talking about', rather than 'that one over there within view.'

WA	sg.	h - uy - o
	pl.	h - a - o
MI	sg.	h - u - o
	pl.	h - iy - o
MA	sg.	h - il - o
	pl.	h - ay - o

VI	sg.	h - ich - o
	pl.	h - ivy - o
N	sg.	h - iy - o
	pl.	h - iz - o
U	sg.	h - u - o

Compare these forms with the final syllables of the forms discussed in Note 18A.

2. Matching parts of single sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and demonstrative.

mihindi	Unajua bei ya mihindi hiyo?	Do you know the price of that maize?
matunda	Unajua bei ya matunda hayo?	Do you know the price of that fruit?
machungwa	Unajua bei ya machungwa hayo?	Do you know the price of those oranges?
chakula	Unajua bei ya chakula hicho?	Do you know the price of that food?

B.

viazi	Sijui bei ya viazi hivyo.	I don't know the price of those potatoes.
ndizi	Sijui bei ya ndizi hizo.	I don't know the price of those bananas.
nazi	Sijui bei ya nazi hizo.	I don't know the price of those coconuts.
kahawa	Sijui bei ya kahawa hiyo.	I don't know the price of that coffee.
chai	Sijui bei ya chai hiyo.	I don't know the price of that tea.

C. Concord: Noun, demonstrative and adjective.

m̀ji	M̀ji huo ni m̀kubwa?	Is that city large?
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe huyo ni m̀kubwa?	Is that ox big?
nguruwe	Nguruwe huyo ni m̀kubwa?	Is that pig big?
m̀toto	M̀toto huyo ni m̀kubwa?	Is that child big?

D.

viazi	Viazi hivyo si vikubwa sana.	Those potatoes aren't very large.
kiazi	Kiazi hicho si kikubwa sana.	That potato isn't very large.
maembe	Maembe hayo si makubwa sana.	Those mangoes aren't very large.
embe	Embe hilo si kubwa sana.	That mango isn't very large.
mayai	Mayai hayo si makubwa sana.	Those eggs aren't very large.
yai	Yai hilo si kubwa sana.	That egg isn't very large.

3. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Concord: Noun, demonstrative, and two adjectives.

	'are those potatoes large?'	'no, they are small'
viazi	Viazi hivyo ni vikubwa?	La, ni vidogo.
kiazi	Kiazi hicho ni kikubwa?	La, ni kidogo.
machungwa	Machungwa hayo ni makubwa?	La, ni madogo.
chungwa	Chungwa hilo ni kubwa?	La, ni dogo.
ndizi (pl.)	Ndizi hizo ni kubwa?	La, ni ndogo.
ndizi (sg.)	Ndizi hiyo ni kubwa?	La, ni ndogo.

B.

watoto	Watoto hao ni wakubwa?	La, ni wadogo.
m̀toto	M̀toto huyo ni m̀kubwa?	La, ni m̀dogo.

ng'ombe (pl.)	Ng'ombe hao ni wakubwa?	La, ni wadogo.
ng'ombe (sg.)	Ng'ombe huyo ni m̀kubwa?	La, ni m̀dogo.
nguruwe (pl.)	Nguruwe hao ni wakubwa?	La, ni wadogo.
nguruwe (sg.)	Nguruwe huyo ni m̀kubwa?	La, ni m̀dogo.

C.

watoto	Watoto wake ni wazuri?	Ndiyo, ni wazuri sana.
m̀toto	M̀toto wake ni m̀zuri?	Ndiyo, ni m̀zuri sana.
nguruwe (pl.)	Nguruwe wake ni wazuri?	Ndiyo, ni wazuri sana.
nguruwe (sg.)	Nguruwe wake ni m̀zuri?	Ndiyo, ni m̀zuri sana.
ng'ombe (pl.)	Ng'ombe wake ni wazuri?	Ndiyo, ni wazuri sana.
ng'ombe (sg.)	Ng'ombe wake ni m̀zuri?	Ndiyo, ni m̀zuri sana.

D.

	'is that mango ripe?'	'no, it is not ripe'
embe	Embe hilo ni bivu?	La, si bivu.
maembe	Maembe hayo ni mabivu?	La, si mabivu.
ndizi (sg.)	Ndizi hiyo ni mbivu?	La, si mbivu.
ndizi (pl.)	Ndizi hizo ni mbivu?	La, si mbivu.
chungwa	Chungwa hilo ni bivu?	La, si bivu.
machungwa	Machungwa hayo ni mabivu?	La, si mabivu.

Unit 21

1. Basic Dialogue. Where is Morogoro from here?

Aramian

uko	it is there
M̀ji wa Morogoro uko wapi?	Where is (town of) Morogoro?

His friend

-elewa	understand
Sielewi, bwana.	I don't understand (sir).

Aramian

upande (U)	direction
M̀ji wa Morogoro uko upande gani wa Dar es Salaam?	What direction is Morogoro from Dar es Salaam? ('city of M. is there which side of D.?')

His friend

magharibi (N)	west
Ah! Uko magharibi ya Dar es Salaam.	Ah! It's west of Dar es Salaam.

Aramian

kusini (N)	south
Je, m̀ji wa Utete uko kusini ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Utete south of Dar es Salaam?

His friend

Ndiyo, bwana.	Yes [it is] (sir).

Aramian

kaskazini (N)	north
mashariki (N)	east
hapa (PA)	here
Na m̀ji wa Bagamoyo, uko kaskazini au mashariki ya hapa?	And Bagamoyo - is it north, or east of here?

His friend

Uko kaskazini.	North.

Notes

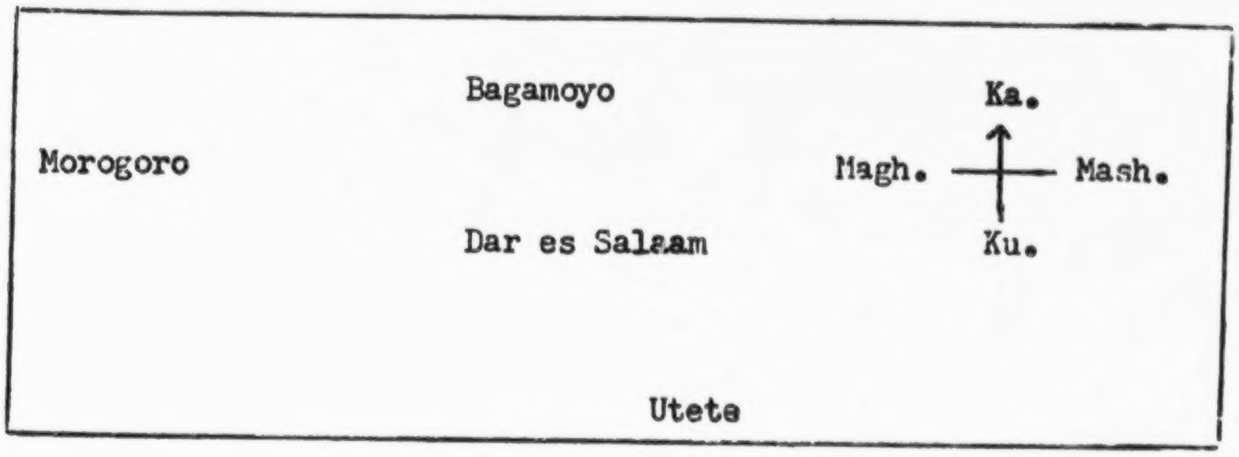
A. Polite yes - no replies in Swahili and English.

Note the lack of exact parallel between the Swahili and the English in

Ndiyo, bwana.	Yes [it is] (sir).

In either language, the shortest possible answer (respectively *ndiyo* and *yes*) would be abrupt in this context. It is softened in each language by the addition of something. In Swahili it is the honorific title *bwana*, while in English it is the clause fragment *it is*.

2. The meanings of the four direction-words: Questions on the map.



Morogoro uko magharibi ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Morogoro west of Dar es Salaam?
Bagamoyo uko magharibi ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Bagamoyo west of Dar es Salaam?
Utete uko magharibi ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Utete west of Dar es Salaam?
Utete uko mashariki ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Utete east of Dar es Salaam?
Utete uko kusini ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Utete south of Dar es Salaam?
Utete uko kaskazini ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Utete north of Dar es Salaam?
Dar es Salaam uko kusini ya Bagamoyo?	Is Dar es Salaam south of Bagamoyo?
Utete uko kaskazini ya Bagamoyo?	Is Utete north of Bagamoyo?
Dar es Salaam uko magharibi ya Morogoro?	Is Dar es Salaam west of Morogoro?

[N. B. In some parts of East Africa, ipo would be used in these sentences in place of uko.]

3. The four direction words: Completion. (The tutor should pause at the point indicated, allowing the student to finish the sentence for him.)

Dar es Salaam uko kusini ya --- Bagamoyo.

Bagamoyo uko kaskazini ya --- Dar es Salaam.

Morogoro uko magharibi ya --- Dar es Salaam.

Dar es Salaam uko kaskazini ya --- Utete.

Dar es Salaam uko mashariki ya --- Morogoro.

Utete uko kusini ya --- Dar es Salaam.

Unit 22

1. Basic Dialogue. In a village.

Mirambo

kijiji (VI)	village
Kijiji hiki kiko upande gani wa Dar es Salaam?	What direction is this village from Dar es Salaam?

Hasani

Kiko kusini.	It's south.

Mirambo

nyumba (N)	house, houses
mawe	stones
jiwe (MA)	stone
Nyumba za kijiji hiki ni za mawe?	Are the houses of this village [made] of stone?

Hasani

La. Nyumba za kijiji hiki si za mawe.	No, (the houses of this village) they aren't (of stone).
udongo (U)	soil
Nyingi ni za udongo.	Many are [made] of mud.

Notes

A. Demonstratives in hV. - V.

In the phrase *kijiji hiki* 'this village' the word *hiki* is a demonstrative which corresponds very closely to English 'this/these.' It may be called a 'proximal demonstrative.'

The 'proximal demonstratives' agree with the nouns to which they refer.

Thus:

kijiji hiki	this village
vijiji hivi	these villages
chungwa hili	this orange

The proximal forms for the noun classes that have been met so far are to be found in the exercises.

B. The locative stems -ko, -po.

Compare the phrases:

Kijiji kiko wapi?	Where is the village?
Mji uko wapi?	Where is the town?

The locative stem -ko, takes concordial prefixes ki-, u-, etc.

If the answer contains the word hapa 'here', then -po must be instead of -ko. For details, see the exercises.

C. Phrases with linking -a used without antecedent.

nyumba za mawe	houses of stone(s)
Nyumba ni za mawe.	The houses are of stone.

Phrases which consist of the linking -a + noun need not follow immediately after the nouns to which they refer, and may even be used alone:

Za mawe ziko wapi?	Where are the ones (i.e. the houses) [made] of stone?
Za udongo zipo hapa.	[The ones made] of mud are here.

D. Special form of 3 sg. animate subject prefix with the locative stems. Note that the 1 sg. animate subject prefix used with -ko and -po is yu- and not a-:

Daudi yupo hapa.	Daudi is here.

2. Matching parts of single sentences.

A. Concord: Noun, demonstrative and adjective.

kijiji	Kijiji hiki ni kizuri.	This village is nice.
vijiji	Vijiji hivi ni vizuri.	These villages are nice.
kiazi	Kiazi hiki ni kizuri.	This potato is nice.
viazi	Viazi hivi ni vizuri.	These potatoes are nice.
chakula	Chakula hiki ni kizuri.	This food is nice.
vyakula	Vyakula hivi ni vizuri.	These foods are nice.

B.

chungwa	Chungwa hili ni kubwa.	This orange is large.
machungwa	Machungwa haya ni makubwa.	These oranges are large.
embe	Embe hili ni kubwa.	This mango is large.
maembe	Maembe haya ni makubwa.	These mangoes are large.
nanasi	Nanasi hili ni kubwa.	This pineapple is large.
mananasi	Mananasi haya ni makubwa.	These pineapples are large.
yai	Yai hili ni kubwa.	This egg is large.
mayai	Mayai haya ni makubwa.	These eggs are large.

C.

nazi (sg.)	Nazi hii ni ndogo.	This coconut is small.
nazi (pl.)	Nazi hizi ni ndogo.	These coconuts are small.
ndizi (sg.)	Ndizi hii ni ndogo.	This banana is small.
ndizi (pl.)	Ndizi hizi ni ndogo.	These bananas are small.

D.

ṁtoto	Ṁtoto huyu ni ṁdogo.	This child is small.
watoto	Watoto hawa ni wadogo.	These children are small.
ng'ombe (sg.)	Ng'ombe huyu ni ṁdogo.	This ox is small.
ng'ombe (pl.)	Ng'ombe hawa ni wadogo.	These oxen are small.
nguruwe (sg.)	Nguruwe huyu ni ṁdogo.	This pig is small.
nguruwe (pl.)	Nguruwe hawa ni wadogo.	These pigs are small.
samaki (sg.)	Samaki huyu ni ṁdogo.	This (live) fish is small.
samaki (pl.)	Samaki hawa ni wadogo.	These (live) fish are small.
samaki (sg.)	Samaki hii ni ndogo.	This (cooked) fish is small.
samaki	Samaki hizi ni ndogo.	These (cooked) fish are small.

E. Concord: Noun, possessive, location.

chai	Chai yako ipo hapa.	Your tea is here.
kahawa	Kahawa yako ipo hapa.	Your coffee is here.
sukari	Sukari ipo hapa.	The sugar is here.
siagi	Siagi ipo hapa.	The butter is here.
nyama	Nyama ipo hapa.	The meat is here.
ṁkate	Ṁkate upo hapa.	The bread is here.

F.

Daudi	Daudi yupo hapa.	Daudi is here.
watoto	Watoto wapo hapa.	The children are here.

ng'ombe (sg.)	Ng'ombe yupo hapa.	The ox is here.
ng'ombe (pl.)	Ng'ombe wapo hapa.	The oxen are here.
nguruwe (sg.)	Nguruwe yupo hapa.	The pig is here.
nguruwe (pl.)	Nguruwe wapo hapa.	The pigs are here.

G.

chakula	Chakula chako kipo hapa.	Your food is here.
vyakula	Vyakula vyako vipo hapa.	Your food is here.
kiazi	Kiazi chako kipo hapa.	Your potato is here.
viazi	Viazi vyako vipo hapa.	Your potatoes are here.

3. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and -ko or -po.

chai	Chai yangu iko wapi?	Where is my tea?
	Ipo hapa.	It's here.
kahawa	Kahawa yangu iko wapi?	Where is my coffee?
	Ipo hapa.	It's here.
sukari	Sukari iko wapi?	Where is the sugar?
	Ipo hapa.	It's here.
siagi	Siagi iko wapi?	Where is the butter.
	Ipo hapa.	It's here.
nyama	Nyama iko wapi?	Where is the meat?
	Ipo hapa.	It's here.
ṁkate	Ṁkate uko wapi?	Where is the bread?
	Upo hapa.	It's here.

B.

Daudi	Daudi yuko wapi?	Where is Daudi?
	Yuko Morogoro.	He's at Morogoro.
watoto	Watoto wako wapi?	Where are the children?
	Wako Morogoro.	They are at Morogoro.
ng'ombe (sg.)	Ng'ombe wako yuko wapi?	Where is your ox?
	Yuko Morogoro.	It's at Morogoro.
ng'ombe (pl.)	Ng'ombe wako wako wapi?	Where are your oxen?
	Wako Morogoro.	They are at Morogoro.
nguruwe (sg.)	Nguruwe wako yuko wapi?	Where is your pig?
	Yuko Morogoro.	It's at Morogoro.
nguruwe (pl.)	Nguruwe wako wako wapi?	Where are your pigs?
	Wako Morogoro.	They are at Morogoro.

C.

chakula	Chakula changu kiko wapi?	Where is my food?
	Kipo hapa.	It's here.
vyakula	Vyakula vyangu viko wapi?	Where is my food?
	Vipo hapa.	It's here.
kiazi	Kiazi changu kiko wapi?	Where is my potato?
	Kipo hapa.	It's here.
viazi	Viazi vyangu viko wapi?	Where are my potatoes?
	Vipo hapa.	They are here.

Unit 23

1. Basic Dialogue. Where are you going?

Sangai

-enda	go
Unakwenda wapi?	Where are you going?

Adija

soko (MA)	market
-ni	in, at, on
Ninakwenda sokoni.	I'm going to the market.

Sangai

-fanya	make, do
kufanya	to do
Kufanya nini?	To do what?

Adija

-nunua	buy
kitu (VI)	thing
Kununua vitu.	To buy some things.

Sangai

Kununua vitu gani?	What kind of things?

Adija

Kununua vyakula.	Groceries. ('to buy foodstuffs')

Notes

A. The locative suffix -*ni*.

Ninakwenda Morogoro.	I'm going to Morogoro.
Morogoro uko wapi?	Where is Morogoro?
Ninakwenda sokoni.	I'm going to the market.
Soko liko wapi?	Where is the market?

The 'locative suffix' -*ni* 'at, to, in' is added to many words, but not to the names of cities.

As noted in Unit 21, the form *ipo* is sometimes used in place of *uko* in sentences of this kind.

B. *Ku*- as 'sign of the infinitive.'

Ninanunua vitu.	I'm buying things.
Ninataka kununua vitu.	I want to buy things.

The prefix *ku*- used alone before a verb stem corresponds partially to the English word 'to' used as 'sign of the infinitive.' Forms like *kununua*, *kufanya* are called 'infinitives.'

C. Use of *kw* in inflected forms with the stem -*enda*.

Ninataka kwenda.	I want to go.
Ninakwenda.	I'm going.

The stem of this verb is -*enda*. It begins with a vowel. The infinitive prefix is written *kw*- instead of *ku*-.

D.

Ninataka *kw*enda.	I want to go.
Ninakwenda.	I'm going.
Ninataka *ku*nunua . . .	I want to buy . . .
Ninanunua . . .	I'm buying . . .

The ku-/kw- of the infinitive form is missing from the personal forms of most verbs, including -nunua. But for -enda, kw- is retained in most forms. This is true for a few other verbs as well.

2. Substitutions in single sentences.

A. Simple noun vs. noun with -ni.

soko	Ninakwenda sokoni.	I'm going to the market.
nyumba	Ninakwenda nyumbani.	I'm going home.
m̀ji	Ninakwenda m̀jini.	I'm going to the town.
kijiji	Ninakwenda kijijini.	I'm going to the village.
Morogoro	Ninakwenda Morogoro.	I'm going to Morogoro.
Bagamoyo	Ninakwenda Bagamoyo.	I'm going to Bagamoyo.

B. Infinitive after -taka.

vyakula	Juma anataka kununua vyakula.	Juma wants to buy food.
machungwa	Juma anataka kununua machungwa.	Juma wants to buy oranges.

muhindi nyama sukari m̀kate

C. Direction words plus ya.

kusini	Juma na Hasani wanakwenda kusini ya Bagamoyo.	Juma and Hasani are going to the south of Bagamoyo.
kaskazini	Juma na Hasani wanakwenda kaskazini ya Bagamoyo.	Juma and Hasani are going to the north of Bagamoyo.

mashariki magharibi

3.

A. Concord: Noun and -ko.

soko	Soko liko wapi?	Where is the market?
masoko	Masoko yako wapi?	Where are the markets?
vitu vyangu	Vitu vyangu viko wapi?	Where are my things?

kijiji	Kijiji kiko wapi?	Where is the village?
m̀ji wa Utete	M̀ji wa Utete uko wapi?	Where is the town of Utete?

B. -*ko*: affirmative *vs.* negative forms.

Juma	Juma yuko sokoni?	Is Juma at the market?
	Hayuko sokoni.	He is not at the market.
	Yuko nyumbani.	He is at home.
watoto	Watoto wako sokoni?	Are the children at the market?
	Hawako sokoni.	They are not at the market.
	Wako nyumbani.	They are at home.
Njoroge	Njoroge yuko sokoni?	Is Njoroge at the market?
	Hayuko sokoni.	He is not at the market.
	Yuko nyumbani.	He is at home.
Juma na Njoroge	Juma na Njoroge wako sokoni?	Are Juma and Njoroge at the market?
	Hawako sokoni.	They are not at the market.
	Wako nyumbani.	They are at home.

Unit 24

1. Basic Dialogue. Where has Juma gone?

Abasi

amekwenda	he is gone
Juma amekwenda wapi?	Where has Juma gone?

Adija

Amekwenda sokoni.	He's gone to the market.

Abasi

Kufanya nini?	What for?

Adija

-ona	see
kama	if, whether
-patikana	be available
Kuona kama machungwa yanapatikana.	To see whether there are any oranges to be had.

Abasi

tayari	ready
-isha	finish
Mimi nimekwisha kwenda tayari.	I've already gone [there].
~bichi	unripe
Kuna machache tu mabichi.	There are only a few green ones.
~tano	five
Nimenunua matano.	I bought five.

Notes

A. Adjectives which do not take concordial prefixes.

Nyama ni tayari.	The meat is ready.
Nyama ni nzuri.	The meat is good.
Chakula ni tayari.	The food is ready.
Chakula ni kizuri.	The food is good.
Watoto ni tayari.	The children are ready.

Some adjectives, of which tayari 'ready' is one, do not take prefixes to show agreement with the nouns to which they refer.

B. Adjective stems preceded by subject prefixes.

A more correct way of saying the same thing is as follows:

Nyama i tayari.	The meat is ready.
Chakula ki tayari.	The food is ready.
Watoto wa tayari.	The children are ready.

The list of 'subject prefixes' used in this construction is identical with the list used before -ko, -po, in that the Class 1 (singular of WA class) prefix is yu, and not a-.

The adjective tayari, as illustrated in Note A, is one of a list of adjectives which never take concordial prefixes. But after subject prefixes, even those adjectives which do on occasion take concordial prefixes, appear without those prefixes. Compare this example from Ashton (p. 94):

Mkate huu u tamu.	This loaf is sweet.
Mkate huu ni mtamu.	This loaf is (a) sweet (one).

In the Dialogue, tayari is 'used adverbially.' That is, it does not modify any noun, and does not occupy a slot usually filled by nouns. It is used here as a counterpart of English 'already.' This usage of tayari after the me-tense is not fully accepted as standard.

C. The me-tense.

Juma anakwenda wapi?	Where is Juma going?
Juma amekwenda wapi?	Where has Juma gone?

The tense prefix -me- occurs in the same slot as -na-. -me- indicates completion of an action or process. The -me- forms of some verbs are generally translated into English by using an English 'present perfect' tense.

D. Use of kw in inflected forms with the stem -isha.

Nimekwisha.	I have finished.
Nimekwenda.	I have gone.
Nimenunua.	I have bought.

The verb -isha, like -enda, keeps the kw- after certain tense prefixes including -me- and -na-.

E. Some speakers use ikiwa 'it being' in place of kama where that word appears in the basic dialogue for this unit.

2.

A. Numbers 1-5 with MA class.

moja	Nimenunua chungwa moja.	I have bought one orange.
mawili	Nimenunua machungwa mawili.	I have bought two oranges.

matatu man̂ne matano

B. Numbers 1-5 with N-class.

moja	Nimenunua ndizi moja.	I have bought one banana.
mbili	Nimenunua ndizi mbili.	I have bought two bananas.

tatu n̂ne tano

C. Numbers 1-5 with MI class.

m̂moja	Nimenunua m̂kate m̂moja.	I have bought a loaf of bread.
miwili	Nimenunua mikate miwili.	I have bought two loaves of bread.

mitatu min̂ne mitano

D. -patikana; concord of noun and subject prefix.

ndizi	Ndizi zinapatikana sokoni leo?	Are bananas available in the market today?
chai	Chai inapatikana sokoni leo?	Is tea available in the market today?

m̀kate	M̀kate unapatikana sokoni leo?	Is bread available in the market today?
maembe	Maembe yanapatikana sokoni leo?	Are mangoes available in the market today?
nyama	Nyama inapatikana sokoni leo?	Is meat available in the market today?

3.

A. Concord of noun in first sentence with 'object' of na.

machungwa	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua machungwa.	Juma has gone to the market to buy oranges.
	Hatunayo nyumbani.	We don't have any at home.
mayai	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua mayai.	Juma has gone to the market to buy eggs.
	Hatunayo nyumbani.	We don't have any at home.
sukari	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua sukari.	Juma has gone to the market to buy sugar.
	Hatunayo nyumbani.	We don't have any at home.
nyama	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua nyama.	Juma has gone to the market to buy meat.
	Hatunayo nyumbani.	We don't have any at home.
ndizi	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua ndizi.	Juma has gone to the market to buy bananas.
	Hatunazo nyumbani.	We don't have any at home.
nazi	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua nazi.	Juma has gone to the market to buy coconuts.
	Hatunazo nyumbani.	We don't have any at home.

B.

mawili	Tunahitaji mananasi?	Do we need pineapples?
	La, tunayo mawili tayari.	No, we have two already.
matatu	Tunahitaji mananasi?	Do we need pineapples?
	La, tunayo matatu tayari.	No, we have three already.
mánǹe	Tunahitaji mananasi?	Do we need pineapples?
	La, tunayo mánǹe tayari.	No, we have four already.
matano	Tunahitaji mananasi?	Do we need pineapples?
	La, tunayo matano tayari.	No, we have five already.

[N. B. Some speakers prefer tunataka to tunahitaji in this sentence.]

C.

mayai	M̀nayo mayai?	Do you have eggs?
	Ndiyo, tunayo mawili.	Yes, we have two of them.
ndizi	M̀nazo ndizi?	Do you have bananas?
	Ndiyo, tunazo mbili.	Yes, we have two of them.
watoto	M̀nao watoto?	Do you have children?
	Ndiyo, tunao wawili.	Yes, we have two of them.

D.

mayai	M̀nayo mayai?	Do you have eggs?
	Ndiyo, tunayo matatu.	Yes, we have three of them.
ndizi	M̀nazo ndizi?	Do you have bananas?
	Ndiyo, tunazo tatu.	Yes, we have three of them.
watoto	M̀nao watoto?	Do you have children?
	Ndiyo, tunao watatu.	Yes, we have three of them.

E.

mayai	M̀nayo mayai?	Do you have eggs?
	Ndiyo, tunayo mánǹe.	Yes, we have four of them.
ndizi	M̀nazo ndizi?	Do you have bananas?
	Ndiyo, tunazo ǹne.	Yes, we have four of them.

watoto	M̊nao watoto? Ndiyo, tunao wán̊ne.	Do you have children? Yes, we have four of them.

F.

mayai	M̊nayo mayai? Ndiyo, tunayo matano.	Do you have eggs? Yes, we have five of them.
ndizi	M̊nazo ndizi? Ndiyo, tunazo tano.	Do you have bananas? Yes, we have five of them.
watoto	M̊nao watoto? Ndiyo, tunao watano.	Do you have children? Yes, we have five of them.

G.

Hamisi analeta machungwa mabivu?	Is Hamisi bringing ripe oranges?
Ndiyo, amekwisha leta mabivu.	Yes, he has already brought ripe ones.
Analeta mabichi sasa.	He is bringing unripe ones now.

In the above conversation substitute for machungwa: mananasi, maembe, ndizi.

Conversation Starters

1. A asks B where C has gone, and what he has gone there for.

2. A is selling fruit. B, a prospective customer, asks about the condition of one kind of fruit after another.

Unit 25

1. Basic Dialogue. Gone to pay taxes.

Magese

Unakwenda wapi?	Where are you going?

Abasi

boma (MA)	District Office
Ninakwenda bomani.	I'm going to the District Office.

Magese

kodi (N)	tax
-lipa	pay
kodi ya nyumba	rent/house tax
Kulipa kodi ya nyumba?	To pay [your] house tax?

Abasi

La. Nimekwisha lipa kodi ya nyumba.	No, I've already paid [my] house tax.
kichwa (VI)	head
ada (N)	fee
shule (N)	school

(skuli (N) is used in many parts of East Africa)

Ninakwenda kulipa kodi ya kichwa, na ada ya shule.	I'm going there to pay [my] poll tax, and [my] school fees.
Umelipa kodi ya kichwa?	Have you paid [your] poll tax?

Magese

bado	not yet
Hapana, sijalipa bado.	No, I haven't (paid yet).

Notes

A. -mekwisha plus verb stem.

Nimekwisha kwenda.	I've already gone.
Nimekwisha lipa.	I've already paid.

Almost any verb stem can be placed after -mekwisha. The English translation of such constructions is usually '______ has already finished ______ing.'

B. The -ja- negative counterpart of the me-tense.

nimelipa	I have paid
sijalipa	I haven't paid
hatujalipa	we haven't paid
hatulipi	we don't pay
hajaenda (or hajakwenda)	he hasn't gone

One set of negative forms corresponding to the affirmative -me- forms contains ha plus subject prefix plus the prefix -ja-. Note that the final a of the stem does not change in forms containing -ja-.

2.

A. Umelipa . . . ?

ada ya shule	Umelipa ada ya shule?	Have you paid the school fees?
kodi ya kichwa	Umelipa kodi ya kichwa?	Have you paid the poll tax (head tax)?

kodi ya nyumba   shule   nyumba   kichwa

B. -ja- negative of me-tense.

kichwa	Bado hatujalipa kodi ya kichwa.	Not yet, we have not paid the poll tax.
shule	Bado hatujalipa ada ya shule.	Not yet, we have not paid the school fees.
nyumba	Bado hatujalipa kodi ya nyumba.	Not yet, we have not paid the house rent.

C.

nyumba	Juma na Hamisi bado hawajalipa kodi ya nyumba.	Juma and Hamisi have not yet paid the house rent.

kichwa shule

D.

kichwa	Abdallah bado hajalipa kodi ya kichwa.	Abdallah has not yet paid the poll tax.

shule nyumba

E.

shule	Bado hujalipa ada ya shule?	Haven't you paid your school fees yet?

kichwa nyumba

F.

kichwa	Bado sijalipa kodi ya kichwa.	I haven't paid the poll tax yet.

shule nyumba

F.

nyumba	Bado ham̀jalipa kodi ya nyumba?	Haven't you (pl.) paid the house rent yet?

kichwa shule

3.

A. *Me*-tense: affirmative *vs*. (-*ja*-) negative.

(wewe)	Umelipa kodi ya kichwa? Hapana, sijalipa.	Have you paid the poll tax? No, I have not paid it.
(ninyi)	M̀melipa kodi ya kichwa? Hapana, hatujalipa.	Have you (pl.) paid poll tax? No, we haven't paid it.
(yeye)	Amelipa kodi ya kichwa? Hapana, hajalipa.	Has he paid poll tax? No, he hasn't paid it.

(wao)	Wamelipa kodi ya kichwa?	Have they paid poll tax?
	Hapana, hawajalipa.	No, they haven't paid it.

B.

(wewe)	Umeuza nyumba?	Have you sold the house?
	La, sijauza.	No, I haven't sold it.
(ninyi)	Mmeuza nyumba?	Have you sold the house?
	La, hatujauza.	No, we haven't sold it.
(yeye)	Ameuza nyumba?	Has he sold the house?
	La, hajauza.	No, he hasn't sold it.
(wao)	Wameuza nyumba?	Have they sold the house?
	La, hawajauza.	No, they haven't sold it.

C.

Juma	Juma amekwenda sokoni?	Has Juma gone to the market?
	La, hajaenda.	No, he hasn't gone yet.
watoto	Watoto wamekwenda sokoni?	Have the children gone to the market?
	La, hawajaenda.	No, they haven't gone yet.
Daudi	Daudi amekwenda sokoni?	Has Daudi gone to the market?
	La, hajaenda.	No, he hasn't gone yet.
Daudi na Hamisi	Daudi na Hamisi wamekwenda sokoni?	Have Daudi and Hamisi gone to to the market?
	La, hawajaenda.	No, they haven't gone yet.

Unit 26

1. Basic Dialogue. Where has Hamisi gone?

Ochieng

Hamisi yuko nyumbani?	Is Hamisi at home?

Adija

La, amekwenda Magomeni.	No, he's gone to Magomeni.

Ochieng

Kufanya nini?	What for? ('To do what?')

Adija

-tazama	look at
m̀zazi (WA)	parent
Kuwatazama wazazi wake.	To see his parents.
baba (N. pers.)	father
m̀gonjwa (WA)	a sick person
Baba yake ni m̀gonjwa.	His father is ill.
-nunulia	buy for
dawa (N)	medicine
Amekwenda kum̀nunulia dawa.	He's gone to buy him some medicine.

Notes

A. Regular formation of applied stems.

Amenunua dawa.	He has bought some medicine.
Ametununulia dawa.	He has bought us some medicine.
Ameleta dawa.	He has brought some medicine.
Ametuletea dawa.	He has brought us some medicine.

In this discussion, the 'root' of the verb corresponding to English 'bring' is -let-, and the affirmative indicative 'stem' is -leta.

The verbs in the second and fourth sentences both contain instances of the 'applied,' or 'prepositional' suffix. If the last vowel of the verb root is -u- (as in nunu-) or i or a, then the 'applied' suffix is the vowel i. If the last vowel of the root is -e- (as in -let-), then the 'applied' suffix has the vowel -e-.

If the last sound of the root is a vowel (as in nunu-) then the vowel of the applied suffix is preceded by -l-. If the last sound of the root is a consonant (as in let-), then the applied suffix consists of a vowel only.

[Note that in the stem -letea, the root is -let-, the applied suffix is -e- and the final vowel is -a.]

To put the same information in a different form, the applied stems of the Bantu verbs in Swahili may be predicted on the basis of the simple stems as follows:

Simple stem: root ending in consonant	Simple stem: root ending in vowel	Applied stem:	
-kuta		-kutia	
	-nunua		-nunulia
-lipa		-lipia	
	-tia		-tilia
-pata		-patia	
	-zaa		-zalia
-soma		-somea	
	-toa		-tolea
-leta		-letea	
	-pokea		-pokelea

2.

A. Words with and without -ni, following yuko.

wapi?	Hamisi yuko wapi?	Where is Hamisi?

nyumba	Hamisi yuko nyumbani.	Hamisi is at home.
m̀ji	Hamisi yuko m̀jini.	Hamisi is in town.
soko	Hamisi yuko sokoni.	Hamisi is at the market.
Morogoro	Hamisi yuko Morogoro.	Hamisi is in Morogoro.
Utete	Hamisi yuko Utete.	Hamisi is at Utete.

B.

wapi?	Hamisi na Juma wako wapi?	Where are Hamisi and Juma?
nyumba	Hamisi na Juma wako nyumbani?	Are Hamisi and Juma at home?
kijiji	Hamisi na Juma wako kijijini?	Are Hamisi and Juma at the village?
shule	Hamisi na Juma wako shuleni?	Are Hamisi and Juma at school?
Utete	Hamisi na Juma wako Utete?	Are Hamisi and Juma at Utete?
Morogoro	Hamisi na Juma wako Morogoro?	Are Hamisi and Juma in Morogoro?

C.

wazazi wake	Daudi amekwenda m̀jini kuwatazama wazazi wake.	Daudi has gone to town to see his parents.
rafiki zake	Daudi amekwenda m̀jini kuwatazama rafiki zake.	Daudi has gone to town to see his friends.
Hamisi na Juma	Daudi amekwenda m̀jini kuwatazama Hamisi na Juma.	Daudi has gone to town to see Hamisi and Juma.
watoto wake	Daudi amekwenda m̀jini kuwatazama watoto wake.	Daudi has gone to town to see his children.

D.

rafiki yake	Hasani amekwenda kijijini kum̀tazama rafiki yake.	Hasani has gone to the village to see his friend.

baba yake Daudi

E.

baba yangu	Nimem̀nunulia baba yangu dawa.	I have bought my father some medicine.

m̀toto wangu Daudi

F.

dawa	Wazazi wangu wameninunulia dawa.	My parents have bought me some medicine.
chakula	Wazazi wangu wameninunulia chakula.	My parents have bought me some food.
vitu vingi	Wazazi wangu wameninunulia vitu vingi.	My parents have bought me many things.

3.

A. Simple vs. applied stems.

mihindi	Baba amenunua mihindi? Ndiyo, ametununulia miwili.	Has father bought some maize? Yes. He has bought us two of them. (i.e. two ears)
mananasi	Baba amenunua mananasi? Ndiyo, ametununulia mawili.	Has father bought some pineapples? Yes. He has bought us two of them.
ndizi	Baba amenunua ndizi? Ndiyo, ametununulia mbili.	Has father bought bananas? Yes. He has bought us two of them.
nazi	Baba amenunua nazi? Ndiyo, ametununulia mbili.	Has father bought coconuts? Yes. He has bought us two of them.

B. Me-tense: affirmative vs. (-ja-) negative; change of person from question to answer.

(wewe)	Baba amekununulia nini? Hajaninunulia kitu.	What has father bought you? He has not bought me anything.
(sisi)	Baba ametununulia nini? Hajatununulia kitu.	What has father bought us? He has not bought us anything.
Watoto wake	Baba amewanunulia watoto wake nini? Hajawanunulia kitu.	What has father bought his children? He has not bought them anything.

C.

Unaninunulia nini? Sikununulii kitu.	What are you buying me? I am not buying you anything.
Umeninunulia nini? Sijakununulia kitu.	What have you bought me? I have not bought you anything yet.

D.

Wanatununulia nini? Hawatununulii kitu.	What are they buying us? They are not buying us anything.
Wametununulia nini? Hawajatununulia kitu.	What have they bought us? They have not bought us anything yet.

D.

Hamisi anaṁnunulia Daudi nini? Haṁnunulii kitu.	What is Hamisi buying Daudi? He is not buying him anything.
Hamisi ameṁnunulia Daudi nini? Hajaṁnunulia kitu.	What has Hamisi bought Daudi? He has not bought him anything yet.

Conversation Starters

1. A is looking for C. B explains that C has gone to town to get some things for his child, who is ill.

Unit 27

1. Basic Dialogue. Who is that?

Abasi	
Nani huyo?	Who is that?
Butler	
Huyo ni Bwana Aramian.	That is Mr. Aramian.
Abasi	
-toka	come from, go from
Anatoka wapi?	Where does he come from?
Butler	
Anatoka Amerika.	From America.
Abasi	
-ja	come
Amekuja kufanya nini?	What has he come to do?
Butler (American)	
-tumwa	be sent
serikali (N)	government
˜etu	our
-eleza	explain
mambo (pl. MA)	matters
n̊chi (N)	land, country
Ametumwa na serikali, kueleza mambo ya n̊chi yetu.	He has been sent by his government, as an information officer. ('he has been sent by the government, to explain matters of our country')

Notes

A. Use of *ku* in certain inflected forms of verbs with monosyllabic stems.

amekuja	he has come

The verb -*ja* 'come' is like -*enda* and -*isha* in that *ku* is used between the tense prefix -*me*- and the root. This is, in fact, true of all verbs whose root consists of a consonant only, and whose stems are thus monosyllabic.

2. -*toka* with place expressions.

A.

wapi?	Bwana Hasani anatoka wapi?	Where does Mr. Hasani come from?
kusini	Bwana Hasani anatoka kusini.	Mr. Hasani comes from the South.
Nairobi	Bwana Hasani anatoka Nairobi.	Mr. Hasani comes from Nairobi.
mashariki	Bwana Hasani anatoka mashariki.	Mr. Hasani comes from the East.

B. Concords with some new nouns.

vitu	Ametueleza habari za vitu hivi.	He has explained to us the details of these things.
mambo	Ametueleza mambo haya.	He has explained these affairs to us.
habari	Ametueleza habari hizi.	He has explained this news to us.

C. -*jua* plus infinitive.

vitu	Sijui kukueleza habari za vitu hivi.	I don't know how to explain to you the details of these things.
mambo	Sijui kukueleza mambo haya.	I don't know how to explain these affairs to you.
habari	Sijui kukueleza habari hizi.	I don't know how to explain this news to you.

3.

A. Person change from question to answer, me-tense.

(yeye)	Amekuja kufanya nini?	What has he come to do?
	Ametumwa na serikali yake.	He has been sent by his government.
(wewe)	Umekuja kufanya nini?	What have you come to do?
	Nimetumwa na serikali yangu.	I have been sent by my government.
(ninyi)	M̀mekuja kufanya nini?	What have you (pl.) come to do?
	Tumetumwa na serikali yetu.	We have been sent by our government.

B. Person agreement between subject prefix and possessive stem.

yangu	Nimetumwa na serikali kueleza mambo ya ǹchi yangu.	I have been sent by the govern- to explain the affairs of my country.
yake	Ametumwa na serikali kueleza mambo ya ǹchi yake.	He has been sent by the govern- to explain the affairs of his country.
yako	Umetumwa na serikali kueleza mambo ya ǹchi yako.	You have been sent by the government to explain the affairs of your country.
yetu	Tumetumwa na serikali kueleza mambo ya ǹchi yetu.	We have been sent by the government to explain the affairs of our country.

N. B. The second verb in each of these sentences is in the infinitive form. An alternative and possibly more correct way of saying the same thing would use subjunctive forms instead (See Units 42-45).

Unit 28

1. Basic Dialogue. An introduction.

Abdallah	
Huyu ni Bwana Hasani.	This is Hassan.
Aramian	
siku (N)	day
Habari za siku nyingi?	What news of many days?
Hasani	
Njema. (or: Nzuri.)	Fine.
Aramian	
-furahi	be happy
Nimefurahi kukuona.	I'm happy to know ('see') you.
Hasani	
pia	also, too
Na mimi pia, nimefurahi kukuona.	And I'm happy to know you too.
Aramian	
Nyumbani hawajambo?	Is everyone all right at your house? ('At home they have no trouble?')
Abdallah	
Hawajambo.	[Yes], they're fine.
Aramian	
Watoto nao hawajambo?	And your children? ('children and they, they have no trouble?')

Abdallah

salama	with peace
Salama.	They're fine.

Notes

A. *Bwana* used with given names.

Huyu ni Bw. Hasani.	This is Hassan.

Unlike English, Swahili uses the title Bwana before given names as well as before surnames.

B. *Me*-forms of certain verbs translated into English with present tense.

Nimefurahi kukuona.	I'm glad to see you.

The -*me*- forms of the verb -*furahi* 'be happy' are translated into English with the present tense, and not the present perfect.

C. *Na* with personal pronoun stems.

The set of forms which includes *nao* 'and they'/'with them' is:

	sg.	plu.
1.	nami	nasi
2.	nawe	nanyi
3.	naye	nao

2. This dialogue is a concatenation of social formulae. Practice it until you can go through it without mistakes in 13 seconds or less.

3. A and B have just sat down to order lunch. C joins them and is introduced by A to B. They then proceed to order lunch.

A and C discuss the whereabouts of an absent friend, D. D has gone to his home town to take care of official business and to visit friends and relatives.

Unit 29

1. Basic Dialogue. Do you know Mr. _______?

Aramian

Wam̂jua Bwana Hasani?	Do you know Hasani?

Abdallah

Ndiyo, nam̂jua sana.	Yes, I know him very well.

Aramian

humu	in here
Akaa wapi? Akaa m̂jini humu? (or: Anakaa...)	Where does he live? Does he live in this city?

Abdallah

katika	in
jimbo	province
La. Hapana, bwana, akaa katika jimbo la Tanga.	No, he doesn't. He lives in Tanga Province.

Aramian

tangu	since
Sijamwona kwa siku nyingi. (or: tangu siku nyingi)	I haven't seen him for several days.

Abdallah

yeye	he
m̂ke	wife
m̂kewe	his wife
˜ao	their
jamaa	family, associate

Yeye na m̂kewe wamekwenda Tanga kuwatazama jamaa zao.	He and his wife have gone to Tanga to visit their families.

Notes

A. Difference between concords used with *m̂ji* and *m̂jini*.

Akaa (or:Anakaa. . .) m̂jini humu.

Akaa (or:Anakaa. . .) kataka m̂ji huu.

He lives in this city.

The words *humu* 'in here' and *huu* are both 'proximal demonstratives'. *Huu* agrees with the MI-class noun *m̂ji*. But when the same noun *m̂ji* appears with the locative suffix -*ni*, it is for concordial purposes transferred out of the MI-class.

B. Some prepositions.

katika m̂ji huu	in this city
kwa siku chache	for a few days

The words *katika* 'in' *tangu* 'since' and *kwa* 'by, for, with' are prepositions.

C. 'Animate' and 'personal' subdivisions of the N class of nouns.

ordinary N-class	_nyumba *y*ake *i*ko wapi?
N-personal	_rafiki *y*ake *yu*ko wapi?
N-animate	_ng'ombe *w*ake *yu*ko wapi?
ordinary WA-class	*m̂*toto *w*ake *yu*ko wapi?

Ordinary nouns of the N-class singular have no class prefix syllable (although from a historical point of view the nasal consonant with which many of them begin is a relic of a prefix which existed in an earlier stage of the language). They require the prefix *y*-. . . They require the prefix *y*- with possessive stems, and the prefix *i*- with -*ko*. They stand for inanimate objects.

Ordinary nouns of the WA-class singular have the class prefix *m̂*- (*mw*- before vowels). They require the prefix *w*- with possessive stems, and the prefix *yu*- with -*ko*. They stand for animals or people.

In addition, there are a number of nouns that display some of the characteristics of each of these classes. We shall call them 'N-personal' nouns (e.g. *rafiki* 'friend') and 'N-animate' nouns (e.g. *ng'ombe* 'ox, cow'). As indicated in the diagram, 'N-personal' nouns are like the ordinary N-class nouns in that they themselves contain no prefix syllable and in the possessive concords which they require. They are like the ordinary WA-class nouns in all their other concords.

'N-animate' nouns, which stand for animals, are like WA-nouns in this respect, and also with respect to the possessive concords. They are like the N-class only in the form of the nouns themselves.

The above treatment of 'N-personal' and 'N-animate' nouns covers the principal facts, but further details may be found in Ch. XV of Ashton's *Swahili Grammar*. As pointed out there, speakers of coastal as well as up-country types of Swahili show a certain amount of latitude in use of concords with these hybrid noun classes.

D. Difference between *m̀ji* and *kijiji*.

M̀ji and *kijiji*. One of the readers of the original version of this course has pointed out that 'The distinction between *mji* and *kijiji* is not so clear cut as between 'town' and 'village'. *Kijiji* is not much used except in a comparative sense. Kiambaa, for example, would certainly be called *mji* except when it is being compared directly or indirectly with a much larger collection of dwellings such as Nairobi.'

2.

A. Concords with N-personal *vs.* WA nouns.

jamaa	Wamekwenda Tanga kuwatazama jamaa zao.	They have gone to Tanga to see their relatives.
rafiki	Wamekwenda Tanga kuwatazama rafiki zao.	They have gone to Tanga to see their friends.
watoto	Wamekwenda Tanga kuwatazama watoto wao.	They have gone to Tanga to see their children.

B.

rafiki	M̀kewe amekwenda Malindi kum̀tazama rafiki yake.	His wife has gone to Malindi to see her friend.

baba	M̀kewe amekwenda Malindi kum̀tazama baba yake.	His wife has gone to Malindi to see her father.
jamaa	M̀kewe amekwenda Malindi kum̀tazama jamaa yake.	His wife has gone to Malindi to see her relative.

C. Concords with names of place categories.

jimbo	Bwana Fulani akaa katika jimbo la Tanga.	Mr. So-and-so lives in Tanga district.
ǹchi	Bwana Fulani akaa katika ǹchi ya Tanganyika.	Mr. So-and-so lives in Tanganyika.
m̀ji	Bwana Fulani akaa katika m̀ji wa Nairobi.	Mr. So-and-so lives in Nairobi.
kijiji	Bwana Fulani akaa katika kijiji cha Kiambaa.	Mr. So-and-so lives in Kiambaa township.

3.

A. Change of persons from question to answer: a - tense.

(wewe)	Wakaa wapi? Nakaa hapa.	Where do you live? I live here.
(ninyi)	Mwakaa wapi? Twakaa hapa.	Where do you (pl.) live? We live here.
Rafiki yako	Rafiki yako akaa wapi? Akaa hapa.	Where does your friend live? He lives here.
Rafiki zako	Rafiki zako wakaa wapi? Wakaa hapa.	Where do your friends live? They live here.

B. Affirmative vs. negative, with person change.

baba	Baba yako akaa Morogoro? Hapana, hakai Morogoro, akaa Utete.	Does your father live in Morogoro? No, he doesn't live in Morogoro. He lives in Utete.

(wewe)	Wakaa Morogoro? Hapana, sikai Morogoro, nakaa Utete.	Do you live in Morogoro? No, I don't live in Morogoro. I live in Utete.
(ninyi)	Mwakaa Morogoro? Hapana, hatukai Morogoro, twakaa Utete.	Do you (pl.) live in Morogoro? No, we don't live in Morogoro. We live in Utete.
Rafiki zako	Rafiki zako wakaa Morogoro? Hapana, hawakai Morogoro, wakaa Utete.	Do your friends live in Morogoro? No, they don't live in Morogoro. They live in Utete.

[N. B. Some speakers prefer anakaa or anaishi to akaa in these sentences.]

C.

(wewe)	Wam̀jua Bw. Abdallah? Hapana. Sim̀jui.	Do you know Abdallah? No, I don't know him.
baba	Baba yako am̀jua Bw. Abdallah? Hapana. Ham̀jui.	Does your father know Abdallah? No, he doesn't know him.
rafiki	Rafiki zako wam̀jua Bw. Abdallah? Hapana. Hawam̀jui.	Do your friends know Abdallah? No, they don't know him.
(ninyi)	Mwam̀jua Bw. Abdallah? Hapana. Hatum̀jui.	Do you (pl.) know Abdallah? No, we don't know him.

[N. B. Some speakers prefer unam̀jua or unam̀fahamu to wam̀jua in these sentences.]

Unit 30

1. Basic Dialogue. Mr. Ochieng.

Hamisi

Ochieng	(a Luo surname)
Wam̂jua Bwana Ochieng?	Do you know Mr. Ochieng?

Adija

La, sim̂jui.	No, I don't know him.
mara (N)	time
zamani	formerly
-anza	begin
Sikumwona zamani; leo ndiyo mara ya kwanza.	I've seen him for the first time today. ('I didn't see him formerly; today is the first time.')
kazi (N)	work
Afanya kazi wapi?	Where does he work?

Hamisi

Kiambú.	In Kiambú. (a town in a Kikuyu area)

Adija

lugha (N)	language
-sema	speak, say
Asema lugha ya Kikuyu?	Does he speak Kikuyu?

Hamisi

-endelea	to continue
Asema kidogo, lakini aendelea vizuri.	He speaks a little, but he gets along very well.

[N. B. Some speakers prefer anasema to asema in these sentences.]

Notes

A. Special form (mw) of 3 sg. object prefix before a verb stem that begins with a vowel.

sim̀jui	I don't know him.
simwoni	I don't see him.

Before a verb stem beginning with a vowel, the 3 sg. object prefix has the form mw-.

2.

A. Swahili versions of names of languages.

Swahili	Bwana Kamau asema Kiswahili vizuri sana.	Mr. Kamau speaks Swahili very well.
English	Bwana Kamau asema Kiingereza vizuri sana.	Mr. Kamau speaks English very well.
Nyamwezi	Bwana Kamau asema Kinyamwezi vizuri sana.	Mr. Kamau speaks Nyamwezi very well.
Luganda	Bwana Kamau asema Kiganda vizuri sana.	Mr. Kamau speaks Luganda very well.
Masai	Bwana Kamau asema Kimasai vizuri sana.	Mr. Kamau speaks Masai very well.

3.

A. Noun in agreement with two subject prefixes, affirmative verbs.

Mimi	Mimi nasema Kiswahili kidogo tu, lakini naendelea vizuri.	I speak very little Swahili, but I get along well.
Rafiki yetu	Rafiki yetu asema Kiswahili kidogo tu, lakini aendelea vizuri.	Our friend speaks very little Swahili, but he gets along well.

Rafiki zetu	Rafiki zetu wasema Kiswahili kidogo tu, lakini waendelea vizuri.	Our friends speak very little Swahili, but they get along well.
Daudi	Daudi asema Kiswahili kidogo tu, lakini aendelea vizuri.	Daudi speaks very little Swahili, but he gets along well.

[N. B. Some speakers prefer the -na- forms of the verb in these sentences.]

B. Same, with negative verbs.

Mimi	Sisemi Kiswahili; siendelei vizuri.	I don't speak Swahili; I don't get along well.
Rafiki yangu	Hasemi Kiswahili; haendelei vizuri.	He doesn't speak Swahili; he doesn't get along well.
Rafiki zangu	Hawasemi Kiswahili; hawaendelei vizuri.	They don't speak Swahili; they don't get along well.

C. Ǹchini as an equivalent for katika ǹchi.

Kiambú	Kiambú ni m̀ji m̀kubwa ǹchini (or: katika ǹchi) mwa Wakikuyu.	Kiambu is a large town in Kikuyu Country.
Tanga	Tanga ni jimbo kubwa katika ǹchi ya Tanganyika.	Tanga is a large province in Tanganyika.

4. Describe a real or imaginary person. Tell where he is from, where he works, etc.

Unit 31

1. Basic Dialogue. What kind of work do you do?

Mutisya	
Wafanya kazi gani?	What kind of work do you do?
Sangai	
ukarani (U)	the work or status of being a clerk
Nafanya kazi ya ukarani.	(I do) clerical (work).
Mutisya	
Wapi?	Where?
Sangai	
idara (N)	department
elimu (N)	education
Katika Idara ya Elimu.	In the Department of Education.
Mutisya	
-pata	get
m̂shahara (MI)	pay
Wapata m̂shahara wa kutosha? (or: Unapata...)	Do you get adequate pay?
Sangai	
-saidia	help
mahitaji (pl. MA)	needs
Hapana, lakini hunisaidia kwa mahitaji yangu.	No, but it helps toward my everyday needs.

Mutisya

-penda	like, love
Waipenda kazi yako? (or: Unaipenda. . .)	Do you like your work?

Sangai

Hivyo hivyo. (or: Vivi hivi, or: Hivi hivi.)	So-so.

Notes

A. Noun plus -a plus infinitive.

m̀shahara wa kutosha	adequate pay

Note that the word-for-word equivalent would be 'pay of to suffice'.

2.

A. Concord: Possessives with N-personal nouns.

baba	Nam̀saidia baba yangu katika kazi yake.	I help my father in his work.
rafiki	Nam̀saidia rafiki yangu katika kazi yake.	I help my friend in his work.
rafiki (pl.)	Nawasaidia rafiki zangu katika kazi yao.	I help my friends in their work.
watoto	Nawasaidia watoto wangu katika kazi yao.	I help my children in their work.

B. Concord: Possessives and adjectives with N-personal nouns.

rafiki yako	Rafiki yako ni m̀baya sana.	Your friend is very bad.
m̀toto wako	M̀toto wako ni m̀baya sana.	Your child is very bad.
rafiki zako	Rafiki zako ni wabaya sana.	Your friends are very bad.

watoto wako	Watoto wako ni wabaya sana.	Your children are very bad.

C. Concord: N-animate nouns.

ng'ombe	Ng'ombe huyu ni m̂baya sana.	This cow is very bad.
nguruwe	Nguruwe huyu ni m̂baya sana.	This pig is very bad.
kitu	Kitu hiki ni kibaya sana.	This thing is very bad.
chungwa	Chungwa hili ni baya sana.	This orange is very bad.
m̂kate	M̂kate huu ni m̂baya sana.	This bread is very bad.
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe hawa ni wabaya sana.	These cows are very bad.
samaki	Samaki hawa ni wabaya sana.	These fish are very bad.
vitu	Vitu hivi ni vibaya sana.	These things are very bad.
viazi	Viazi hivi ni vibaya sana.	These potatoes are very bad.
maembe	Maembe haya ni mabaya sana.	These mangoes are very bad.
mikate	Mikate hii ni mibaya sana.	These loaves of bread are very bad.

Repeat the above exercise using si in place of ni.

3.

A. Subject in negative statement correlated with object in imperative.

mimi	Siijui kazi hii. Tafadhali nisaidie.	I don't know this work. Please help me.
yeye	Haijui kazi hii. Tafadhali m̂saidie.	He doesn't know this work. Please help him.
sisi	Hatuijui kazi hii. Tafadhali tusaidie.	We don't know this work. Please help us.
watoto	Watoto hawaijui kazi hii. Tafadhali wasaidie.	The children do not know this work. Please help them.

B. Concord: Noun, possessive and adjective.

vyakula	Tuna vyakula vya kutosha? La. Tuna vichache tu.	Do we have enough food? No, we only have a little.
viazi	Tuna viazi vya kutosha? La. Tuna vichache tu.	Do we have enough potatoes? No, we only have a few.
siagi	Tuna siagi ya kutosha? La. Tuna kidogo tu.	Do we have enough butter? No, we only have a little.
chai	Tuna chai ya kutosha? La. Tuna kidogo tu.	Do we have enough tea? No, we only have a little.
mikate	Tuna mikate ya kutosha? La. Tuna michache tu.	Do we have enough bread? No, we only have a little.
matunda	Tuna matunda ya kutosha? La. Tuna machache tu.	Do we have enough fruit? No, we only have a little.
mayai	Tuna mayai ya kutosha? La. Tuna machache tu.	Do we have enough eggs? No, we only have a few.

Unit 32

1. Basic Dialogue. You're a farmer aren't you?

Sangai

wewe	you
m̊kulima (WA)	farmer
Wewe u m̊kulima, au sivyo?	You're a farmer, aren't you?

Mirambo

Ndiyo, mimi m̊kulima.	Yes, I'm a farmer.

Sangai

-panda	raise
-otesha	raise
m̊mea (MI)	plant
Waotesha mimea gani?	What kind of crops do you raise?

Mirambo

muhogo (MI)	cassava
maharagwe (pl. MA)	beans
kitunguu (VI)	onion
m̊punga (MI)	rice (growing in field)
Kwa kawaida, napanda muhogo na kuotesha maharagwe, vitunguu na m̊punga.	I generally grow cassava, beans, onions and rice.
mwaka (MI)	year
mvua (N)	rain
Lakini mwaka huu hakuna mvua ya kutosha kuotesha m̊punga.	But this year there isn't enough rain for growing rice.

kwa hivyo	therefore
Kwa hivyo ninapanda muhogo, maharagwe na vitunguu.	For that reason, I'm growing cassava, beans and onions.

Notes

A. Complete sentence consisting of absolute personal pronoun plus noun.

mimi m̊kulima	I'm a farmer
wewe m̊kulima	you are a farmer

Note that this complete sentence in Swahili is literally 'I farmer'.

B. Contrast in meaning between -panda and -otesha.

hatupandi muhogo	we don't grow cassava
hatuoteshi m̊punga	we don't grow rice

Different verbs are used for 'growing' cassava and 'growing' rice. -panda is the word commonly used for the planting and raising of all crops. -otesha (lit. 'cause to sprout') is used particularly of the sprouting of grain in a seed-bed (for transplanting) or on, e.g., a sack, for beer-making. It is also used for the effect of rain or other form of moisture on seed already planted.

2.

A. Concord: Nouns with ~ingi.

mimea	Wakulima wa n̊chi hii waotesha (or: wanaotesha) mimea mingi.	The farmers of this country grow many plants.
maharagwe	Wakulima wa n̊chi hii waotesha maharagwe mengi.	The farmers of this country grow a lot of beans.
m̊punga	Wakulima wa n̊chi hii waotesha m̊punga mwingi.	The farmers of this country grow a lot of rice.
vitunguu	Wakulima wa n̊chi hii waotesha vitunguu vingi.	The farmers of this country grow a lot of onions.

B. Mwaka huu.

muhogo	Mwaka huu, hatupandi muhogo.	This year, we aren't planting cassava.
maharagwe	Mwaka huu, hatupandi maharagwe.	This year, we aren't planting beans.

m̀punga vitunguu

C. Concord: Nouns with ~zuri.

muhogo	M̀kulima huyu apanda muhogo m̀zuri sana. (or: . . . anapanda. . .)	This farmer plants very good cassava.
mimea	M̀kulima huyu apanda mimea mizuri sana.	This farmer plants very good plants.
m̀punga	M̀kulima huyu apanda m̀punga m̀zuri sana.	This farmer plants very good rice.
vitunguu	M̀kulima huyu apanda vitunguu vizuri sana.	This farmer plants very good onions.

3.

A. Comparison of a-tense with na-tense.

mimi	Kwa kawaida, napanda (or: hupanda) muhogo na maharagwe, lakini mwaka huu ninapanda muhogo tu.	Usually, I plant cassava and beans, but this year I am only planting cassava.
m̀kulima huyo	Kwa kawaida, m̀kulima huyo apanda mugogo na vitunguu lakini mwaka huu anapanda muhogo tu.	Usually, that farmer (i.e. one already mentioned) plants cassava and onions, but this year he is only planting cassava.

wakulima hao	Kwa kawaida, wakulima hao wapanda muhogo na maharagwe lakini mwaka huu wanapanda muhogo tu.	Usually, those farmers (i.e. ones already mentioned) plant cassava and beans, but this year they are only planting cassava.

Unit 33

1. Basic Dialogue. What do you do with your crops?

Sangai

mazao (pl. MA)	crops
Wafanya nini na mazao yako? (or: Unafanya. . .)	What do you do with your crops?

Mirambo

~ingine	some, other
Mengine natumia kwa chakula, na mengine kwa kuuza.	Some I use as food, and the others for selling.

Sangai

Wauza mazao yako wapi? (or: Unauza. . .)	Where do you sell them?

Mirambo

Sokoni.	At the market.
m̊ke	wife
-peleka	take, send
M̊ke wangu huyapeleka kuuza.	My wife takes them to sell.
hodari	active, energetic, brave
Yu hodari sana kwa kuuza.	She's very clever in selling.

Notes

A. The adjective *~ingine* as an equivalent for both 'some' and 'other'.

mengine . . . kwa chakula, na mengine kwa kuuza.

. . . some as food, and other for selling.

The adjective *~ingine* corresponds equally to English 'some' and 'other(s)'.

2.

A.

Ṁke wangu	Ṁke wangu yu hodari sana kwa kuuza.	My wife is very active in selling.
Baba yangu	Baba yangu yu hodari sana kwa kuuza.	My father is very active in selling.
Hamisi	Hamisi yu hodari sana kwa kuuza.	Hamisi is very active in selling.
Hamisi na Juma	Hamisi na Juma ni hodari sana kwa kuuza.	Hamisi and Juma are very active in selling.
Watoto	Watoto wetu ni hodari sana kwa kuuza.	Our children are active in selling.

B. Simple noun *vs.* noun with locative -*ni*.

ṁji	Wauza mazao yao ṁjini. (or: Wanauza. . .)	They sell their crops in town.
soko	Wauza mazao yao sokoni.	They sell their crops at the market.
kijiji	Wauza mazao yao kijijini.	They sell their crops in the village.
Morogoro	Wauza mazao yao Morogoro.	They sell their crops in Morogoro.

C. Concord: Noun, possessive, and adjective.

mazao	Mazao yangu mengine natumia kwa chakula.	I use some of my crops for food.
viazi	Viazi vyangu vingine natumia kwa chakula.	I use some of my potatoes for food.
ndizi	Ndizi zangu nyingine natumia kwa chakula.	I use some of my bananas for food.

mahindi	Mahindi yangu mengine natumia kwa chakula.	I use some of my maize for food.

D. Animate plural nouns with ~ingine.

watoto	Watoto wengine hawana chakula cha kutosha mwaka huu.	Some of the children haven't enough food this year.
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe wengine hawana chakula cha kutosha mwaka huu.	Some of the cows haven't enough food this year.
wakulima	Wakulima wengine hawana chakula cha kutosha mwaka huu.	Some of the farmers haven't enough food this year.

3. Aramian interviews a farmer about his crops and about the part that his wife and children play in growing and marketing them.

Unit 34

1. Basic Dialogue. I'm a cook nowadays.

Hamisi

Unafanya kazi gani?	What kind of work are you doing?

Mutisya

upishi (U)	work or status of a cook
Ninafanya kazi ya upishi.	I'm working as a cook.

Hamisi

kumbe!	(expression of surprise)
m̂pishi (WA)	a cook
Kumbe u m̂pishi siku hizi! (or: . . . wewe ni m̂pishi. . .)	So you're a cook these days!

Mutisya

Ndiyo bwana. Mimi ni m̂pishi.	That's right.

Hamisi

Unafanya kazi kwa nani?	Who are you working for?

Mutisya

m̂zungu (WA)	a European
jina (MA)	name
Kwa m̂zungu m̂moja, jina lake Bwana Aramian.	For a European named Aramian.

Notes

A. Complete sentences consisting of first or second person subject prefix plus noun.

u m̂pishi	you are a cook

ni m̀kulima	I am a farmer
tu wapishi	we are cooks
m̀ wakulima	you are farmers

In these sentences, the first and second person subject prefixes are used before nouns denoting occupations, and the combination is treated as a complete sentence.

2.

A. Subject prefix plus noun.

m̀pishi	U m̀pishi? ---- Hapana, bwana. Mimi ni m̀kulima.	Are you a cook? No, I am a farmer.
m̀kulima	U m̀kulima? ---- Hapana, bwana. Mimi ni karani.	Are you a farmer? No, I am a clerk.
karani	U karani? ---- Hapana, bwana. Mimi ni m̀pishi.	Are you a clerk? No, I am a cook.

B. Derivation: Abstract vs. animate nouns with the same stem.

m̀pishi	Yeye ni m̀pishi. ---- Afanya kazi ya upishi.	He is a cook. He does cooking.
m̀kulima	Yeye ni m̀kulima. Afanya kazi ya ukulima.	He is a farmer. He does farming.
karani	Yeye ni karani. Afanya kazi ya ukarani.	He is a clerk. He does clerical work.

C.

m̀pishi	Daudi na Juma ni wapishi. Wafanya kazi ya upishi.	Daudi and Juma are cooks. They do cooking.
m̀kulima	Daudi na Juma ni wakulima. Wafanya kazi ya ukulima.	Daudi and Juma are farmers. They do farming.
karani	Daudi na Juma ni makarani. Wafanya kazi ya ukarani.	Daudi and Juma are clerks. They do clerical work.

3.

A.

Daudi m̀pishi	Daudi ni m̀pishi m̀zuri sana. Hafanyi kazi ya ukulima.	Daudi is a very good cook. He doesn't do farming.
Hamisi m̀kulima	Hamisi ni m̀kulima m̀zuri sana. Hafanyi kazi ya upishi.	Hamisi is a very good farmer. He doesn't do cooking.
Abdallah karani	Abdallah ni karani m̀zuri sana. Hafanyi kazi ya upishi.	Abdallah is a very good clerk. He doesn't do cooking.

B. Subject prefixes with nouns.

wewe	Wewe u m̀pishi? Hapana. Mimi si m̀pishi, mimi ni m̀kulima.	Are you a cook? No, I am not a cook, I am a farmer.
wao	Wao ni wapishi? Hapana. Wao si wapishi, wao ni wakulima.	Are they cooks? No, they are not cooks, they are farmers.
yeye	Yeye ni m̀pishi? Hapana. Yeye si m̀pishi, yeye ni m̀kulima.	Is he a cook? No, he is not a cook, he is a farmer.
ninyi	Ninyi m̀ wapishi? Hapana. Sisi si wapishi, sisi tu wakulima.	Are you (pl.) cooks? No, we are not cooks, we are farmers.

Unit 35

1. Basic Dialogue. He's a day laborer.

Hasani

kijana (VI-anim.)	a youth
Yule kijana hufanya kazi gani?	What kind of work does that young fellow do?

Abdallah

kazi ya kibarua	casual labor
Yeye hufanya kazi ya kibarua.	He is a day laborer.

Hasani

m̊pagazi (WA)	porter
Kumbe yeye ni m̊pagazi!	Oh, he's a porter, then!
muda (N)	period of time
Amefanya kazi hii kwa muda gani?	How long has he done this kind of work?

Abdallah

Kwa miaka min̊ne.	For four years.

Hasani

Yeye apenda kazi yake?	Does he like his work?

Abdallah

-nung'unika	to complain
juu (N)	on, concerning
Hanung'uniki juu ya kazi yake.	He doesn't complain about it.

Notes

A. Hu-tense.

mimi huuza mazao yangu	I sell my crops
sisi huuza mazao yetu	we sell our crops
yeye huuza mazao yake	he sells his crops
wao huuza mazao yao	they sell their crops

The hu-tense of a verb has no subject prefix to indicate the class of the subject. The subject is therefore made explicit, either as a noun or as a pronoun, unless the identity of the subject is clear from what precedes the sentence.

The hu-tense is used where habitual or recurrent action is implied.

yeye huenda sokoni	he (regularly) goes to the market
wao huja asubuhi	they (regularly) come in the morning

In the hu-tense, the verbs -enda and -isha, and verbs with monosyllabic stems like -ja, do not have -ku- or -kw- as they do in the other tenses that have been studied.

B. 'VI-animate' nouns.

Kijana wao amekwenda.	Their young fellow has gone.
Vijana wao wamekwenda.	Their young fellows have gone.

Compare Note 29.C concerning the 'N-animate' nouns. 'N-animate' nouns acted like ordinary N-class nouns only with respect to the shape of the singular and plural forms of the noun itself. The word kijana, which we may call a 'VI-animate' noun, is like an ordinary VI-class noun with respect to the singular and plural forms of the noun only. Otherwise, it is like a WA-class noun, even in the possessive concords which it requires.

C. The word juu.

Hanung'uniki juu ya kazi yake.	He doesn't complain about his work.

The word juu is a noun, the approximate translation of which is 'the top'. This noun, however, has two characteristics which set it apart from other nouns: (1) it is seldom used without being followed by ya plus another noun, or by a possessive (yake, yako, etc.),

(2) it is seldom used as the subject or object of a verb. It may be used ('adverbially') without a possessive or another noun. (3) it does not occur in the plural.

For these reasons, juu is most commonly translated into English by a preposition, such as 'on, over, above, concerning'.

D. Special Note on the 'present tenses' of Swahili.

Swahili possesses three sets of affirmative indicative verb forms which in some sense may be called 'present.' These are typified by tuNAsema, twAsema, and (sisi)HUsema. In the preparation of the original draft of this course, and in comparison of the changes suggested in draft by various authorities, the choice among the three 'present tenses' displayed a greater degree of uncertainty than did any other point of grammar.

Accordingly, alternative tense forms have been indicated in many, though not all of the sentences concerning which Swahili speakers disagree among themselves.

2.

A. Hu-tense.

wewe	Wewe hufanya kazi gani?	What kind of work do you do?
Juma	Juma hufanya kazi gani?	What kind of work does Juma do?
yeye	Yeye hufanya kazi gani?	What kind of work does he do?
Juma na Daudi	Juma na Daudi hufanya kazi gani?	What kind of work do Juma and Daudi do?
wao	Wao hufanya kazi gani?	What kind of work do they do?

B.

wewe	Wewe hupenda kazi yako?	Do you like your work?
Juma	Juma hupenda kazi yake?	Does Juma like his work?
yeye	Yeye hupenda kazi yake?	Does he like his work?
Juma na Daudi	Juma na Daudi hupenda kazi yao?	Do Juma and Daudi like their work?

wao	Wao hupenda kazi yao?	Do they like their work?

C. Juu ya ______.

kazi	Hanung'uniki juu ya kazi yake.	He doesn't complain about his work.
nyumba	Hanung'uniki juu ya nyumba yake.	He doesn't complain about his house.
m̂pishi	Hanung'uniki juu ya m̂pishi wake.	He doesn't complain about his cook.
chakula	Hanung'uniki juu ya chakula chake.	He doesn't complain about his food.
m̂ke	Hanung'uniki juu ya m̂ke wake.	He doesn't complain about his wife.
watoto	Hanung'uniki juu ya watoto wake.	He doesn't complain about his children.

D. Concord: Noun plus demonstrative.

kazi	Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya kazi hii.	I do not want to complain about this work.
chakula	Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya chakula hiki.	I do not want to complain about this food.
vyakula	Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya vyakula hivi.	I do not want to complain about these foods.
nyumba	Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya nyumba hii.	I do not want to complain about this house.
n̂chi	Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya n̂chi hii.	I do not want to complain about this country.
vitu	Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya vitu hivi.	I do not want to complain about these things.

3.

A. Me-tense with a characteristic time expression.

kibarua	Amefanya kazi ya kibarua kwa muda gani?	How long has he worked as a laborer?
ukarani	Amefanya kazi ya ukarani kwa muda gani?	How long has he worked as a clerk?
ukulima	Amefanya kazi ya ukulima kwa muda gani?	How long has he worked as a farmer?
upishi	Amefanya kazi ya upishi kwa muda gani?	How long has he worked as a cook?

B. Cumulative.

Yeye hufanya kazi ya upishi.	He works as a cook.
Kumbe yeye ni m̀pishi?	So he is a cook?
Yeye hufanya kazi ya ukulima.	He works as a farmer.
Kumbe yeye ni m̀kulima?	So he is a farmer?
Yeye hufanya kazi ya ukarani.	He works as a clerk.
Kumbe yeye ni karani?	So he is a clerk?
Yeye hufanya kazi ya kibarua.	He works as a laborer.
Kumbe yeye ni m̀pagazi?	So he is a porter?

4. A and B discuss the occupations of their friends C, D and E.

Unit 36

1. Basic Dialogue. Where were you yesterday?

Hamisi

-wa	be
jana	yesterday
Jana ulikuwa wapi?	Where were you yesterday?

Adija

Nilikuwa sokoni.	At the market.

Hamisi

saa (N)	hour
-ngapi?	how many?
Ulikwenda saa ngapi?	What time did you go?

Adija

-ondoka	to leave
sita	six
Niliondoka nyumbani saa sita m̀chana.	I left home at noon.

Hamisi

Ulinunua nini?	What did you buy?

Adija

mboga (N)	(general word for leafy vegetables)
chumvi (N)	salt
pilipili (N)	pepper
Nilinunua mboga, chumvi na pilipili.	Green vegetables, salt and pepper.

Notes

A. Li-tense.

ulinunua nini?	what did you buy?
ulikwenda wapi?	where did you go?

The li-forms of a Swahili verb are formed in a manner exactly parallel to the na-forms and the me-forms. As with the latter, monosyllabic stems and -enda and -isha are proceded by ku-/kw-.

The meaning of the li-tense is similar to that of the English 'simple past' tense.

B. Locatives with -ni corresponding to 'at' 'to' 'from' depending on the context.

nilikwenda sokoni	I went to the market
niliondoka sokoni	I left the market

Note that noun plus locative -ni (e.g. sokoni) is translated either 'to' or 'from' depending on the identity of the verb.

C. Literal translation of saa ngapi?

The literal translation of saa ngapi? 'at what time?' is 'hours how many?'

2.

A. Hours of the day.

ngapi	Hamisi alikwenda sokoni saa ngapi?	What time did Hamisi go to the market?
moja	Hamisi alikwenda sokoni saa moja?	Did Hamisi go to the market at 7 o'clock?
mbili	Hamisi alikwenda sokoni saa mbili?	Did Hamisi go to the market at 8 o'clock?
tatu	Hamisi alikwenda sokoni saa tatu?	Did Hamisi go to the market at 9 o'clock?

n̂ne	Hamisi alikwenda sokoni saa n̂ne?	Did Hamisi go to the market at 10 o'clock?
tano	Hamisi alikwenda sokoni saa tano?	Did Hamisi go to the market at 11 o'clock?
sita	Hamisi alikwenda sokoni saa sita?	Did Hamisi go to the market at 12 o'clock?

B. -wa plus locative expression.

wapi	Ulikuwa wapi saa sita m̂chana?	Where were you at 12 noon?
soko	Ulikuwa sokoni saa sita m̂chana?	Were you at the market at noon?
boma	Ulikuwa bomani saa sita m̂chana?	Were you at the District Office at noon?
shule	Ulikuwa shuleni saa sita m̂chana?	Were you at school at noon?

C. -ondoka plus locative expression.

nyumba	Ṁliondoka nyumbani saa ngapi jana?	What time did you leave home yesterday?
soko	Ṁliondoka sokoni saa ngapi jana?	What time did you leave the market yesterday?
shule	Ṁliondoka shuleni saa ngapi jana?	What time did you leave school yesterday?
boma	Ṁliondoka bomani saa ngapi jana?	What time did you leave the District Office yesterday?

D. Concord: Noun, demonstrative, possessive; 'whose?'

chumvi	Chumvi hii ni ya nani?	Whose salt is this?
mboga	Mboga hizi ni za nani?	Whose vegetables are these?

pilipili	Pilipili hizi ni za nani?	Whose pepper is this?
vitu	Vitu hivi ni vya nani?	Whose things are these?
kiazi	Kiazi hiki ni cha nani?	Whose potato is this?
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe huyu ni wa nani?	Whose cow is this?

E. Concord: Noun, possessive, verb, adjective.

ṁpishi	Ṁpishi wao alikuwa ṁzuri sana.	Their cook was very nice.
nyumba	Nyumba yao ilikuwa nzuri sana.	Their house was very nice.
kijiji	Kijiji chao kilikuwa kizuri sana.	Their village was very nice.
vyakula	Vyakula vyao vilikuwa vizuri sana.	Their food was very nice.
shule	Shule yao ilikuwa nzuri sana.	Their school was very nice.
maembe	Maembe yao yalikuwa mazuri sana.	Their mangoes were very nice.

F.

	Ṁpishi wao alikuwa ṁzuri sana.	Their cook was very nice.
wapishi	Wapishi wao walikuwa wazuri sana.	Their cooks were very nice.
hodari	Wapishi wao walikuwa hodari sana.	Their cooks were very energetic.
watoto	Watoto wao walikuwa hodari sana.	Their children were very energetic.
-baya	Watoto wao walikuwa wabaya sana.	Their children were very bad.
matunda	Matunda yao yalikuwa mabaya sana.	Their fruit was very bad.

~bichi	Matunda yao yalikuwa mabichi sana.	Their fruit was very green.
~bivu	Matunda yao yalikuwa mabivu sana.	Their fruit was very ripe.

3.

A. Concord: Object prefix, noun, demonstrative.

mboga	Ulizinunua mboga hizi wapi?	Where did you buy these vegetables?
	Nilizinunua sokoni.	I bought them in the market.
chumvi	Uliinunua chumvi hii wapi?	Where did you buy this salt?
	Niliinunua sokoni.	I bought it in the market.
nyama	Uliinunua nyama hii wapi?	Where did you buy this meat?
	Niliinunua sokoni.	I bought it in the market.
chakula	Ulikinunua chakula hiki wapi?	Where did you buy this food?
	Nilikinunua sokoni.	I bought it in the market.
viazi	Ulivinunua viazi hivi wapi?	Where did you buy these potatoes?
	Nilivinunua sokoni.	I bought them in the market.

B. Times of day.

moja	Ulikwenda sokoni saa moja usiku?	Did you go to the market at 7 o'clock in the evening?
	Hapana. Nilikwenda saa moja asubuhi.	No. I went at 7 o'clock in the morning.
tatu	Ulikwenda sokoni saa tatu usiku?	Did you go to the market at 9 o'clock at night?
	Hapana. Nilikwenda saa tatu asubuhi.	No. I went at 9 o'clock in the morning.
tano	Ulikwenda sokoni saa tano usiku?	Did you go to the market at 11 o'clock at night?

	Hapana. Nilikwenda saa tano asubuhi.	No. I went at 11 o'clock in the morning.
saba	Ulikwenda sokoni saa saba usiku?	Did you go to the market at 1 o'clock in the morning?
	Hapana. Nilikwenda saa saba m̂chana.	No. I went at 1 o'clock in the afternoon.

Unit 37

1. Basic Dialogue. - What is your tribal background?

Butler

kabila (MA)	tribe
Kabila lako husema lugha gani?	What language does your tribe speak?

Abasi

kizaramo	(language of the WaZaramo)
Kizaramo!	Kizaramo!

Butler

tena	again
-sikia	hear
Tafadhali, sema tena. (or:...rudia tena.)	Would you repeat it please?
Sikusikia vizuri.	I didn't hear well.

Abasi

Nimesema 'Kizaramo.'	I said 'Kizaramo.'

Butler

Watu hawa wanakaa katika ṅchi gani?	What territory do these people live in?

Abasi

-ishi (or: -kaa)	dwell
sehemu (N)	section
Waishi katika sehemu ya Dar es Salaam. (or: Wanaishi. . .)	They live in the vicinity of Dar es Salaam.

Notes

A. Articulation of *gh*.

The middle consonant in *lugha* 'language' is not like anything which is used in standard pronunciation of English. The back of the tongue is near the soft palate, almost in the position which it occupies for the *g* in English *gone*. But the *g* in *gone* requires momentary complete stoppage of the air stream, while in *lugha* this stoppage doesn't quite get made.

B. Past negative forms with -*ku*-.

nilisikia vizuri	I heard well
sikusikia vizuri	I didn't hear well
hatukusikia vizuri	we didn't hear well

The second and third examples above contain verb forms with past negative meaning. They are constructed as follows:

ha	+	*subj. prefix*	+	*ku/kw*	+	*stem*
ha-		-tu-		-ku-		-sikia
ha-		-tu-		-kw-		-enda
ha-		-tu-		-ku-		-ja

These negative forms are sometimes used as negative counterparts of the affirmative *li*-tense, and sometimes as counterparts of the *me*-tense.

2.

A. *Vizuri* as a modifier of verbs.

-sikia	Sikusikia vizuri.	I did not hear well.
-sema	Sikusema vizuri.	I did not speak well.
-ona	Sikuona vizuri.	I did not see well.
-elewa	Sikuelewa vizuri.	I did not understand well.
-eleza habari	Sikueleza habari vizuri.	I did not explain the matters well.
-fanya kazi	Sikufanya kazi vizuri.	I did not work well.

B. Past negatives with *-ku-*.

-ja	Juma hakuja jana.	Juma did not come yesterday.
-enda	Juma hakwenda jana.	Juma did not go yesterday.
-furahi	Juma hakufurahi jana.	Juma was not happy yesterday.
-tumwa	Juma hakutumwa jana.	Juma was not sent yesterday.
-ondoka nyumbani	Juma hakuondoka nyumbani jana.	Juma did not leave home yesterday.
-taka chakula	Juma hakutaka chakula jana.	Juma did not want food yesterday.

C.

-enda kazini	Wapagazi hawakwenda kazini.	The porters did not go to work.
-fanya kazi	Wapagazi hawakufanya kazi.	The porters did not work.
-tumwa nyumbani	Wapagazi hawakutumwa nyumbani.	The porters were not sent home.
-furahi	Wapagazi hawakufurahi.	The porters were not happy.
-ja hapa	Wapagazi hawakuja hapa.	The porters did not come here.

3.

A. Present affirmative and negative *vs.* past affirmative and negative.

Unahitaji chakula?	Do you need food?
Hapana. Sihitaji.	No, I don't need any.
Ulihitaji chakula?	Did you need food?
Hapana. Sikuhitaji.	No, I didn't need any.

B.

Unakwenda sokoni?	Are you going to the market?
Hapana, siendi.	No, I am not going.

Ulikwenda sokoni?	Did you go to the market?
Hapana, sikuenda.	No, I did not go.

C.

Una njaa?	Are you hungry?
Hapana, sina.	No, I am not.
Ulikuwa na njaa?	Were you hungry?
Hapana, sikuwa na njaa.	No, I was not.

D.

Kuna nyama?	Is there any meat?
Hapana, hakuna.	No, there is not any.
Kulikuwa na nyama?	Was there any meat?
Hapana, hakukuwa na nyama.	No, there was not any.

E.

Tuna sukari ya kutosha?	Do we have enough sugar?
Hatuna.	We don't.
Tulikuwa na sukari ya kutosha?	Did we have enough sugar?
Hapana, hatukuwa na ya kutosha.	No, we did not.

F.

Analipa kodi ya kichwa?	Does he pay poll tax?
Hapana, halipi.	No, he doesn't.
Alilipa kodi ya kichwa?	Did he pay poll tax?
Hapana, hakulipa.	No, he didn't.

G.

Anauza nyumba yake?	Is he selling his house?
Hapana, hauzi.	No, he isn't.
Aliuza nyumba yake?	Did he sell his house?
Hapana, hakuuza.	No, he didn't.

Unit 38

1. Basic Dialogue. Where have you been?

Magese

Bwana Dodge, unatoka wapi?	Where are you coming from, Mr. Dodge?

Dodge

pwani (N)	beach
Ninatoka pwani.	From the beach.

Magese

-ogelea	to swim
Ulikwenda pwani kuogelea?	Did you go there to swim?

Dodge

-tembea	to go for a walk
-punga hewa	to change air
Hapana. Nilikwenda kutembea na kupunga hewa.	No. I went to walk and get a change of air.

Magese

m̂tu (WA)	person
Kuna watu wengi pwani?	Are there many people at the beach?

Dodge

-jaa	to fill up
huko	there
Ndiyo, bwana, watu wengi wamejaa huko.	Yes, there are; the place is crowded. ('Yes, sir. Many people have filled that place up.')

Notes

This unit contains no new grammar. The students should experiment to see what variety they can give to conversations that begin with the line, 'Bwana Fulani, unatoka wapi?'

Listen to the conversations given on the tape. Try to write down the few unfamiliar words that they contain.

Unit 39

1. Basic Dialogue. Do you speak Luo?

Sangai

Je! Wajua kusema Kiluo? (or: . . .Kijaluo?)	Say, do you know how to speak Luo?

Abasi

barábara	thoroughly, very well
Ndiyo. Nasema Kiluo barábara.	Yes, I speak Luo fluently.

Sangai

-jifunza	to study
lini?	when?
Ulijifunza lini kusema Kiluo?	When did you learn to speak Luo?

Abasi

Nilikaa katika m̀ji wa Kisumu kwa muda wa miaka mitano.	I lived in Kisumu for a period of five years.

Sangai

ukifanya	you-doing
Ulikuwa ukifanya nini huko Kisumu?	What were you doing there at Kisumu?

Abasi

mwandishi (WA)	good writer
-kuu	big, principal
chama (VI)	union, association, club
m̀fanyakazi (WA)	worker
Nilikuwa mwandishi m̀kuu katika Chama cha Wafanyakazi.	I was General Secretary in the Labor Union.

Notes

A. The prefix *ki-* in the names of languages.

Wasema Kiluo? Do you speak Luo?

The name of the Luo language, in that language, is *Dholuo*, and the people are called *Luo*. But in Swahili, the prefix *ki-* is applied to the (Swahili) name for any people in order to indicate the style of life or speech of that people. So the Baganda call their language *Luganda*, but in Swahili it is called *Kiganda*; the Mashona call their language *Chishona*, but in Swahili it is called *Kishona*.

2.

A. Concord: Noun and demonstrative.

m̂ji	Ulikaa katika m̂ji huo kwa muda gani?	How long did you live in that city?
n̂chi	Ulikaa katika n̂chi hiyo kwa muda gani?	How long did you live in that country?
jimbo	Ulikaa katika jimbo hilo kwa muda gani?	How long did you live in that province?
kijiji	Ulikaa katika kijiji hicho kwa muda gani?	How long did you live in that village?
sehemu	Ulikaa katika sehemu hiyo kwa muda gani?	How long did you live in that section?

B. *Kwa muda wa ______.*

1	Nilikaa huko Dar es Salaam kwa muda wa mwaka m̂moja.	I lived there in Dar es Salaam for a period of one year.
2	Nilikaa huko Dar es Salaam kwa muda wa miaka miwili.	I lived there in Dar es Salaam for a period of two years.

3 4 5

C. -jifunza.

Luo	Juma anajifunza Kiluo?	Is Juma learning Luo?
Swahili	Juma anajifunza Kiswahili?	Is Juma learning Swahili?
kazi ya ukarani	Juma anajifunza kazi ya ukarani?	Is Juma learning clerical work?
lugha mbili	Juma anajifunza lugha mbili?	Is Juma learning two languages?

3.

A. Present affirmative and negative.

Hamisi anajifunza Kiluo sasa?	Is Hamisi learning Luo now?
Hapana, hajifunzi.	No, he isn't.
Wewe unajifunza lugha ya **Kikuyu** sasa?	Are you learning Kikuyu language now?
Hapana, sijifunzi.	No, I'm not.
Tunajifunza kazi ya ukarani sasa?	Are we learning clerical work now?
Hapana, hatujifunzi.	No, we aren't.
Ninajifunza Kizaramo sasa?	Am I learning Zaramo now?
Hapana, hujifunzi.	No, you aren't.

B. A-tense, with person change, question to answer.

Wasema Kiswahili vizuri?	Do you speak Swahili well?
Ndiyo. Nasema barábara.	Yes, I speak it fluently.
Twasema Kiswahili vizuri?	Do we speak Swahili well?
Ndiyo. Mwasema barábara.	Yes, you speak it fluently.
Watu hawa wasema Kiswahili vizuri?	Do these people speak Swahili well?
Ndiyo. Wasema barábara.	Yes, they speak it fluently.
Mtu huyu asema Kiswahili?	Does this man speak Swahili well?
Ndiyo. Asema barábara.	Yes, he speaks it fluently.

Mwasema Kiswahili vizuri?	Do you (pl.) speak Swahili well?
Ndiyo. Twasema barabara.	Yes, we speak it fluently.

C.

Wajua kusema Kinyamwezi?	Do you know how to speak Nyamwezi?
Nasema kidogo tu.	I speak just a little.
Watu hao wajua kusema Kinyamwezi?	Do those people know how to speak Nyamwezi?
Wasema kidogo tu.	They speak just a little.
Mtoto huyo ajua kusema Kinyamwezi?	Does that child know how to speak Nyamwezi?
Asema kidogo tu.	He speaks just a little.
Watoto hao wajua kusema Kinyamwezi?	Do those children know how to speak Nyamwezi?
Wasema kidogo tu.	They speak just a little.

Unit 40

1. Basic Dialogue. Planning a holiday trip.

Mutisya

kesho	tomorrow
~pya	new
Kesho ni Sikukuu ya Mwaka M̊pya.	Tomorrow is the New Years holiday.
-shinda	spend the day
Wewe utashinda wapi?	Where are *you* going to spend the day?

Njoroge

matembezi (pl. MA)	outing
Mimi, m̊ke wangu na watoto tutakwenda Voi matembezini.	My wife and children and I are going to Voi for an outing.

Mutisya

motokaa (N) (or: motakaa)	automobile
gari (MA)	car
moshi (MI)	smoke
M̊takwenda kwa motokaa, au kwa gari la moshi?	Are you going by car, or by train?

Njoroge

-panda	mount, climb
-kusudia	plan
Tunakusudia kupanda gari la moshi.	We are planning to take the train.
Na wewe je?	And what about you?

Mutisya

m̊chezo (MI)	game

farasi (N-anim.)	horse
Sijui. Pengine nitakaa nyumbani tu; au nitakwenda kuona michezo ya farasi.	I don't know. Maybe I'll just stay at home. Or maybe I'll go to watch the horse races.

Notes

A. Ta-tense.

Utashinda wapi?	Where will you spend the day?
Tutakwenda Voi.	We will go to Voi.

The future tense is formed with the tense prefix -ta-. There are, then, five tense prefixes, any one of which may fill the slot immediately after the subject prefix:

subj. -	tense -	obj.	stem
ni	na	-zi-	-ona
	me	etc.	
	li		(ku/kw)
	ta		
	a		

With the last of these tense prefixes, of course, the subject prefixes have special forms. Also, the ku/kw before -enda, -isha and monosyllabic stems is not used in the a-tense.

2.

A. The ta-tense.

Voi	Mimi na m̂ke wangu tutakwenda Voi kesho.	My wife and I will go to Voi tomorrow.
sokoni	Mimi na m̂ke wangu tutakwenda sokoni kesho.	My wife and I will go to the market tomorrow.
kusini ya m̂ji	Mimi na m̂ke wangu tutakwenda kusini ya m̂ji kesho.	My wife and I will go to the south of the city tomorrow.
pwani	Mimi na m̂ke wangu tutakwenda pwani kesho.	My wife and I will go to the beach tomorrow.
kazini	Mimi na m̂ke wangu tutakwenda kazini kesho.	My wife and I will go to work tomorrow.

B. Ta-tense.

wewe	Utakwenda wapi kwa matembezi?	Where will you go for a walk?
karani	Karani atakwenda wapi kwa matembezi?	Where will the clerk go for a walk?
wapagazi	Wapagazi watakwenda wapi kwa matembezi?	Where will the porters go for a walk?
yeye	Yeye atakwenda wapi kwa matembezi?	Where will he go for a walk?
wao	Wao watakwenda wapi kwa matembezi?	Where will they go for a walk?

C. Ta- vs. li- vs. me-tenses with -shinda.

↓	Wewe utashinda wapi kesho?	Where will you spend the day tomorrow?
yeye	Yeye atashinda wapi kesho?	Where will he spend the day tomorrow?

jana	Yeye alishinda wapi jana?	Where did he spend the day yesterday?
wao	Wao walishinda wapi jana?	Where did they spend the day yesterday?
kesho	Wao watashinda wapi kesho?	Where will they spend the day tomorrow?
leo	Wao wameshinda wapi leo?	Where did they spend the day today?
yeye	Yeye ameshinda wapi leo?	Where did he spend the day today?
kesho	Yeye atashinda wapi kesho?	Where will he spend the day tomorrow?
mimi	Mimi nitashinda wapi kesho?	Where shall I spend the day tomorrow?

3. *Li*-tense *vs.* *ta*-tense.

kwenda	Jana nilikwenda Morogoro,--- na kesho nitakwenda tena.	I went to Morogoro yesterday, --- and tomorrow I'll go again.
kununua	Jana tulinunua ndizi, --- na kesho tutanunua nyingine.	We bought bananas yesterday, --- and tomorrow we'll buy some more.
kuuza	Jana aliuza ng'ombe, --- na kesho atauza wengine.	He sold cows yesterday, --- and tomorrow he'll sell some more.
kulipa	Jana nililipa kodi ya nyumba, --- na kesho nitalipa kodi ya kichwa.	I paid house rent yesterday, --- and tomorrow, I'll pay poll tax.
kupanda	Jana tulipanda gari la moshi, --- na kesho tutapanda tena.	We took a train yesterday, --- and tomorrow we'll take it again.
kuona	Jana tulimwona Bwana Hasani, --- na kesho tutamwona tena.	We saw Hasani yesterday, --- and tomorrow we'll see him again.

4. Begin a number of conversations with the opening line, 'Utafanya nini kesho?'

Review Sentences, Units 1 - 40.

1.	Nitakwenda sokoni kununua nyama na machungwa.	I'm going to the market to buy meat and oranges.
2.	Kesho asubuhi, tutakuletea dawa ya kichwa.	Tomorrow morning we will bring you a headache remedy.
3.	Watu wa kabila la Wakikuyu wanakaa katika jimbo la Kiambu.	People of the Kikuyu tribe live in the province of Kiambu.
4.	Mwandishi huyo alikuja kutoka nchi ya Amerika.	That secretary came from America.
5.	Tafadhali tukapunge hewa huko upande wa mashariki ya mji.	Let's take a walk to the east of the city.
6.	Maziwa ni chakula kizuri sana kwa watoto.	Milk is a very good food for children.
7.	Sitaki kukaa hapa kwa muda wa siku nyingi.	I don't want to stay here for many days.
8.	Je, utakaa nyumbani au utakwenda kazini?	Are you going to stay at home, or are you going to go to work?
9.	Mananasi na machungwa yalikuwa mazuri.	The pineapples and oranges were good.
10.	Tuliyala.	We ate them (i.e. the pineapples and oranges).
11.	Sijambo bwana, nawe hujambo?	I'm fine (sir). And you?
12.	Sijambo, lakini mtoto wangu ni mgonjwa.	I'm all right, but my child is ill.
13.	Wapagazi wananung'unika juu ya mishahara yao.	The porters are complaining about their wages.

14.	Mtauza ndizi, machungwa na mananasi matano.	You (pl.) will sell bananas, oranges and pineapples.
15.	Mji wa Nairobi uko upande gani wa mji wa Mombasa?	What direction is Nairobi from Mombasa?
16.	Watu wengi hupenda kutembelea pwani sana.	Many people are very fond of going to the sea shore.
17.	Mwaka huu baba yangu atanilipia ada ya shule.	This year, my father is going to pay my school fees for me.
18.	Bibi Mariamu husema Kizaramo barábara.	Miriamu speaks Kizaramo fluently.
19.	Unataka samaki wangapi?	How many fish do you want?
20.	Watashinda nyumbani siku ya leo.	They will spend today at home.
21.	Chakula hiki kina pilipili nyingi sana.	This food has a lot of pepper [in it.]
22.	Kwa kawaida wakulima hupata mazao mengi.	Usually farmers get large crops.
23.	Maembe hayo yalikuwa mabivu au mabichi?	Were those mangoes ripe or green?
24.	Nadhani maziwa ya shilingi moja yatatosha.	I think a shilling's worth of milk will be enough.
25.	Wapagazi hawakufanya kazi vizuri.	The porters didn't work well.
26.	Pilipili hazipatikani sokoni yetu.	Pepper is not available in our market.
27.	Watu wengi hufanya kazi ya ukarani na ya upishi.	Many people work as clerks and cooks.
28.	Hapana, sitaki kula maembe.	No, I don't want to eat mangoes.
29.	Bwana Juma aliondoka leo asubuhi kwenda Voi.	Juma left this morning for Voi.
30.	Tafadhali tumia dawa hii mara tatu kwa siku.	Please take this medicine three times a day.

31.	Asubuhi ya leo tutakula mayai, matunda na maziwa.	This morning we will have eggs, fruit and milk.
32.	Kwa kawaida vibarua hupata mshahara kidogo tu.	Ordinarily, day laborers get only very low pay.
33.	Umelipa kodi ya kichwa?	Have you paid your poll tax?
34.	Wazazi wetu hawakuondoka nyumbani jana.	Our parents didn't leave home yesterday.
35.	Vitu hivi ni vya nani?	Whose things are these?
36.	Nataka kumnunulia mtoto wangu ndizi.	I want to buy my child some bananas.
37.	Siku hizi ninaotesha muhogo.	These days, I'm raising cassava.
38.	Chakula chake kilikuwa kizuri sana.	His food was very good.
39.	Wao si wapishi, wanafanya kazi ya ukarani.	They are not cooks; they are clerks.
40.	Watu wengi wa Afrika ya Mashariki husema lugha ya Kiswahili.	Many people of East Africa speak the Swahili language.

Unit 41

1. Basic Dialogue. Getting ready for church.

Daudi

-vaa	to put on clothes
nguo (N)	cloth, clothes
safi	clean
Baba, kwa nini unavaa nguo safi?	Father, why are you putting on clean clothes?

Yohana

sababu (N)	reason
kanisa (N)	church
Kwa sababu ninakwenda kanisani.	Because I'm going to church.
twende	that we should go
Daudi, unataka twende kanisani?	Do you want to go to church with me, Daudi?

Daudi

peke (N)	solitude
Hapana, baba.	No, father.
Sitaki leo.	I don't want to today.
Nitakwenda kesho peke yangu.	I'll go by myself tomorrow.

Yohana

mama (N-pers.)	mother
Lakini mama yako anakwenda pia.	But your mother is going too.

Daudi

ijapokuwa	even if, although
mahali (PA)	place
~o ~ote	any at all
Ijapokuwa nitakaa nyumbani peke yangu,	Even if I'm going to stay ('be') at home by myself,
sitakwenda mahali popote siku ya leo.	I'm not going any place at all today.

Notes

A. peke y-

nitakwenda peke yangu	I'll go by myself

The noun peke, like juu (Note 35.C), is seldom used as subject or object of a verb, and it is used only with a possessive following it.

B. Use of ijapokuwa.

The word ijapokuwa is used in this dialogue, with an English translation of 'even so'. It is actually a rather complicated form of the verb -wa 'be', but its internal structure need not concern us here. It is sometimes used to introduce a clause: ijapokuwa mama atakwenda nitakaa nyumbani, 'even if mother is going I shall stay at home.'

C. Negative of ta-tense.

sitakwenda	I won't go
hawataondoka	they won't leave

The negative counterparts of the affirmative ta- forms discussed in Unit 40 are formed simply by placing the negative prefix ha- before the affirmative.

D. The mahali class.

mahali po pote	anywhere at all

This phrase introduces two new features of Swahili grammar. One is the *mahali* concord class, which contains only this one word. The adjectival concord and the subject prefix which are associated with it are both *pa-*, and the possessive concord is *p-*.

E. *~o ~ote*.

mahali po pote	anywhere at all
kitu cho chote	anything at all
m̀tu ye yote	anyone at all

The form *~o ~ote* contains a double occurrence of some one concord. Such a form is pronounced as one word, but written as two. Note in the last example that the special form of the concord for singular animate nouns is *ye*.

2.

A. Concords with *~o ~ote*.

ndizi	Sitaki ndizi zo zote.	I do not want any bananas at all.
maziwa	Sitaki maziwa yo yote.	I do not want any milk at all.
kahawa	Sitaki kahawa yo yote.	I do not want any coffee at all.
nyama	Sitaki nyama yo yote.	I do not want any meat at all.
samaki	Sitaki samaki zo zote. (or: . . . wo wote.)	I do not want any fish at all.
chai	Sitaki chai yo yote.	I do not want any tea at all.
uji	Sitaki uji wo wote.	I do not want any gruel at all.
m̀kate	Sitaki m̀kate wo wote.	I do not want any bread at all.
watu	Sitaki watu wo wote.	I do not want anybody at all.
m̀tu	Sitaki m̀tu ye yote.	I do not want anyone at all.

B.

michezo	Hatukuona michezo yo yote.	We did not see a single game.
mikate	Hatukuona mikate yo yote.	We did not see a single loaf.

chungwa	Hatukuona chungwa lo lote.	We did not see any orange at all.
soko	Hatukuona soko lo lote.	We did not see any market at all.
kijiji	Hatukuona kijiji cho chote.	We did not see any village at all.
kitu	Hatukuona kitu cho chote.	We did not see anything at all.
viazi	Hatukuona viazi vyo vyote.	We did not see any potatoes at all.
watoto	Hatukuona watoto wo wote.	We did not see any children at all.
m̂tu	Hatukuona m̂tu ye yote.	We did not see anybody at all.

C.

jamaa	Yeye hana jamaa ye yote.	He does not have any relatives at all.
nyumba	Yeye hana nyumba yo yote.	He does not have any house.
kazi	Yeye hana kazi yo yote.	He does not have any job.
rafiki	Yeye hana rafiki ye yote.	He does not have any friend.
watoto	Yeye hana watoto wo wote.	He does not have any children.

3.

A. Future affirmative vs. negative.

Nitakwenda sokoni m̂chana. Na wewe je?	I shall go to the market this afternoon. How about you?
La, mimi sitakwenda.	No, I will not go.
Nitanunua nyumba m̂pya. Na wewe je?	I shall buy a new house. How about you?
La, mimi sitanunua.	No, I will not buy one.
Juma atalipa ada ya shule. Na Hamisi je?	Juma will pay school fees. How about Hamisi?
La, yeye hatalipa.	No, he will not pay them.

Juma atawasaidia rafiki zake. Na Hamisi je?	Juma will help his friends. How about Hamisi?
La, yeye hatawasaidia.	No, he will not help them.
Rafiki zangu watajifunza Kinyamwezi. Na wako je?	My friends will learn Nyamwezi. How about yours?
La, wao hawatajifunza.	No, they will not learn it.

B. Peke y_____.

Utakwenda sokoni na Juma?	Will you go to the market with Juma?
La. Nitakwenda peke yangu.	No, I shall go alone.
Juma atakwenda sokoni na Hasani?	Will Juma go to the market with Hasani?
La. Atakwenda peke yake.	No, he will go alone.
Watoto watakaa nyumbani na mama yao?	Will the children stay at home with their mother?
La. Watakaa peke yao.	No, they will stay alone.
Wapagazi watakuja na bwana wao?	Will the porters come with their master?
La. Watakuja peke yao.	No, they will come alone.

C. ~o ~ote in reply to a question.

chungwa	Wataka chungwa hili? Hapana, sitaki chungwa lo lote.	Do you want this orange? No, I don't want any orange at all.
embe	Wataka embe hili? Hapana, sitaki embe lo lote.	Do you want this mango? No, I don't want any mango at all.
nyama	Wataka nyama hii? Hapana, sitaki nyama yo yote.	Do you want this meat? No, I don't want any meat at all.
samaki	Wataka samaki hii? Hapana, sitaki samaki yo yote.	Do you want this fish? No, I don't want any fish at all.

m̂kate	Wataka m̂kate huu? Hapana, sitaki m̂kate wo wote.	Do you want this loaf of bread? No, I don't want any bread at all.
uji	Wataka uji huu? Hapana, sitaki uji wo wote.	Do you want this gruel? No, I don't want any gruel at all.
maziwa	Wataka maziwa haya? Hapana, sitaki maziwa yo yote.	Do you want this milk? No, I don't want any milk at all.

Unit 42

1. Basic Dialogue. Trouble in the kitchen!

Hamisi

Kuna nini?	What's the matter?

Adija

-ungua	to burn
Nyama yaungua.	The meat is burning.

Hamisi

-jaribu	to try
-toa	to take away
jiko (plu.: meko)	stove, oven, kitchen, hearth
Jaribu kuitoa jikoni.	Try to take it out of the oven.

Adija

maskini	a poor man

(she takes it out)

Oh! Maskini!	Oh! Too bad!
Tufanyeje sasa?	What shall we do now?

Hamisi

lázima	necessity
tuile	that we should eat it
-la	to eat
Ni lázima tuile.	We'll have to eat it.

Notes

A. Subjunctive forms.

unataka waende	do you want them to go?

ni lázima twende	it's necessary that we go
tufanyeje?	what shall we do? ('that we should do how?')

In each of the above sentences, the last word is a 'subjunctive' form. They are formed as follows:

Subj. pref.	obj. pref.	root	-a"-e
wa-		-end-	-e
tu-		-sem-	-e
ni-	mw	-on-	-e
a-	etc.	-ish-	-i
a-		-jarib-	-u

If the indicative stem of the verb ends in -a, then the subjunctive stem ends in -e. Otherwise, the final vowel is the same as in the indicative.

A generally workable first approximation to an English translation of waende is 'that they should go'. In any given context, however, this translation seldom sounds like idiomatic English. See the examples at the head of this Note.

B. lázima plus subjunctive.

ni lázima tuile	we'll have to eat it ('it is necessity that we should eat it')

The word lázima 'necessity' is commonly followed by a subjunctive verb.

2.

A. Lázima with subjunctive.

kula	Ni lázima tule nyama.	We have to eat meat.
kununua	Ni lázima tununue nyama.	We have to buy meat.
kuleta	Ni lázima tulete nyama.	We have to bring meat.
kutoa	Ni lázima tutoe nyama jikoni.	We have to remove meat from the stove.

B.

asubuhi	Ni lázima wapagazi waje kesho asubuhi.	The porters have to come tomorrow morning.
m̂chana	Ni lázima wapagazi waje kesho m̂chana.	The porters have to come tomorrow afternoon.
usiku	Ni lázima wapagazi waje kesho usiku.	The porters have to come tomorrow night.

C.

kichwa	Ni lázima ulipe kodi ya kichwa.	You have to pay poll tax.
nyumba	Ni lázima ulipe kodi ya nyumba.	You have to pay house rent.
shule	Ni lázima ulipe ada ya shule.	You have to pay school fees.

D.

kukaa	Ni lázima mama akae nyumbani.	Mother has to stay home.
kufanya kazi	Ni lázima mama afanye kazi nyumbani.	Mother has to work at home.
kwenda	Ni lázima mama aende nyumbani.	Mother has to go home.
kuja	Ni lázima mama aje nyumbani.	Mother has to come home.

3.

A. Imperative *vs.* *lázima* plus subjunctive.

nyama	Toa nyama *jikoni*. Ni lázima uitoe sasa.	Remove the meat from the stove. You have to remove it now.
mboga	Toa mboga *jikoni*. Ni lázima uzitoe sasa.	Remove the vegetables from the stove. You have to remove them now.
m̂kate	Toa m̂kate jikoni.	Remove the bread from the stove.

	Ni lázima uutoe sasa.	You have to remove it now.
mikate	Toa mikate jikoni.	Remove the loaves of bread from the stove.
	Ni lázima uitoe sasa.	You have to remove them now.
uji	Toa uji jikoni.	Remove the gruel from the stove.
	Ni lázima uutoe sasa.	You have to remove it now.
chai	Toa chai jikoni.	Remove the tea from the stove.
	Ni lázima uitoe sasa.	You have to remove it now.
chakula	Toa chakula jikoni.	Remove the food from the stove.
	Ni lázima ukitoe sasa.	You have to remove it now.
viazi	Toa viazi jikoni.	Remove the potatoes from the stove.
	Ni lázima uvitoe sasa.	You have to remove them now.

B. Subjunctive, and present negative forms of a verb with final -u.

mama	Mama anafanya kazi jikoni.	Mother is working in the kitchen.
	Jaribu kum̀saidia.	Try to help her.
	Kwa nini hujaribu kum̀saidia?	Why do you not try to help her?
mama na Asha	Mama na Asha wanafanya kazi jikoni.	Mother and Asha are working in the kitchen.
	Jaribu kuwasaidia.	Try to help them.
	Kwa nini hujaribu kuwasaidia?	Why do you not try to help them?
mimi	Ninafanya kazi jikoni.	I am working in the kitchen.
	Jaribu kunisaidia.	Try to help me.
	Kwa nini hujaribu kunisaidia?	Why do you not try to help me?

C. Imperatives and locatives.

↓	Nenda jikoni.	Go to the kitchen.
kukaa	Kaa jikoni.	Stay in the kitchen.
nyumba	Kaa nyumbani.	Stay at home.
kutoka	Toka nyumbani.	Come from home.

shule	Toka shuleni.	Come from school.
kwenda	Nenda shuleni.	Go to school.

Conversation Starters

1. A asks B whether certain articles are available in the market, and whether they are of good quality. B replies. For some articles, he says that he didn't see any at all in the market.

Unit 43

1. Basic Dialogue. More trouble in the kitchen.

Father

Kuna nini, bibi?	What's the matter, dear? ('What is there, lady?')

Mother

maji (pl. MA)	water
-mwagika	to become spilled
Maji yamemwagika.	Some water has got spilled.

Father

Wapi?	Where?

Mother

kiti (VI)	chair
Juu ya kiti.	On the chair.

Father

-mwaga	to spill
Nani ameyamwaga?	Who spilled it?

Mother

Juma.	Juma.

Father

afadhali	it is better
-angalia	to pay attention
-pangusa (or -futa)	to wipe up
Si afadhali ayapanguse basi.	[Then] hadn't he better wipe it up?
Angalia, Juma! Usimwage tena!	Careful Juma! Don't spill [it] again.

Notes

A. Neuter stems.

maji yamemwagika	the water is spilled the water has been spilled
mimi nimeyamwaga	I spilled it

This dialogue contains two related verb stems: -mwagika 'to become spilled' and -mwaga 'to spill'. Both stems contain the root -mwag-. The first contains, between the root and the final vowel, a non-final suffix -ik-. This is the 'neuter' or 'stative' suffix. It indicates that the subject has gotten into some state, without saying anything at all about the means or the agent responsible.

The 'stative' suffix has a number of slightly different forms, largely parallel to those of the 'applied' suffix (Note 26.A).

-vunja	-vunjika
-rarua	-raruka
-pita	-pitika
-sikia	-sikika
-mwaga	-mwagika
-ona	-oneka
-leta	-leteka

B. afadhali plus subjunctive.

afadhali ayafute	he'd better wipe it up ('it is better that he should wipe it up')

The uninflectable word afadhali is commonly followed by a subjunctive verb.

C. Negative subjunctive with *-si-*.

usimwage tena!	don't spill [it] again!
usiende!	don't go!
m̀siyafute	don't wipe it up

Negative subjunctive forms consist of:

Subject prefix	*-si-*	(*obj. pref.*)	*root*	*-a -e*
u	si		mwag	e
m̀		ya	fut	e
tu				
etc.				

D. The word *maji*, which in its form and its concords is exactly like a plural noun of the MA class, has no singular counterpart. Compare also the noun *mafuta* 'oil'.

2.

A. Negative subjunctive.

maji	Usimwage maji!	Do not spill water!
maziwa	Usimwage maziwa!	Do not pour milk!
kahawa	Usimwage kahawa!	Do not pour coffee!
chai	Usimwage chai!	Do not pour tea!

B. *Afadhali* plus subjunctive.

kwenda	Afadhali twende.	We'd better go.
kufuta	Afadhali tufute maji.	We'd better wipe up the water.
kusaidia	Afadhali tum̀saidie m̀toto.	We'd better help the child.
kulipa	Afadhali tulipe kodi zetu.	We'd better pay our taxes.

C. A 'neuter' stem; juu ya ______.

↓	Maji yamemwagika juu ya kiti.	Some water has been spilled on the chair.
vyakula	Vyakula vimemwagika juu ya kiti.	Some food has been spilled on the chair.
maziwa	Maziwa yamemwagika juu ya kiti.	Some milk has been spilled on the chair.
kitambaa	Maziwa yamemwagika juu ya kitambaa.	Some milk has been spilled on the tablecloth.
chai	Chai imemwagika juu ya kitambaa.	Some tea has been spilled on the tablecloth.
jiko	Chai imemwagika juu ya jiko.	Some tea has been spilled on the stove.
chumvi	Chumvi imemwagika juu ya jiko.	Some salt has been spilled on the stove.

3.

A. Neuter vs. simple stems; concord of noun, subject prefix, object prefix.

maji	Maji yamemwagika. Nani ameyamwaga?	Water has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?
maziwa	Maziwa yamemwagika. Nani ameyamwaga?	Milk has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?
kahawa	Kahawa imemwagika. Nani ameimwaga?	Coffee has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?
chai	Chai imemwagika. Nani ameimwaga?	Tea has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?
chumvi	Chumvi imemwagika. Nani ameimwaga?	Salt has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?

sukari	Sukari imemwagika. Nani ameimwaga?	Sugar has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?
viazi	Viazi vimemwagika. Nani amevimwaga?	Potatoes have gotten spilled. Who has spilled them?

B. *Me*-tense vs. *ta*-tense; object prefixes.

maji	Maji yamemwagika. Nani atayafuta?	Some water has been spilled. Who will wipe it up?
maziwa	Maziwa yamemwagika. Nani atayafuta?	Some milk has been spilled. Who will wipe it up?
kahawa	Kahawa imemwagika. Nani ataifuta?	Some coffee has been spilled. Who will wipe it up?
chai	Chai imemwagika. Nani ataifuta?	Some tea has been spilled. Who will wipe it up?

C. *Me*-tense *vs*. negative subjunctive; object prefixes.

maji	Umemwaga maji. Usiyamwage tena!	You have spilled some water. Do not spill it again!
maziwa	Umemwaga maziwa. Usiyamwage tena!	You have spilled some milk. Do not spill it again!
kahawa	Umemwaga kahawa. Usiimwage tena!	You have spilled some coffee. Do not spill it again!
viazi	Umemwaga viazi. Usivimwage tena!	You have spilled some potatoes. Do not spill them again!
maharagwe	Umemwaga maharagwe. Usiyamwage tena!	You have spilled the beans. (lit.) Do not spill them again!

Unit 44

1. Basic Dialogue. Bicycle trouble.

Sangai

-sukuma	to push along
baiskeli (N)	bicycle
Kwa nini wasukuma baiskeli yako?	Why are you pushing your bicycle?

Mutisya

-haribika	to get broken
Jamaa, imeharibika.	It's broken, my friend.

Sangai

-tengeneza	to repair
siyo	it is not it (used here as an equivalent of English 'wouldn't it?')
Afadhali uitengeneze basi, siyo?	Wouldn't it be a good thing if you fixed it, then?

Mutisya

-weza	to be able
Siwezi kuitengeneza.	I can't fix it.
fundi (MA animate)	skilled worker of any kind
Naipeleka kwa fundi.	I'm taking it to the repairman.
kwa heri	to happiness, with good fortune
Kwa heri, bwana.	Well, good-bye.

Sangai

Asante.	Thanks.

Notes

A. Some additional pairs of simple and neuter stems.

The stative verb stem -*haribika* is related to the simple stem -*haribu* 'to damage, destroy'. The verb -*ondoka* 'to depart' is related to -*ondoa* 'to start off, take away', and -*toka* 'to come from' is related to -*toa* 'to supply, take out, offer'.

2.

A. -*weza* plus infinitive.

-sukuma	Watoto wadogo hawawezi kusukuma baiskeli kubwa.	Small children cannot push a big bicycle.
-tengeneza	Watoto wadogo hawawezi kutengeneza baiskeli kubwa.	Small children cannot repair a big bicycle.
-nunua	Watoto wadogo hawawezi kununua baiskeli kubwa.	Small children cannot buy a big bicycle.
-leta	Watoto wadogo hawawezi kuleta baiskeli kubwa.	Small children cannot bring a big bicycle.

B. Meaning of *me*-tense with a neuter stem.

baiskeli	Baiskeli imeharibika?	Is the bicycle damaged?
nguo	Nguo imeharibika?	Is the cloth damaged?
kiti	Kiti kimeharibika?	Is the chair damaged?
chakula	Chakula kimeharibika?	Is the food damaged?
motokaa	Motokaa imeharibika?	Is the motor car damaged?
jiko	Jiko limeharibika?	Is the stove damaged?

C. Concord: object prefix and object.

baiskeli	Tafadhali, uitengeneze baiskeli yangu.	Please repair my bicycle.
nyumba	Tafadhali, uitengeneze nyumba yangu.	Please repair my house.

kiti	Tafadhali, ukitengeneze kiti changu.	Please repair my chair.
viti	Tafadhali, uvitengeneze viti vyangu.	Please repair my chairs.
vitu	Tafadhali, uvitengeneze vitu vyangu.	Please repair my things.
motokaa	Tafadhali, uitengeneze motokaa yangu.	Please repair my motor car.

3.

A. Concord: Noun, subject prefix with locative stem object prefix.

mayai	Mayai yako wapi? Nimeyapeleka sokoni.	Where are the eggs? I took them to the market.
mboga	Mboga ziko wapi? Nimezipeleka sokoni.	Where are the vegetables? I took them to the market.
pilipili	Pilipili ziko wapi? Nimezipeleka sokoni.	Where is the pepper? I took it to the market.
muhogo	Muhogo uko wapi? Nimeupeleka sokoni.	Where is the cassava? I took it to the market.

B. Agreement of possessive stem in first sentence, subject prefix in second.

-etu	Jiko letu limeharibika. Hatuwezi kulitengeneza.	Our stove is damaged. We can't repair it.
-angu	Jiko langu limeharibika. Siwezi kulitengeneza.	My stove is damaged. I can't repair it.
-ake	Jiko lake limeharibika. Hawezi kulitengeneza.	His stove is damaged. He can't repair it.
-ao	Jiko lao limeharibika. Hawawezi kulitengeneza.	Their stove is damaged. They can't repair it.

C. Neuter vs. simple stems.

baiskeli	Baiskeli yangu imeharibika.	My bicycle is in bad working condition.
	Nani ameiharibu?	Who damaged it?
chakula	Chakula changu kimeharibika.	My food is spoiled.
	Nani amekiharibu?	Who spoiled it?
motokaa	Motokaa yangu imeharibika.	My motor car is in bad working condition.
	Nani ameiharibu?	Who damaged it?
kiti	Kiti changu kimeharibika.	My chair is damaged.
	Nani amekiharibu?	Who damaged it?

D. Affirmative vs. negative subjunctive.

kusukuma	Niisukume baiskeli?	Should I push the bicycle?
	Hapana. Usiisukume.	No, don't push it.
kutengeneza	Niitengeneze baiskeli?	Should I fix the bicycle?
	Hapana. Usiitengeneze.	No, don't fix it.
kununua	Niinunue baiskeli?	Should I buy the bicycle?
	Hapana. Usiinunue.	No, don't buy it.
kuuza	Niiuze baiskeli?	Should I sell the bicycle?
	Hapana. Usiiuze.	No, don't sell it.

Conversation Starters

1. A asks B whether he can accompany him to town. B replies with a list of things that he must do first. A offers to help him.

Unit 45

1. Basic Dialogue. Trouble with a pen.

Abasi

kalamu (N)	pen
Tafadhali nisaidie kalamu.	Please lend me a pen.
-andika	to write
Yangu haiandiki.	Mine doesn't write.

Sangai

wino (U)	ink
Lakini una wino?	But do you have ink?

Abasi

-vunjika	to become broken
Ndiyo, lakini kalamu imevunjika.	Yes, but my pen is broken.

Sangai

Wapi?	What part?

Abasi

nibu (N)	nib
~enyewe	-self
Nibu yenyewe.	The nib itself.
-lazimu	to be necessary
Yanilazimu ninunue nibu m̀pya kesho.	I must buy a new nib tomorrow.

Notes

A. An additional pair of simple and neuter stems.

The stative verb stem -*vunjika* 'to get broken' is related to the simple stem -*vunja* 'to break'.

B. -*lazimu* plus subjunctive or infinitive.

The verb -*lazimu* 'to be a necessity [to]' may be followed either by an infinitive or by a subjunctive form:

yanilazimu kununua m̀pya yanilazimu ninunue m̀pya	I've got to buy a new one

The subjunctive is considered better. In these examples, we have the *a*-tense of the verb. The subject prefix is that of the singular of the N-class, used here with no antecedent. This subject prefix used in this way is sometimes called 'impersonal.'

2.

A. Concords with -*pya*.

kalamu	Nilinunua kalamu m̀pya jana.	I bought a new pen yesterday.
kiti	Nilinunua kiti kipya jana.	I bought a new chair yesterday.
viti	Nilinunua viti vipya jana.	I bought some new chairs yesterday.
baiskeli	Nilinunua baiskeli m̀pya jana.	I bought a new bicycle yesterday.
nguo	Nilinunua nguo m̀pya jana.	I bought some new clothes yesterday.
jiko	Nilinunua jiko jipya jana.	I bought a new stove yesterday.

B. -*lazimu* plus infinitive.

-tengeneza	Yanilazimu kutengeneza kalamu hii.	I must repair this pen.
-nunua	Yanilazimu kununua kalamu hii.	I must buy this pen.
-uza	Yanilazimu kuuza kalamu hii.	I must sell this pen.
-peleka	Yanilazimu kupeleka kalamu hii kwa fundi.	I must take this pen to the repairman.

C. -lazimu plus subjunctive.

mimi	Yanilazimu nilipe kalamu.	I must pay for the pen.
wao	Yawalazimu walipe kalamu.	They must pay for the pen.
yeye	Yam̀lazimu alipe kalamu.	He must pay for the pen.
sisi	Yatulazimu tulipe kalamu.	We must pay for the pen.
wewe	Yakulazimu ulipe kalamu.	You must pay for the pen.
ninyi	Yawalazimuni m̀lipe kalamu.	You (pl.) must pay for the pen.

D. -enyewe.

mimi	Mimi mwenyewe nilikwenda.	I myself went.
wewe	Wewe mwenyewe ulikwenda.	You yourself went.
yeye	Yeye mwenyewe alikwenda.	He himself went.
sisi	Sisi wenyewe tulikwenda.	We ourselves went.
ninyi	Ninyi wenyewe m̀likwenda.	You yourselves went.
wao	Wao wenyewe walikwenda.	They themselves went.

3.

A. Agreement in successive sentences among subject, object, and possessive stem.

mimi	Nahitaji kalamu. Tafadhali nisaidie. Yangu haiandiki.	I need a pen. Please lend me one. Mine doesn't write.
Juma	Juma ahitaji kalamu. Tafadhali m̀saidie. Yake haiandiki.	Juma needs a pen. Please lend him one. His can't write.
sisi	Twahitaji kalamu. Tafadhali tusaidie. Zetu haziandiki.	We need pens. Please lend us some. Ours don't write.

watoto	Watoto wahitaji kalamu. Tafadhali wasaidie. Zao haziandiki.	The children need pens. Please lend them some. Theirs don't write.

B. -mekwisha.

wino	Una wino wa kutosha? Hapana, wino umekwisha.	Do you have enough ink? No, ink is all gone.
uji	Una uji wa kutosha? Hapana, uji umekwisha.	Do you have enough gruel? No, gruel is all gone.
sukari	Una sukari ya kutosha? Hapana, sukari imekwisha.	Do you have enough sugar? No, sugar is all gone.
chai	Una chai ya kutosha? Hapana, chai imekwisha.	Do you have enough tea? No, tea is all gone.
maji	Una maji ya kutosha? Hapana, maji yamekwisha.	Do you have enough water? No, water is all gone.
maziwa	Una maziwa ya kutosha? Hapana, maziwa yamekwisha.	Do you have enough milk? No, milk is all gone.

Unit 46

1. Basic Dialogue. I've lost a letter.

Hamisi

barua (N)	letter
meza (N)	table
Umeiona barua juu ya meza?	Did you see the letter on the table?

Adija

Kutoka wapi?	Where from?

Hamisi

muhuri (MI) (or: chapa ya posta, alama ya posta)	postmark
Ilikuwa na muhuri wa Afrika Magharibi.	It had a West African postmark.

Adija

Sijaiona. Imepotea?	I haven't seen it. Is it lost?

Hamisi

-kumbuka	to remember
-weka	to put
Siwezi kukumbuka niliiweka wapi.	I can't remember where I put it.
-poteza	to lose
Pengine nimeipoteza.	Maybe I've lost it.

Adija

-kata	to cut
tamaa (N)	desire

'Usikate tamaa.'	Don't despair.
-tafuta	to look for
Nitakusaidia kuitafuta.	I'll help you look for it.

Notes

A. Causative stems.

imepotea	is it lost?
nimeipoteza	I've lost it
nimerudi	I have returned
nimeirudisha	I have returned it

The stem -poteza 'to lose' is a 'causative' stem which is related to the applied stem -potea 'to get lost'. The vowel of the causative suffix follows the same rule as the vowels of the applied and stative suffixes: it is -i- after u, i or a, and -e- after e or o. For this verb and some others, the consonant is -z-. The final vowel of causative infinitives is -a, regardless of the final vowel of the simple stem.

-pend-	'to like'	-pend-ez-	'to please'
-pot-	(Simple root no longer in use in this sense.)	-pot-ez-	'to lose, throw away'
-ja-	'to become full'	-ja-z-	'to fill'
-temb-	(Simple root no longer in use in this sense.)	-temb-ez-	'to cause to walk about'
-pelek-	'to go, send, take'	-pelek-ez-	'to cause to send, etc.'
-um-	'to bite, hurt'	-um-iz-	'to cause to hurt'

For many other verbs, the consonant is -sh-:

-end-	'to go'	-end-esh-	'to cause to go'
-sem-	'to speak'	-sem-esh-	'to cause to speak'
-ot-	'to grow, sprout'	-ot-esh-	'to raise (vegetables)'

-rud-	'to return'	-rud-ish-	'to cause to return'
-furah-	'to rejoice'	-furah-ish-	'to cause to rejoice'

Many verbs have -sh-, without a suffixial vowel, where a related stem has -k-:

	-wak-	'to burn'	-wash-	'to ignite'
	-anguk-	'to fall'	-angush-	'to drop'
	-kumbuk-	'to remember'	-kumbush-	'to remind'
but	-andik-	'to write'	-andik-ish-	'to dictate
	-wek-	'to put'	-wek-esh-	'to cause to put'

For more details, see Chapter XXXIV of Ashton's Swahili Grammar. While the above generalizations will be of great help in organizing and remembering the facts, it is safest in the beginning to learn each causative form separately.

2.

A. Concord: Noun and demonstrative; -ku- as object prefix.

barua	Nani alikuletea barua hii?	Who brought you this letter?
barua (pl.)	Nani alikuletea barua hizi?	Who brought you these letters?
kalamu	Nani alikuletea kalamu hii?	Who brought you this pen?
nguo (sg.)	Nani alikuletea nguo hii?	Who brought you this cloth?
nguo (pl.)	Nani alikuletea nguo hizi?	Who brought you these clothes?
kitu	Nani alikuletea kitu hiki?	Who brought you this thing?
vitu	Nani alikuletea vitu hivi?	Who brought you these things?

B. -weka, juu ya- ________.

↓	Niliweka kiti juu ya meza.	I put a chair on the table.
barua	Niliweka barua juu ya meza.	I put a letter on the table.

kalamu	Niliweka kalamu juu ya meza.	I put a pen on the table.
nguo	Niliweka nguo juu ya meza.	I put some clothes on the table.
kiti	Niliweka nguo juu ya kiti.	I put some clothes on the chair.
matunda	Niliweka matunda juu ya kiti.	I put some fruit on the chair.
nyama	Niliweka nyama juu ya kiti.	I put some meat on the chair.
jiko	Niliweka nyama juu ya jiko.	I put some meat on the stove.
maji	Niliweka maji juu ya jiko.	I put some water on the stove.

C. -weka plus locatives.

nguo	Weka nguo mezani.	Put the clothes on the table.
kalamu	Weka kalamu mezani.	Put the pen on the table.
ndizi	Weka ndizi mezani.	Put the bananas on the table.
viazi	Weka viazi mezani.	Put the potatoes on the table.

3.

A. Agreement of subject and object prefixes; concord of noun and object prefix.

kalamu	Nimepoteza kalamu. Nitakusaidia kuitafuta.	I lost a pen. I'll help you to look for it.
mayai	Nimepoteza mayai. Nitakusaidia kuyatafuta.	I lost some eggs. I'll help you to look for them.
chungwa	Nimepoteza chungwa. Nitakusaidia kulitafuta.	I lost an orange. I'll help you to look for it.
m̀kate	Nimepoteza m̀kate. Nitakusaidia kuutafuta.	I lost a loaf of bread. I'll help you to look for it.

B. Causative stem; concord including object prefix.

kalamu	Kalamu yangu imepotea. Nani ameipoteza?	My pen is lost. Who lost it?

barua	Barua yangu imepotea.	My letter is lost.
	Nani ameipoteza?	Who lost it?
barua	Barua zangu zimepotea.	My letters are lost.
	Nani amezipoteza?	Who lost them?
nguo	Nguo yangu imepotea.	My cloth is lost.
	Nani ameipoteza?	Who lost it?

C.

kalamu	Kalamu zetu zimepotea.	Our pens are lost.
	M̀mezipoteza lini?	When did you lose them?
barua	Barua zetu zimepotea.	Our letters are lost.
	M̀mezipoteza lini?	When did you lose them?
nguo	Nguo zetu zimepotea.	Our clothes are lost.
	M̀mezipoteza lini?	When did you lose them?

D. Agreement of subject prefix and possessive stem.

wewe	Unatoka wapi?	Where are you from?
	Silikumbuki jina lako.	I don't remember your name.
yeye	Anatoka wapi?	Where is he from?
	Silikumbuki jina lake.	I don't remember his name.
ninyi	M̀natoka wapi?	Where are you all from?
	Siyakumbuki majina yenu.	I don't remember your names.
wao	Wanatoka wapi?	Where are they from?
	Siyakumbuki majina yao.	I don't remember their names.

Conversation Starters

1. A (an employer) gives directions to B (a domestic servant), and answers B's questions about details of his duties.

Unit 47

1. Basic Dialogue. Broken dishes.

(Loud crash off stage.)

Mother

Nini hicho kimevunjika? (or: Kitu kimevunjika nini?)	What's that that broke?

Daughter

-angusha	to cause to fall
chombo (VI)	vessel
-pakua	to divide
Mariamu ameangusha vyombo vya kupakulia chakula.	Mary dropped the dishes. ('... the vessels for dividing out the food.')

Mother

-pi?	which?
Vipi vimevunjika?	Which ones are broken?

Daughter

sahani (N)	plate
kikombe (VI)	cup
kisahani (VI)	saucer
bilauri (N)	glass
-ote	all
Sahani mbili, vikombe vitatu, kisahani kimoja, na bilauri zote!	Two plates, three cups, one saucer, and all the glasses!

Mother

Bilauri zilikuwa ngapi?	How many glasses were there? ('Glasses they-were how-many?')

Daughter

-fikiri	to think
Mama, nafikiri zilikuwa n̂ne.	Four, I think, Mother.

a.

A. Si as negative copula; the invariable adjective safi.

sahani	Sahani hii si safi sana.	This plate is not very clean.
sahani (pl.)	Sahani hizi si safi sana.	These plates are not very clean.
kikombe	Kikombe hiki si safi sana.	This cup is not very clean.
vikombe	Vikombe hivi si safi sana.	These cups are not very clean.
bilauri	Bilauri hii si safi sana.	This glass is not very clean.
bilauri (pl.)	Bilauri hizi si safi sana.	These glasses are not very clean.
nguo	Nguo hii si safi sana.	This cloth is not very clean.

B. Concord with -ote.

sahani	Sahani zote ni safi sasa.	All the plates are clean now.
vikombe	Vikombe vyote ni safi sasa.	All the cups are clean now.
visahani	Visahani vyote ni safi sasa.	All the saucers are clean now.
bilauri	Bilauri zote ni safi sasa.	All the glasses are clean now.
nguo	Nguo zote ni safi sasa.	All the clothes are clean now.

C. Concord with -pi.

vikombe	Vikombe vipi si safi?	Which cups are not clean?
kikombe	Kikombe kipi si safi?	Which cup is not clean?

sahani (pl.)	Sahani zipi si safi?	Which plates are not clean?
sahani	Sahani ipi si safi?	Which plate is not clean?
nguo	Nguo ipi si safi?	Which cloth is not clean?

D. Concord with -ote.

bilauri	Mariamu amevunja bilauri zote.	Mariamu broke all the glasses.
vyombo	Mariamu amevunja vyombo vyote.	Mariamu broke all the dishes.
visahani	Mariamu amevunja visahani vyote.	Mariamu broke all the saucers.
vikombe	Mariamu amevunja vikombe vyote.	Mariamu broke all the cups.
sahani	Mariamu amevunja sahani zote.	Mariamu broke all the plates.

3.

A. Concords in successive short sentences.

sahani moja	Sahani moja imeanguka.	One plate has fallen.
	Ipi?	Which one?
	Yako.	Yours.
	Nani ameiangusha?	Who made it fall?
sahani mbili	Sahani mbili zimeanguka.	Two plates have fallen.
	Zipi?	Which ones?
	Zako.	Yours.
	Nani ameziangusha?	Who made them fall?
kikombe kimoja	Kikombe kimoja kimeanguka.	One cup has fallen.
	Kipi?	Which one?
	Chako.	Yours.
	Nani amekiangusha?	Who made it fall?
vikombe viwili	Vikombe viwili vimeanguka.	Two cups have fallen.
	Vipi?	Which ones?

	Vyako.	Yours.
	Nani ameviangusha?	Who made them fall?

B. Neuter *vs.* simple stems; concord including object prefix.

kalamu	Kalamu yangu imevunjika.	My pen is broken.
	Nani ameivunja?	Who broke it?
bilauri	Bilauri yangu imevunjika.	My glass is broken.
	Nani ameivunja?	Who broke it?
kisahani	Kisahani changu kimevunjika.	My saucer is broken.
	Nani amekivunja?	Who broke it?
kikombe	Kikombe changu kimevunjika.	My cup is broken.
	Nani amekivunja?	Who broke it?

C. *-kuwa* *˜ngapi?*; concord with *˜ngapi*.

vikombe	Vikombe safi vilikuwa vingapi?	How many clean cups were there?
	Vilikuwa viñne.	There were four.
visahani	Visahani safi vilikuwa vingapi?	How many clean saucers were there?
	Vilikuwa viñne.	There were four.
sahani	Sahani safi zilikuwa ngapi?	How many clean plates were there?
	Zilikuwa ñne.	There were four.
bilauri	Bilauri safi zilikuwa ngapi?	How many clean glasses were there?
	Zilikuwa ñne.	There were four.

D. Concord: Noun and two adjectives.

vikombe	Kuna vikombe vipya vingapi?	How many new cups are there?
	Kuna vitano.	There are five.
visahani	Kuna visahani vipya vingapi?	How many new saucers are there?
	Kuna vitano.	There are five.

kalamu	Kuna kalamu m̂pya ngapi? Kuna tano.	How many new pens are there? There are five.
nguo	Kuna nguo m̂pya ngapi? Kuna tano.	How many new cloths are there? There are five.
nyumba	Kuna nyumba m̂pya ngapi? Kuna tano.	How many new houses are there? There are five.

Unit 48

1. Basic Dialogue. Lighting the lamp.

Hamisi

giza (MA)	darkness
-ingia	to enter
Giza laingia.	It's getting dark.
taa (N)	a lighting device (lamp, light bulb, etc.)
mafuta (pl. MA)	oil, grease
-washa	to cause to light up
Tafadhali, nipatie taa ya mafuta, niwashe.	Please get me the lamp so I [can] light [it].

Adija

-chukua	to take, carry
Chukua taa. Nimeileta.	Here it is. ('Take it. I've brought it.')

Hamisi

Inayo mafuta ya kutosha?	Does it have enough oil?

Adija

-tia	put, pour
chupa (N)	bottle
jioni	evening
Ndiyo, tulitia chupa mbili jana jioni.	Yes, we put in two bottles yesterday evening.

Notes

A. Imperative of one verb, followed by subjunctive of a second.

nipatie taa niwashe	get me the lamp so that I [may] light [it]

After an imperative form of one verb, the subjunctive of a second verb is used to show the purpose of the action of the first.

2.

A. -ingia plus locative.

nyumba	Ingieni nyumbani.	Go into the house.
kanisa	Ingieni kanisani.	Go into the church.
shule	Ingieni shuleni.	Go into the school.
boma	Ingieni bomani.	Go into the District Office.

B. Adverbial use of usiku.

nani	Nani aliwasha taa usiku?	Who lit the lamp last night?
Juma	Juma aliwasha taa usiku?	Did Juma light the lamp last night?
Mama	Mama aliwasha taa usiku?	Did Mother light the lamp last night?
Baba na Juma	Baba na Juma waliwasha taa usiku?	Did Father and Juma light the lamp last night?

C. Subject and object prefixes with -na-.

↓	Taa inayo mafuta ya kutosha usiku huu?	Does the lamp have enough oil for tonight?
sisi	Sisi tunayo mafuta ya kutosha usiku huu?	Do we have enough oil for tonight?
wapagazi	Wapagazi wanayo mafuta ya kutosha usiku huu?	Do the porters have enough oil for tonight?

chakula	Wapagazi wanacho chakula cha kutosha usiku huu?	Do the porters have enough food for tonight?
ninyi	Ninyi m̀nacho chakula cha kutosha usiku huu?	Do you have enough food for tonight?
watoto	Watoto wanacho chakula cha kutosha usiku huu?	Do the children have enough food for tonight?

D. -tia.

↓	Tutatia mafuta katika taa.	We will put oil into the lamp.
chupa	Tutatia mafuta katika chupa.	We will put oil into the bottle.
maji	Tutatia maji katika chupa.	We will put water into the bottle.
kikombe	Tutatia maji katika kikombe.	We will put water into the cup.
bilauri	Tutatia maji katika bilauri.	We will put water into the glass.
maziwa	Tutatia maziwa katika bilauri.	We will put milk into the glass.
chupa	Tutatia maziwa katika chupa.	We will put milk into the bottle.

E. Imperative plus subjunctive.

mafuta	Lete mafuta nitie katika chupa hii.	Bring oil for me to put into this bottle.
maziwa	Lete maziwa nitie katika chupa hii.	Bring milk for me to put into this bottle.
maji	Lete maji nitie katika chupa hii.	Bring water for me to put into this bottle.
wino	Lete wino nitie katika chupa hii.	Bring ink for me to put into this bottle.

3.

A. Imperative plus subjunctive.

kalamu	M̀letee kalamu aitengeneze.	Bring him the pen so that he can fix it.

kalamu (pl.)	Ṁletee kalamu azitengeneze.	Bring him the pens so that he can fix them.
baiskeli	Ṁletee baiskeli aitengeneze.	Bring him the bicycle so that he can fix it.
viti	Ṁletee viti avitengeneze.	Bring him the chairs so that he can fix them.
motokaa	Ṁletee motokaa aitengeneze.	Bring him the car so that he can fix it.
taa	Ṁletee taa aitengeneze.	Bring him the lamp so that he can fix it.

B. Second person plural object prefix.

vikombe	Juma aliwapatieni vikombe vingapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia kikombe cho chote!	How many cups did Juma get you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any cup at all!
viazi	Juma aliwapatieni viazi vingapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia kiazi cho chote!	How many potatoes did Juma get you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any at all!
mayai	Juma aliwapatieni mayai mangapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia yai lo lote!	How many eggs did Juma get you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any egg at all!
maembe	Juma aliwapatieni maembe mangapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia embe lo lote!	How many mangoes did Juma get you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any mango at all!
mikate	Juma aliwapatieni mikate mingapi jana jioni?	How many loaves of bread did Juma bring you yesterday evening?

	Hakutupatia m̊kate wo wote!	He didn't bring us any loaf of bread at all!
taa	Juma aliwapatieni taa ngapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia taa yo yote!	How many lamps did Juma bring you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any lamp at all!
chupa	Juma aliwapatieni chupa ngapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia chupa yo yote!	How many bottles did Juma bring you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any bottle at all!
ng'ombe	Juma aliwapatieni ng'ombe wangapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia ng'ombe ye yote!	How many cattle did Juma bring you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any cattle at all!

Conversation Starters

1. A (an employer) returns from a trip, and discusses the trip with B (a domestic servant).

2. A then questions B about the state of the house, the dishes, etc. in his absence, and about the adequacy of supplies for the immediate future.

Unit 49

1. Basic Dialogue. Lighting the lamp.

Son	
kiberiti (VI) (or: kibiriti)	match
Tafadhali, nipatie kiberiti.	Please get me a match.
Mother	
Viberiti vyote vimekwisha.	They're all gone.
Son	
pesa (N)	coins
Unazo pesa za kununua vingine?	Do you have money to buy some more?
Mother	
senti (N) (or: pesa (N))	small change
sanduku (N)	box
Ndiyo. Chukua senti kutoka sandukuni.	Yes, take some change out of the box.
haraka (N)	haste
Na ufanye haraka. Giza laingia.	And hurry, it's getting dark. ('Darkness enters.')
Son	
Ndiyo, mama.	Yes, Mother.

2.

A. Concords with -pya.

kiberiti	Tafadhali, nipatie kiberiti kipya.	Please get me a new match.

viberiti	Tafadhali, nipatie viberiti vipya.	Please get me some new matches.
sanduku	Tafadhali, nipatie sanduku jipya.	Please get me a new box.
nguo	Tafadhali, nipatie nguo m̀pya.	Please get me some new clothes.
chupa	Tafadhali, nipatie chupa m̀pya.	Please get me a new bottle.
taa	Tafadhali, nipatie taa m̀pya.	Please get me a new lamp.

B. Meaning of me-tense of -(kw)isha.

viberiti	Viberiti vimekwisha, mama.	The matches are all used up, mother.
vikombe	Vikombe vimekwisha, mama.	The cups are all gone, mother.
siagi	Siagi imekwisha, mama.	The butter is all gone, mother.
sahani	Sahani zimekwisha, mama.	The plates are all gone, mother.
pesa	Pesa zimekwisha, mama.	The money is all gone, mother.
mafuta	Mafuta yamekwisha, mama.	The oil is all gone, mother.
maji	Maji yamekwisha, mama.	The water is all gone, mother.
njugu	Njugu zimekwisha, mama.	The ground nuts are all gone, mother.

C. -a plus infinitive.

-nunua	Ṁnazo pesa za kununua mafuta?	Do you have money to buy oil?
-lipa	Ṁnazo pesa za kulipa kodi?	Do you have money to pay taxes?
-tosha	Ṁnazo pesa za kutosha?	Do you have money enough?

D. -chukua.

↓	Nani alichukua senti kutoka sandukuni?	Who took the change from the box?

kalamu	Nani alichukua kalamu kutoka sandukuni?	Who took the pen from the box?
meza	Nani alichukua kalamu kutoka mezani?	Who took the pen from the table (drawer)?
viberiti	Nani alichukua viberiti kutoka mezani?	Who took the matches from the table (drawer)?
nyumba	Nani alichukua viberiti kutoka nyumbani?	Who took the matches from the house?
motakaa	Nani alichukua viberiti kutoka motokaani?	Who took the matches from the car?
bilauri	Nani alichukua viberiti kutoka bilaurini?	Who took the matches from the glass?
mafuta	Nani alichukua mafuta kutoka bilaurini?	Who took the oil from the glass?
taa	Nani alichukua mafuta kutoka taani?	Who took the oil from the lamp?

3.

A. Multiple concords.

pesa	Unazo pesa za kutosha? Sina pesa zo zote.	Do you have enough money? I don't have any money at all.
senti	Unazo senti za kutosha? Sina senti zo zote.	Do you have enough change? I don't have any change at all.
mafuta	Unayo mafuta ya kutosha? Sina mafuta yo yote.	Do you have enough oil? I don't have any oil at all.
maji	Unayo maji ya kutosha? Sina maji yo yote.	Do you have enough water? I don't have any water at all.
mikate	Unayo mikate ya kutosha? Sina mikate yo yote.	Do you have enough bread? I don't have any bread at all.

uji	Unao uji wa kutosha?	Do you have enough gruel?
	Sina uji wo wote.	I don't have any gruel at all.
nyama	Unayo nyama ya kutosha?	Do you have enough meat?
	Sina nyama yo yote.	I don't have any meat at all.

B. Li-tense vs. past negative with -ku-.

kuchukua	Ulichukua senti ngapi kutoka sandukuni?	How many cents did you take out of the box?
	Sikuchukua nyingi.	I didn't take many.
kuweka	Uliweka senti ngapi sandukuni?	How many cents did you put into the box?
	Sikuweka nyingi.	I didn't put many.
kuona	Uliona senti ngapi sandukuni?	How many cents did you see in the box?
	Sikuona nyingi.	I didn't see many.

C.

kuchukua	M̀lichukua viberiti vingapi nyumbani?	How many matches did you (pl.) take out of the house?
	Hatukuchukua vingi.	We didn't take many.
kuweka	M̀liweka viberiti vingapi nyumbani?	How many matches did you (pl.) put in the house?
	Hatukuweka vingi.	We didn't put many.
kuona	M̀liona viberiti vingapi nyumbani?	How many matches did you (pl.) see in the house?
	Hatukuona vingi.	We didn't see many.

Unit 50

1. Basic Dialogue. I'm not hungry.

Mother

Unakitaka chakula hiki?	Do you want this food?

Son

Hapana, sikitaki asante.	No, thank you.

Mother

Kwa nini?	Why [not]?

Son

-maliza	to finish
Kwa sababu sina njaa. Nimemaliza kula sasa hivi.	Because I'm not hungry. I've just now finished eating.

Mother

kinywaji (VI)	a drink
Pengine wataka kinywaji.	Maybe you'd like a drink.

Son

Ndiyo. Tafadhali nipatie bilauri moja ya maji ya machungwa.	Yes, a glass of orange juice would be fine.

Mother

-nywa	to drink
Basi chukua. Mimi nitakunywa soda.	Here you are. ('Then, take') I'll have some soda.

Notes

A. The phrase *sasa hivi*.

Note the use of *hivi*, which has the form of the proximal demonstrative,

plural VI class, as modifier of sasa 'now' to produce sasa hivi 'just now.' The phrase hivi sasa is also used in this sense.

2.

A. Concord: Noun and demonstrative.

chakula	Unataka chakula hicho?	Do you want that food?
njugu	Unataka njugu hizo?	Do you want those ground nuts?
m̀kate	Unataka m̀kate huo?	Do you want that bread?
kinywaji	Unataka kinywaji hicho?	Do you want that drink?
siagi	Unataka siagi hiyo?	Do you want that butter?
nyama	Unataka nyama hiyo?	Do you want that meat?

B. -me-maliza plus infinitive.

-la	Juma amemaliza kula sasa hivi.	Juma has just now finished eating.
-leta	Juma amemaliza kuleta kinywaji sasa hivi.	Juma has just now finished bringing a drink.
-tuletea	Juma amemaliza kutuletea vinywaji sasa hivi.	Juma has just now finished bringing us drinks.
-fanya	Juma amemaliza kufanya kazi sasa hivi.	Juma has just now finished working.

C. hu-tense; concord with ~ingi.

chai	Watu wote wa ǹchi hii hunywa chai nyingi.	Everyone in this country drinks a lot of tea.
kahawa	Watu wote wa ǹchi hii hunywa kahawa nyingi.	Everyone in this country drinks a lot of coffee.
maziwa	Watu wote wa ǹchi hii hunywa maziwa mengi.	Everyone in this country drinks a lot of milk.
soda	Watu wote wa ǹchi hii hunywa soda nyingi.	Everyone in this country drinks a lot of soda.

maji ya machungwa	Watu wote wa ǹchi hii hunywa maji ya machungwa mengi.	Everyone in this country drinks a lot of orange juice.

D.

nyama	Watu wengi wa ǹchi hii hula nyama nyingi.	Many people in this country eat a lot of meat.
njugu	Watu wengi wa ǹchi hii hula njugu nyingi.	Many people in this country eat a lot of ground nuts.
muhogo	Watu wengi wa ǹchi hii hula muhogo mwingi.	Many people in this country eat a lot of cassava.
mahindi	Watu wengi wa ǹchi hii hula mahindi mengi.	Many people in this country eat a lot of maize.

3.

A. Me-tense vs. negative with -ja-.

wewe	Umemaliza kula sasa? Hapana, sijamaliza bado.	Have you finished eating now? No, I haven't finished yet.
ninyi	M̀memaliza kula sasa? Hapana, hatujamaliza bado.	Have you all finished eating now? No, we haven't finished yet.
watu wote	Watu wote wamemaliza kula sasa? Hapana, hawajamaliza bado.	Has everyone finished eating now? No, they haven't finished yet.

B. Present affirmative vs. negative, with object prefix.

chakula	Unakitaka chakula hiki? Hapana, sikitaki, asante.	Do you want this food? No, I don't want it, thank you.
m̀kate	Unautaka m̀kate huu? Hapana, siutaki, asante.	Do you want this bread? No, I don't want it, thank you.
mikate	Unaitaka mikate hii? Hapana, siitaki, asante.	Do you want these loaves? No, I don't want them, thank you.

embe	Unalitaka embe hili? Hapana, silitaki, asante.	Do you want this mango? No, I don't want it, thank you.
maembe	Unayataka maembe haya? Hapana, siyataki, asante.	Do you want these mangoes? No, I don't want them, thank you.
ndizi	Unaitaka ndizi hii? Hapana, siitaki, asante.	Do you want this banana? No, I don't want it, thank you.
ndizi (pl.)	Unazitaka ndizi hizi? Hapana, sizitaki, asante.	Do you want these bananas? No, I don't want them, thank you.
kiazi	Unakitaka kiazi hiki? Hapana, sikitaki, asante.	Do you want this potato? No, I don't want it, thank you.
viazi	Unavitaka viazi hivi? Hapana, sivitaki, asante.	Do you want these potatoes? No, I don't want them, thank you.

C. Negative present of monosyllabic verb stem, with loss of ku-.

Mariamu	Mariamu anakula viazi? La, hali viazi, anakula m̀kate.	Is Mariamu eating potatoes? No, she isn't eating potatoes. She's eating bread.
watoto	Watoto wanakula viazi? La, hawali viazi, wanakula m̀kate.	Are the children eating potatoes? No, they aren't eating potatoes. They are eating bread.
wewe	Unakula viazi? La, sili viazi, ninakula m̀kate.	Are you eating potatoes? No, I'm not eating potatoes. I'm eating bread.
ninyi	M̀nakula viazi? La, hatuli viazi, tunakula m̀kate.	Are you all eating potatoes? No, we aren't eating potatoes. We're eating bread.

D.

Daudi	Daudi anakunywa kahawa? La, hanywi kahawa, anakunywa chai.	Is Daudi drinking coffee? No, he isn't drinking coffee. He's drinking tea.

wote	Wote wanakunywa kahawa?	Are they all drinking coffee?
	La, hawanywi kahawa,	No, they aren't drinking coffee.
	wanakunywa chai.	They're drinking tea.
wewe	Unakunywa kahawa?	Are you drinking coffee?
	La, sinywi kahawa,	No, I'm not drinking coffee.
	ninakunywa chai.	I'm drinking tea.
ninyi	Mnakunywa kahawa?	Are you (pl.) drinking coffee?
	La, hatunywi kahawa,	No, we aren't drinking coffee.
	tunakunywa chai.	We're drinking tea.

Conversation Starters

1. A inquires of B about what the people of his country customarily eat and how they spend their leisure time. B replies, and asks similar questions about the people of A's country.

2. Within the limits of the vocabulary that has been met up to this point, give an account of a typical day in your own life. Do the same for a day in the life of a domestic servant.

Unit 51

1. Basic Dialogue. What grade are you in?

Magese

-soma	to read, study
darasa (MA)	class
Unasoma darasa gani m̀toto?	What class are you in, [child]?

Juma

Niko katika darasa la tano.	I'm in Standard 5.

Magese

somo (MA)	an academic subject, a lesson
Wapenda masomo gani shuleni?	What subjects do you like in school?

Juma

hesabu (N)	arithmetic
dini (N)	religion
Napenda hesabu, Kiingereza, dini na historia.	I like arithmetic, English, religion and history.

Magese

-endelea	to continue
-tumaini	to hope
Watumaini kuendelea katika masomo?	Do you hope to continue in your studies?

Juma

Mungu (MI)	God
-jalia	to assist (ordinarily in the sense of God's help)
m̀paka	to, until
chuo (VI)	school, college
Mungu akinijalia nitaendelea katika masomo m̀paka chuo cha juu.	If God helps me, I will go on in my studies to college.

Magese

mwishowe	finally
Mwishowe utafanya kazi gani?	What kind of work will you do after that?

Juma

siasa (N) (or: utetezi (U))	politics
Nitafanya kazi ya siasa.	I'm going into politics.

Notes

A. Juu with no possessive following it.

chuo cha juu   higher school

Here, juu is used without a possessive or a linking -a following it. cf. Note 35.C.

B. First and second person subject prefixes used with locative stems.

niko katika darasa la tano   I'm in Standard 5.

The first-person and second-person subject pronouns as well as the third-person pronouns may be used before the stem -ko, and before -po and -mo:

yuko nyumbani	he's at home
yupo nyumbani	he's at the house
yumo nyumbani	he's in the house

The difference in meaning between -*po* and -*ko* is not sharply defined. Generally speaking, -*po* implies a more definite idea of the location, while -*ko* has to do more with the mere existence of something regardless of place. -*mo* implies location of something within something else.

2.

A. -*endelea* plus infinitive; *m̀paka*.

-soma	Utaendelea kusoma m̀paka saa ngapi?	How late are you going to read?
-fanya	Utaendelea kufanya kazi m̀paka saa ngapi?	How late are you going to work?

-tembea -ogelea

B. -*jua* plus infinitive.

-ogelea	Watoto wote wanajua kuogelea?	Do all the children know how to swim?

-soma -andika -sema

3.

A. Nouns with the same stem but different prefixes.

m̀pishi	Baba yake ni m̀pishi. Yeye afanya kazi ya upishi.	His father is a cook. He does cooking.
m̀kulima	Baba yake ni m̀kulima. Yeye afanya kazi ya ukulima.	His father is a farmer. He does farming.
m̀tetezi	Baba yake ni m̀tetezi. Yeye afanya kazi ya utetezi.	His father is a politician. He does political work.

m̀pagazi	Baba yake ni m̀pagazi. Yeye afanya kazi ya kibarua.	His father is a porter. He does casual labor.
mwandishi	Baba yake ni mwandishi. Yeye afanya kazi ya uandishi.	His father is a secretary. He does secretarial work.

B. Personal subject prefixes with locative stems.

wewe	Uko wapi? Nimo nyumbani.	Where are you? I am in the house.
ninyi	M̀ko wapi? Tumo nyumbani.	Where are you (pl.)? We are in the house.
yeye	Yuko wapi? Yumo nyumbani.	Where is he? He is in the house.
wao	Wako wapi? Wamo nyumbani.	Where are they? They are in the house.

4. A asks B, a child, about his school work and about his chores at home.

Unit 52

1. Basic Dialogue. If you drink too much. . .

Mirambo

Mwone, yule m̀tu hawezi kutembea vyema.	Look at him! That man can't walk properly.

Sangai

pombe (N)	beer
Yeye amekwisha kunywa pombe.	He's been drinking beer. ('he has finished drinking beer')

Mirambo

Wewe unapenda kunywa pombe?	Do you like to drink it?

Sangai

wakati (U) (pl. nyakati)	time
Nyakati nyingine mimi hunywa kidogo tu.	Sometimes I drink just a little.

Mirambo

-lewa	to become drunk
Pombe ni mbaya kwa sababu inam̀fanya m̀tu alewe.	Beer is bad because it makes a person (that he should become) drunk.

Sangai

Ndiyo. M̀tu akinywa nyingi atalewa.	Yes, anyone who drinks much will get drunk.

Notes

A. The distal demonstratives (-le).

yule m̀tu	that man over there

A third series of demonstratives are formed on the stem -le. The general meaning is 'that/those over there'. These may be called 'distal' demonstratives. The three series of demonstratives may be compared in the following table.

		'neutral'	'proximal'	'distal'
		h u y o	h u y u	y u l e
WA	sg.	huyo	huyu	yule
	pl.	hao	hawa	wale
MI	sg.	huo	huu	ule
	pl.	hiyo	hii	ile
MA	sg.	hilo	hili	lile
	pl.	hayo	haya	yale
VI	sg.	hicho	hiki	kile
	pl.	hivyo	hivi	vile
N	sg.	hiyo	hii	ile
	pl.	hizo	hizi	zile
U		huo	huu	ule
PA ('mahali')		hapo	hapa	pale
KU		huko	huku	kule
MU		humu	humu	m̀le

B. The *ki*-tense.

m̀tu akinywa nyingi atalewa	if a person drinks much he will get drunk
Mungu akinijalia . . .	if God helps me . . .

These sentences contain verb forms with the prefix -*ki*-. This prefix stands between the subject and object prefixes, and in this respect resembles the tense prefixes -*na*-, -*li*-, etc. A crude but serviceable kind of translation equivalent for the *ki*- form is 'he drinking', 'he helping', 'I being', *etc*. Forms with -*ki*- in this slot do not ordinarily serve as the main verb in a complete sentence.

2.

A. -*weza* plus infinitive; -*le*.

-tembea	Wale watu hawawezi kutembea vyema.	Those people cannot walk well.
-soma	Wale watu hawawezi kusoma vyema.	Those people cannot read well.

-sema -andika

B. *Kidogo* after mass nouns.

pombe	Nyakati nyingine mimi hunywa pombe kidogo.	Sometimes I drink a little beer.
kahawa	Nyakati nyingine mimi hunywa kahawa kidogo.	Sometimes I drink a little coffee.
chai	Nyakati nyingine mimi hunywa chai kidogo.	Sometimes I drink a little tea.
maji	Nyakati nyingine mimi hunywa maji kidogo.	Sometimes I drink a little water.

C. Two examples of the *ki*-tense.

akienda	M̀toto akienda shuleni hujifunza kusoma.	If a child goes to school, he learns how to read.

ukifanya	Ukifanya kazi vizuri sana utapata m̀shahara wa kutosha.	If you work very well you will get enough pay.

D. Mara.

kuona	Ulimwona mara ngapi? Mara mbili.	How many times did you see him? Twice.
kusaidia	Ulim̀saidia mara ngapi? Mara mbili.	How many times did you help him? Twice.
kusikia	Ulim̀sikia mara ngapi? Mara mbili.	How many times did you hear him? Twice.
kutazama	Ulim̀tazama mara ngapi? Mara mbili.	How many times did you look at him? Twice.

E. -fanya plus subjunctive.

chai	Chai haim̀fanyi m̀tu alewe.	Tea does not make one drunk.
kahawa	Kahawa haim̀fanyi m̀tu alewe.	Coffee does not make one drunk.
maji	Maji hayam̀fanyi m̀tu alewe.	Water does not make one drunk.
maji ya machungwa	Maji ya machungwa hayam̀fanyi m̀tu alewe.	Orange juice does not make one drunk.

3.

A. Concords: Noun and adjectives.

pombe	Pombe ni nzuri? Hapana, ni mbaya.	Is the beer good? No, it is bad.
vyakula	Vyakula ni vizuri? Hapana, ni vibaya.	Are the foods good? No, they are bad.
nyama	Nyama ni nzuri? Hapana, ni mbaya.	Is the meat good? No, it is bad.
maembe	Maembe ni mazuri? Hapana, ni mabaya.	Are the mangoes good? No, they are bad.

machungwa	Machungwa ni mazuri? Hapana, ni mabaya.	Are the oranges good? No, they are bad.
ndizi	Ndizi ni nzuri? Hapana, ni mbaya.	Are the bananas good? No, they are bad.

Unit 53

1. Basic Dialogue. Juma hurt his leg.

Asha

ndugu (N-pers.)	kinsman of same generation
Baba, ndugu yangu Juma yuko wapi?	Father, where is my ndugu Juma?

Hamisi

Alipelekwa hospitalini na mama. (or:...hospitali...)	He was taken to the hospital by [his] mother.

Asha

Kwa nini?	Why?

Hamisi

-umia	be hurt
m̀kono (MI)	arm, hand
m̀guu (MI)	leg, foot
Kwa sababu aliumia m̀kono na m̀guu.	Because he hurt [his] arm and [his] foot.

Asha

Aliumiaje?	How did he get hurt?

Hamisi

kisu (VI)	knife
Alijiumiza mwenyewe kwa kisu.	He hurt himself with a knife.

Asha

m̀gonjwa (WA)	a sick person
Yeye m̀gonjwa sana?	Is he very ill?

Hamisi

Hapana, lakini alikuwa akiumwa.	No, but he was in pain.

Notes

A. Passive stems.

Ndugu yangu aliniuma.	My brother bit me.
Niliumwa na ndugu yangu.	I was bitten by my brother.
Ndugu yangu aliniumiza.	My brother hurt me.
Niliumizwa na ndugu yangu.	I was hurt by my brother.

Passive stems may be derived from simple stems, or from other derived stems, by use of a suffix whose most common form is -*w*-. When the passive suffix is used in the same word with another derivational suffix, it follows that suffix.

In sentences containing passive verbs, the word for the agent or means by which the action is performed follows the word *na*.

B. Passive stems formed on roots which contain vowels.

Wapagazi walikula nyama.	The porters ate the meat.
Nyama ililiwa na wapagazi.	The meat was eaten by the porters.
Maziwa yamenywewa na watoto.	The milk has been drunk by the children.

Passive stems derived from monosyllabic verbs do not have *ku*-, and the passive suffix itself is -*iw*-or -*ew*-. For details see the exercises.

C. Difference in meaning between -*umwa* and -*umia*.

Nili*umwa* (na) kichwa.	I had a headache.
Nili*umia* kichwa.	I hurt my head.

Note the difference in meaning between the derived verb stems in the above examples. The underlying simple stem -*uma* means 'to cause pain, injure, bite'.

The word *na* is used by some speakers after -*umwa*, but is omitted by others.

D. The reflexive prefix -*ji*-.

Ninajifunza Kiswahili.	I'm studying Swahili.
Nilimwumiza Daudi.	I hurt Daudi.
Nilijiumiza.	I hurt myself.
Walijiumiza.	They hurt themselves.

The prefix -*ji*- occupies the same slot as the other object prefixes. It is a 'reflexive' prefix, which indicates that the object of the verb is the same as its subject. It has the invariable shape -*ji*- regardless of the person, class or number of the subject.

The stem -*funza* means 'to teach'. -*jifunza* 'to study, learn' is literally 'to teach oneself'.

2.

A. -*umia*.

m̀guu	Juma aliumia m̀guu.	Juma hurt his leg.
miguu	Juma aliumia miguu.	Juma hurt his legs.
m̀kono	Juma aliumia m̀kono.	Juma hurt his hand.
mikono	Juma aliumia mikono.	Juma hurt his hands.
kichwa	Juma aliumia kichwa.	Juma hurt his head.

B. -*umwa*.

kichwa	Juma anaumwa na kichwa.	Juma has a headache.
m̀guu	Juma anaumwa na m̀guu.	Juma has a sore foot.
miguu	Juma anaumwa na miguu.	Juma's feet hurt.
m̀kono	Juma anaumwa na m̀kono.	Juma has a sore arm.

C. -*jiumiza*.

kisu	Nilijiumiza mwenyewe kwa kisu.	I hurt myself with a knife.
kiti	Nilijiumiza mwenyewe kwa kiti.	I hurt myself with a chair.

bilauri baiskeli kalamu

D. Kuna plus locative.

↓	Kuna wagonjwa wengi hospitalini?	Are there many patients in the hospital?
m̀tu	Kuna watu wengi hospitalini?	Are there many people in the hospital?
m̀ji	Kuna watu wengi m̀jini?	Are there many people in town?
m̀gonjwa	Kuna wagonjwa wengi m̀jini?	Are there many sick people in town?
m̀toto	Kuna watoto wengi m̀jini?	Are there many children in town?
shule	Kuna watoto wengi shuleni?	Are there many children in the school?

E. -wa plus ki-tense.

kufanya	Ulikuwa ukifanya nini saa sita m̀chana?	What were you doing at twelve noon?
kula	Ulikuwa ukila chakula saa sita m̀chana?	Were you eating at twelve noon?
kusoma	Ulikuwa ukisoma saa sita m̀chana?	Were you reading at twelve noon?
kutembea	Ulikuwa ukitembea saa sita m̀chana?	Were you walking at twelve noon?
kuandika	Ulikuwa ukiandika barua saa sita m̀chana?	Were you writing a letter at twelve noon?

F. Concord: Noun, adjective, subject prefix.

nguo m̀pya	Nguo m̀pya zilipelekwa hospitali.	New clothes were taken to the hospital.
mayai	Mayai yalipelekwa hospitali.	Eggs were taken to the hospital.

maziwa ndizi vyakula vyote

mahindi	Mahindi yote yalipelekwa sokoni.	All the maize was taken to the market.
muhogo	Muhogo wote ulipelekwa sokoni.	All the cassava was taken to the market.

mayai njugu nguruwe maembe mazima

H. Passive plus na.

baba	Kodi ililipwa jana na baba yangu.	The tax was paid yesterday by my father.

mama ndugu

I. -wa plus na-tense.

kichwa	Jana nilikuwa ninaumwa kichwa.	Yesterday, I had a headache.
m̀guu	Jana nilikuwa ninaumwa m̀guu.	Yesterday, I had a sore foot.
m̀kono	Jana nilikuwa ninaumwa m̀kono.	Yesterday, I had a sore arm.
vitu	Vitu hivi vyote vimeletwa na ndugu yangu.	All these things have been brought by my brother.
visu	Visu hivi vyote vimeletwa na ndugu yangu.	All these knives have been brought by my brother.

viti machungwa mayai njugu ndizi nyama siagi

mikate

3.

A. Passive of verbs whose roots contain no vowel.

pombe	Pombe yote imenywewa. Nani ameinywa?	All the beer has been drunk. Who has drunk it?
chai	Chai yote imenywewa. Nani ameinywa?	All the tea has been drunk. Who has drunk it?
kahawa	Kahawa yote imenywewa. Nani ameinywa?	All the coffee has been drunk. Who has drunk it?

soda	Soda yote imenywewa. Nani ameinywa?	All the soda has been drunk. Who has drunk it?
maji	Maji yote yamenywewa. Nani ameyanywa?	All the water has been drunk. Who has drunk it?

B.

viazi	Viazi vyote vimeliwa. Nani amevila?	All the potatoes have been eaten. Who has eaten them?
maembe	Maembe yote yameliwa. Nani ameyala?	All the mangoes have been eaten. Who has eaten them?
m̀kate	M̀kate wote umeliwa. Nani ameula?	All the bread has been eaten. Who has eaten it?
mikate	Mikate yote imeliwa. Nani ameila?	All the loaves of bread have been eaten. Who has eaten them?
nyama	Nyama yote imeliwa. Nani ameila?	All the meat has been eaten. Who has eaten it?
samaki	Samaki yote imeliwa. Nani ameila?	All the fish has been eaten. Who has eaten it?

Conversation Starters

1. A and his friend B, who are parents, discuss the things that they do for their children, related to their needs for food, clothing, education.

Unit 54

1. Basic Dialogue. Where have you been recently?

Sangai	
Habari za siku nyingi?	How have you been all this time? ('News of many days?')
Mirambo	
Njema.	Fine!
Sangai	
Ulikuwa wapi siku hizi zote?	Where have you been all these days?
Mirambo	
Nilikuwa huko Mbeya.	I was at Mbeya.
Sangai	
Ulikuwa ukifanya nini?	What were you doing?
Mirambo	
Nilikuwa nikifanya kazi ya ukarani.	I was doing clerical work.

Notes

A. *Huko* with names of places.

Tulikuwa nyumbani.	We were at home.
Tulikuwa huko Mbeya.	We were at Mbeya.

The locative suffix -*ni* is used with such words as *nyumba* 'house' and *soko* 'market'. With names of cities the word *huko* 'there' or *hapa* 'here' may be used. The literal translation of the second sentence is thus 'we were there [at] Mbeya'.

B. Verb phrases in which the first verb is -wa.

Nilikuwa nikifanya kazi.	I was working.
Atakuwa akifanya kazi.	He will be working.
Alilewa.	He got drunk.
Alikuwa amelewa.	He was drunk.
Amelewa.	He is drunk.
Ilikuwa imevunjika.	It was broken [when I saw it].

Verb phrases of this kind lend great flexibility to the expression of time and aspect with Swahili verbs. Basically, the action as a whole is located in past or future time by the use of -li- or -ta- as prefix with -wa. The shape of the action, whether continuing or completed at that time, is indicated by the use of -na-, -ki-, or of -me- as prefix for the second verb.

2.

A. Huko with names of cities.

Mbeya	Tulikuwa huko Mbeya.	We were at Mbeya.
Utete	Tulikuwa huko Utete.	We were at Utete.
soko	Tulikuwa sokoni.	We were at the market.
kanisa	Tulikuwa kanisani.	We were at the church.
Nairobi	Tulikuwa huko Nairobi.	We were in Nairobi.

B. -wa plus ki-tense.

kwenda	Nilikuwa nikienda nyumbani.	I was going home.
kula	Nilikuwa nikila chungwa.	I was eating an orange.
kujifunza	Nilikuwa nikijifunza Kiswahili.	I was learning Swahili.
kuondoka	Nilikuwa nikiondoka shuleni.	I was leaving school.
kuogelea	Nilikuwa nikiogelea.	I was swimming.

kusaidia	Nilikuwa nikiwasaidia wazazi wangu.	I was helping my parents.

3.

A. Lini?

wao	Waendelee kusoma m̀paka saa saba.	Let them go on reading till one o'clock.
	Walianza lini kusoma?	When did they begin reading?
yeye	Aendelee kusoma m̀paka saa saba.	Let him/her go on reading till one o'clock.
	Alianza lini kusoma?	When did he/she begin reading?
wao	Waendelee kuogelea m̀paka saa saba.	Let them go on swimming till one o'clock.
	Walianza lini kuogelea?	When did they begin swimming?
yeye	Aendelee kuogelea m̀paka saa saba.	Let him/her go on swimming till one o'clock.
	Alianza lini kuogelea?	When did he/she begin swimming?
wao	Waendelee kutusaidia m̀paka saa saba.	Let them go on helping us till one o'clock.
	Walianza lini kutusaidia?	When did they begin helping us?
yeye	Aendelee kutusaidia m̀paka saa saba.	Let him/her go on helping us till one o'clock.
	Alianza lini kutusaidia?	When did he/she begin helping us?

B. -wa plus ki-tense: negative vs. affirmative.

wewe	Ulikuwa ukisoma?	Were you (sg.) reading?
	Hapana. Sikuwa nikisoma, nilikuwa nikiandika.	No, I was not reading, I was writing.
ninyi	M̀likuwa m̀kisoma?	Were you (pl.) reading?
	Hapana. Hatukuwa tukisoma, tulikuwa tukiandika.	No, we were not reading, we were writing.

karani	Karani alikuwa akisoma? Hapana. Hakuwa akisoma, alikuwa akiandika.	Was the clerk reading? No, he was not reading, he was writing.

C.

wazungu	Wazungu hao walikuwa wakinywa chai? Hawakuwa wakinywa chai. Walikuwa wakinywa pombe.	Were those Europeans having tea? They were not having tea, they were drinking beer.
m̀zungu	M̀zungu huyo alikuwa akinywa chai? Hakuwa akinywa chai. Alikuwa akinywa pombe.	Was that European having tea? He was not having tea, he was drinking beer.
wakulima	Wakulima hao walikuwa wakinywa chai? Hawakuwa wakinywa chai. Walikuwa wakinywa pombe.	Were those farmers having some tea? They were not having some tea, they were drinking beer.
ninyi	M̀likuwa m̀kinywa chai? Hatukuwa tukinywa chai. Tulikuwa tukinywa pombe.	Were you having some tea? We were not having some tea, we were drinking beer.

Unit 55

1. Basic Dialogue. How's the family?

Hasani

Habari gani za watoto wako?	How are your children?

Adija

Hawajambo.	They're all right.

Hasani

kweli	true
Kweli, una watoto wangapi sasa?	Really, how many children do you have now?

Adija

Nina watoto watatu.	I have three.

Hasani

kiume (VI)	the male sort
kike (VI)	the female sort
Watoto hao ni wa kiume au wa kike?	Are they boys or girls?

Adija

mwanam̀ke (pl. wanawake)	woman
mwanamume (pl. wanaume)	man
M̀moja ni mwanam̀ke na wawili ni wanaume.	One is a girl and two are boys.

Hasani

umri (U)	age
M̀toto wako m̀kubwa ana umri gani?	What is the age of your eldest? ('...your big [one]')

Adija

Ana miaka kumi na mitatu sasa.	Thirteen.

Notes

A. Numerals which take concordial prefixes.

Ana miaka mitano.	He is five years old.
Ana miaka sita.	He is six years old.

The numerals from 1 - 5, and also 8, take concordial prefixes. None of the other numerals do so.

B. Stating the ages of persons.

Note that the way of stating ages, as in the above examples, is literally 'he has (five) years'.

2.

A. Numbers and ages.

5	M̀toto wangu m̀kubwa ana miaka mitano sasa.	My eldest child is five years old now.
6	M̀toto wangu m̀kubwa ana miaka sita sasa.	My eldest child is six years old now.
7	M̀toto wangu m̀kubwa ana miaka saba sasa.	My eldest child is seven years old now.
8	M̀toto wangu m̀kubwa ana miaka minane sasa.	My eldest child is eight years old now.
9	M̀toto wangu m̀kubwa ana miaka tisa sasa.	My eldest child is nine years old now.
10	M̀toto wangu m̀kubwa ana miaka kumi sasa.	My eldest child is ten years old now.
11	M̀toto wangu m̀kubwa ana miaka kumi na m̀moja sasa.	My eldest child is eleven years old now.

12	M̀toto wangu m̀kubwa ana miaka kumi na miwili sasa.	My eldest child is twelve years old now.

13 14 15 16 17 18 19

3.

A. The double plurals; subjunctive.

↓	Wanaume waende shuleni; wanawake wakae nyumbani.	The men are to go to school, the women are to stay home.
soko	Wanaume wakae nyumbani; wanawake waende sokoni.	The men are to stay home, the women are to go to the market.
kanisa	Wanaume wakae sokoni; wanawake waende kanisani.	The men are to stay at the market, the women are to go to church.
boma	Wanaume wakae kanisani; wanawake waende bomani.	The men are to stay at church, the women are to go to the District Office.
shule	Wanaume wakae bomani; wanawake waende shuleni.	The men are to stay at the District Office, the women are to go to school.

B. Double singular vs. double plural.

mwanam̀ke	Kuna mwanam̀ke m̀moja nyumbani. Kuna wanawake wengi shuleni.	There is one woman at home. There are many women at school.
mwanamume	Kuna mwanamume m̀moja nyumbani. Kuna wanaume wengi shuleni.	There is one man at home. There are many men at school.
m̀kulima	Kuna m̀kulima m̀moja nyumbani. Kuna wakulima wengi shuleni.	There is one farmer at home. There are many farmers at school.
m̀toto	Kuna m̀toto m̀moja nyumbani. Kuna watoto wengi shuleni.	There is one child at home. There are many children at school.
karani	Kuna karani m̀moja nyumbani. Kuna makarani wengi shuleni.	There is one clerk at home. There are many clerks at school.

Conversation Starters

1. A and his friend B, who are parents, exchange information about the ages of their respective children, the grades that the children are in at school, and their favorite subjects.

Unit 56

1. Basic Dialogue. When are you coming to see us?

Mirambo

-am̀kia	to greet, visit
Utakuja lini kutuam̀kia?	When are you coming to visit us?

Magese

nafasi (N)	opportunity
Jumatano	Wednesday
pamoja na	together with
m̀ke (WA)	wife
Nikipata nafasi, nitakuja siku ya Jumatano pamoja na m̀ke wangu na watoto.	If I get a chance, I'll come on Wednesday along with my wife and children.

Mirambo

baada (N)	after
livu (N)	leave time
Baada ya livu yako, utakwenda wapi?	Where are you going when your leave is over?

Magese

labda	perhaps
-rudi	to return
hakika (N)	certainty
Labda nitarudi tena Mbeya, lakini sina hakika.	I may go back to Mbeya again, but I'm not sure.

Notes

A. The days of the week.

Jumamosi	Saturday
Jumapili	Sunday
Jumatatu	Monday
Jumaǹne	Tuesday
Jumatano	Wednesday
Alhamisi	Thursday
Ijumaa	Friday

Given above are the days of the week in Swahili. When naming them in series it is customary to begin with Jumamosi. The terminations -*mosi*, -*pili*, etc. are related to forms meaning respectively 'one' and 'two. Saturday is thus 'day-one', and Tuesday is 'day-four'.

B. The noun *baada*.

The noun *baada*, like *juu*, does not serve as subject or object of a verb, nor occur in the plural.

2.

A. -*am̀kia*.

wazazi	Umekuja hapa kuwaam̀kia wazazi wako?	Have you come here to visit your parents?
rafiki	Umekuja hapa kumwam̀kia rafiki yako?	Have you come here to visit your friend?
jamaa	Umekuja hapa kumwam̀kia jamaa yako?	Have you come here to visit your companion?
baba	Umekuja hapa kumwam̀kia baba yako?	Have you come here to visit your father?
ndugu	Umekuja hapa kumwam̀kia ndugu yako?	Have you come here to visit your brother?

B. -pata nafasi.

kusoma	Sikupata nafasi ya kusoma darasa la saba.	I did not have the opportunity of studying the seventh grade.
kusema	Sikupata nafasi ya kusema na Mwandishi M̊kuu.	I did not have the opportunity of speaking to the General Secretary.
kuendelea	Sikupata nafasi ya kuendelea na masomo.	I did not have the opportunity of continuing with [my] studies.
kujifunza	Sikupata nafasi ya kujifunza hesabu.	I did not have the opportunity of learning arithmetic.
kuona	Sikupata nafasi ya kuona michezo ya farasi.	I did not have the opportunity of watching the horse races.

C. pamoja na

m̊ke	Nilikwenda Mbeya pamoja na m̊ke wangu.	I went to Mbeya together with my wife.
m̊toto	Nilikwenda Mbeya pamoja na m̊toto wangu m̊kubwa.	I went to Mbeya together with my eldest child.
Mwandishi M̊kuu	Nilikwenda Mbeya pamoja na Mwandishi M̊kuu.	I went to Mbeya together with the General Secretary.
rafiki	Nilikwenda Mbeya pamoja na rafiki yangu.	I went to Mbeya together with my friend.
wapagazi	Nilikwenda Mbeya pamoja na wapagazi wengine.	I went to Mbeya together with some porters.

D. 'Future progressive.' -ta- plus -ki.-

mimi	Baada ya mwaka huu, nitakuwa nikiishi Kenya.	After this year I shall be living in Kenya.
sisi	Baada ya mwaka huu, tutakuwa tukiishi Kenya.	After this year we will be living in Kenya.
yeye	Baada ya mwaka huu, atakuwa akiishi Kenya.	After this year he will be living in Kenya.

wao	Baada ya mwaka huu, watakuwa wakiishi Kenya.	After this year they will be living in Kenya.
wewe?	Baada ya mwaka huu, utakuwa ukiishi Kenya?	After this year will you (sg.) be living in Kenya?
ninyi?	Baada ya mwaka huu, m̀takuwa m̀kiishi Kenya?	After this year will you (pl.) be living in Kenya?

3.

A. Me-tense, affirmative vs. negative.

kurudi	Daudi amerudi nyumbani?	Has Daudi gone back home?
	Hapana, hajarudi bado.	No, he hasn't gone back yet.
kwanza	Daudi ameanza kusoma?	Has Daudi begun reading?
	Hapana, hajaanza bado.	No, he hasn't begun yet.
kumaliza	Daudi amemaliza kusoma?	Has Daudi finished reading?
	Hapana, hajamaliza bado.	No, he hasn't finished yet.
kula	Daudi amekula maharagwe?	Has Daudi eaten beans?
	Hapana, hajala bado.	No, he hasn't eaten yet.
kwisha	Chumvi imekwisha?	Is the salt all gone?
	Hapana, haijaisha bado.	No, it isn't all gone yet.

B. Ta-tense, affirmative vs. negative.

wewe	Utapata nafasi ya kutuam̀kia?	Will you have a chance to come to see us?
	Hapana. Sitapata nafasi.	No, I will not have a chance.
ninyi	M̀tapata nafasi ya kutuam̀kia?	Will you (pl.) have a chance to come to see us?
	Hapana. Hatutapata nafasi.	No, we will not have a chance.
wewe	Utaendelea katika masomo?	Will you continue with your studies?
	Hapana. Sitaendelea.	No, I will not continue.

ninyi	Mtaendelea katika masomo?	Will you (pl.) continue with your studies?
	Hapana, hatutaendelea.	No, we will not continue.
wewe	Utalipa vitu hivyo?	Will you pay for those things?
	Hapana, sitalipa. (or: Sitavilipa)	No, I will not pay for them.
ninyi	M̀talipa vitu hivyo?	Will you (pl.) pay for those things?
	Hapana, hatutalipa.	No, we will not pay for them.

Unit 57

1. Basic Dialogue. Where will you go after your leave?

Mirambo

-rudishwa	to be caused to return
Unadhani utarudishwa tena hapa?	Do you think you will be sent back here?

Magese

maana	meaning, significance; because
-ahidi	to promise
kwamba	that ('saying')
-hama	to move from one place to another
Sidhani, maana nimekwisha ahidiwa kwamba nitahamishwa.	I don't think so, because I've already been promised that I'll be moved.

Mirambo

ungependa	you would like
Unadhani ungependa kurudi hapa?	Do you think you would like to return here?

Magese

Ndiyo. Ningefurahi sana.	Yes, I would be very happy.

Mirambo

-kosa	to lack, err
Asante sana. Na tafadhali usikose kuja siku hiyo ya Jumatano!	Thanks very much. And please don't fail to come on [that] Wednesday [that we talked about].

Notes

A. Statements in indirect discourse.

Unadhani kwamba utarudishwa? Unadhani kuwa utarudishwa? Unadhani utarudishwa?	Do you think you will be returned?

These three sentences are freely interchangeable with one another. That is, a statement in indirect discourse may follow the preceding verb directly, or it may be introduced by *kuwa* or *kwamba*.

2.

A. -*hama*.

Mbeya	Mwaka jana tulihama (kutoka) Mbeya.	We moved from Mbeya last year.
kaskazini	Mwaka jana tulihama (kutoka) kaskazini.	We moved from the north last year.
kusini	Mwaka jana tulihama (kutoka) kusini.	We moved from the south last year.
mashariki	Mwaka jana tulihama (kutoka) mashariki.	We moved from the east last year.
magharibi	Mwaka jana tulihama (kutoka) magharibi.	We moved from the west last year.

B. -*hamisha*.

Tanga	Serikali ilituhamisha m̊paka Tanga.	The government moved us to Tanga.
m̊ji m̊pya	Serikali ilituhamisha m̊paka m̊ji m̊pya.	The government moved us to a new town.
kijiji kidogo	Serikali ilituhamisha m̊paka kijiji kidogo.	The government moved us to a small village.

jimbo jipya	Serikali ilituhamisha m̀paka jimbo jipya.	The government moved us to a new district.

C. -kosa plus infinitive.

kuja	M̀sikose kuja siku ya Jamatano.	Don't fail to come on Wednesday.
kuam̀kia	M̀sikose kuwaam̀kia wazazi wenu.	Don't fail to welcome your parents.
kusoma	M̀sikose kusoma barua hii.	Don't fail to read this letter.
kurudisha	M̀sikose kurudisha visahani vyote.	Don't fail to return all the saucers.
kuendelea	M̀sikose kuendelea katika kazi yenu.	Don't fail to continue with your work.

D. -kosa plus noun.

mvua	Mwaka huu tumekosa mvua.	We have been short of rain this year.
matunda	Mwaka huu tumekosa matunda.	We have been short of fruit this year.
nazi	Mwaka huu tumekosa nazi.	We have been short of coconuts this year.
mboga	Mwaka huu tumekosa mboga.	We have been short of vegetables this year.

3.

A. Adjective vs. related causative stem.

chakula	Chakula ki (or: ni) tayari? Hapana. Nitakitayarisha sasa hivi.	Is the food ready? No, I will prepare it right away.
nguo	Nguo i (or: ni) tayari? Hapana. Nitaitayarisha sasa hivi.	Is the dress ready? No, I will get it ready right away.

kahawa	Kahawa i (or: ni) tayari?	Is the coffee ready?
	Hapana. Nitaitayarisha sasa hivi.	No, I will get it ready right away.
uji	Uji u (or: ni) tayari?	Is the gruel ready?
	Hapana. Nitautayarisha sasa hivi.	No, I will get it ready right away.
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe yu (or: ni) tayari?	Is the cow ready?
	Hapana. Nitamtayarisha sasa hivi.	No, I will get it ready right away.

B.

vyombo	Vyombo vyote ni safi?	Are all the dishes clean?
	Hapana. Nitavisafisha sasa.	No, I will clean them now.
vikombe	Vikombe vyote ni safi?	Are all the cups clean?
	Hapana. Nitavisafisha sasa.	No, I will clean them now.

sahani bilauri taa

C. Causative *vs.* causative plus passive.

vyombo	Rudisha vyombo nyumbani sasa.	Return the utensils to the house now.
	Vimekwisha rudishwa tayari.	They have been returned already.
	Nani amevirudisha?	Who returned them?
vitunguu	Rudisha vitunguu nyumbani sasa.	Return the onions to the house now.
	Vimekwisha rudishwa tayari.	They have been returned already.
	Nani amevirudisha?	Who has returned them?

njugu maharagwe muhogo

Unit 58

1. Basic Dialogue. Why didn't you come to see us?

Mirambo

mbona?	why?
Mbona hukuja siku ile ya Jumatano?	Why didn't you come that Wednesday?

Magese

-sikitika	to be sorry
homa (N)	fever
Ah! Nasikitika sana. M̀ke wangu alipata homa.	Oh, I'm very sorry. My wife got a fever.

Mirambo

Homa gani?	What kind of fever?

Magese

Sijui kwa hakika, lakini nadhani ni malaria.	I'm not sure, but I think it is malaria.

Mirambo

Ulim̀peleka hospitali?	Did you take her to the hospital?

Magese

kidonge (VI)	tablet, pills
-piga	to hit
sindano (N)	needle
-pigwa sindano	to get an injection
Ndiyo. Alipata dawa ya vidonge, na pia alipigwa sindano.	Yes, she got some pills and also was given a shot.

Notes

A. Concordial agreement involving numeral phrases.

mananasi kumi na mawili	twelve pineapples
watoto kumi na wawili	twelve children

In numeral phrases which end with the numbers 1 - 5, or 8, the word for 1 - 5 or 8 must agree concordially with the noun to which the whole phrase refers. The first numeral in the phrase (kumi 'ten' in these examples) takes no concordial prefixes.

2.

A. Concord: Nouns with number over ten.

ng'ombe	Bwana Sangai ana ng'ombe kumi na wawili.	Mr. Sangai has twelve cows.
watoto	Bwana Sangai ana watoto kumi na wawili.	Mr. Sangai has twelve children.
mikate	Bwana Sangai ana mikate kumi na miwili.	Mr. Sangai has twelve loaves.
nazi	Bwana Sangai ana nazi kumi na mbili.	Mr. Sangai has twelve coconuts.
mananasi	Bwana Sangai ana mananasi kumi na mawili.	Mr. Sangai has twelve pineapples.

B.

vikombe	Mkewe ana vikombe kumi na vinne.	His wife has fourteen cups.
sahani	M̀kewe ana sahani kumi na ǹne.	His wife has fourteen plates.
nguo	M̀kewe ana nguo kumi na ǹne.	His wife has fourteen dresses.
samaki	M̀kewe ana samaki kumi na ǹne. (or:...wanne.)	His wife has fourteen fish.

sindano	M̀kewe ana sindano kumi na ǹne.	His wife has fourteen needles.
rafiki	M̀kewe ana rafiki kumi na waǹne.	His wife has fourteen friends.
vidonge	M̀kewe ana vidonge kumi na vinne.	His wife has fourteen pills.

3. Devise short conversations giving ten different reasons why Mirambo didn't go to see Sangai on Wednesday.

Unit 59

1. Basic Dialogue. Is your wife feeling better?

Mirambo

ulipoondoka	when you left
hali (N)	condition
nam̃na, námna (N)	kind, sort
Ulipoondoka leo, hali yake ilikuwa nam̃na gani?	When you left today, what was her condition like?

Magese

-onekana	to seem
Leo anaonekana hajambo kidogo.	Today she seems to be a little better. ('Today she seems she has no trouble a little.')

Mirambo

-ambukiza	to infect
ugonjwa (U)	illness
Unadhani ameambukizwa ugonjwa huo huko Mbeya au hapa?	Do you think that she caught the disease there in Mbeya, or here?

Magese

m̃bu (N-anim.)	mosquitoes
Nadhani ni hapa, kwa sababu hakuna m̃bu wengi huko Mbeya.	I think it was here, because there aren't many mosquitoes there in Mbeya.

Notes

A. *-po-* as an equivalent for 'when.'

uliondoka	you left
ulipoondoka	when you left
utamwona	you will see him
utapomwona utakapomwona	when you see him

The relative prefix *-po-* is commonly used as an equivalent for the 'when' of an English adverbial clause. It stands between the tense prefix and the object prefix. The form with *-takapo-* is considered more standard than the form with *-tapo-*, but both are widely used.

2.

A. *Huko* with locative.

vitunguu	Hakuna vitunguu huko sokoni.	There are no onions in the market.
maharagwe	Hakuna maharagwe huko sokoni.	There are no beans in the market.

pilipili samaki nazi

B. One use of *namna*.

ugonjwa	Hali ya ugonjwa wake ilikuwa nam̀na gani?	What was the condition of his sickness?
homa	Hali ya homa yake ilikuwa nam̀na gani?	What was the condition of his fever?

m̀guu watoto motokaa kazi jamaa

3.

A. Concord; *-onekana*.

machungwa	Hali ya machungwa haya ni nam̀na gani?	What is the condition of these oranges?
-bichi	Yanaonekana mabichi sana.	They look very unripe.

ng'ombe	Hali ya ng'ombe hawa ni nam̃na gani?	What is the condition of these cows?
~zuri	Wanaonekana wazuri sana.	They look very good.
nguruwe	Hali ya nguruwe hawa ni nam̃na gani?	What is the condition of these pigs?
~baya	Wanaonekana wabaya sana.	They look very bad.
njugu	Hali ya njugu hizi ni nam̃na gani?	What is the condition of these nuts?
~bovu	Zinaonekana mbovu sana.	They look very spoiled.
mahindi	Hali ya mahindi haya ni nam̃na gani?	What is the condition of this maize.
~bichi	Yanaonekana mabichi sana.	It looks very unripe.
chakula	Hali ya chakula hiki ni nam̃na gani?	What is the condition of this food?
~zuri	Kinaonekana kizuri sana.	It looks very delicious.
vitunguu	Hali ya vitunguu hivi ni nam̃na gani?	What is the condition of these onions?
~baya	Vinaonekana vibaya sana.	They look very spoiled.

B. Verb forms with -po-.

kumaliza	Nilimaliza kazi.	I finished working.
	Nilipomaliza kazi, niliondoka nyumbani.	When I finished work, I left the house.
kuona	Niliona motakaa.	I saw a motor car.
	Nilipoona motakaa, niliondoka nyumbani.	When I saw the motor car, I left the house.
kusikia	Nilisikia gari la moshi.	I heard a train.
	Niliposikia gari la moshi, niliondoka nyumbani.	When I heard the train, I left the house.

kupata	Nilipata taa na mafuta.	I got a lamp and oil.
	Nilipopata taa na mafuta, niliondoka nyumbani.	When I got the lamp and oil, I left the house.

Unit 60

1. Basic Dialogue. The children have coughs.

Mutisya	
Watoto wako hawajambo?	Are your children all right?
Hamisi	
-kohoa	to cough
Hawajambo, lakini wanakohoakohoa.	They're all right, but they have light coughs.
Mutisya	
Umewapeleka hospitali?	Have you taken them to the hospital?
Hamisi	
-shughulika	to be busy
Bado sijawapeleka, kwa sababu ninashughulika na ugonjwa wa mama yao.	I haven't taken them yet because I'm kept buy ('I'm busied') with the illness of their mother.
Mutisya	
-faa	to be suitable
Je, huoni ingefaa kuwapeleka hospitali pamoja na mama yao?	But don't you think it would be a good idea to take them to the hospital along with their mother?
Hamisi	
Ndiyo, nadhani nitafanya hivyo.	Yes, I think I'll do so.
Mutisya	
-salimia	to convey regards to

-pa	to give
wape	give to them
~pole	kind, gentle
Usikose kufanya hayo, na unisalimie na kuwapa (or:...,uwape) pole.	Don't (fail) to do it, and convey my regards, and my condolences.

Notes

A. -faa with 'impersonal prefix.'

Itafaa kuwasaidia. Itafaa tuwasaidie.	It will be a good idea to help them.
Ingefaa kuwapeleka nyumbani.	It would be a good idea to take them home.

The verb -faa with subject prefix i- is followed by an infinitive, or by the subjunctive. The translation is usually 'it is/will be/would be suitable to...' or 'it is a good idea to...'. There is no noun subject 'implied' for the verbs in these sentences; the N-class prefix with -faa is said to be used 'impersonally.'

B. The phrase -pa pole.

Wape pole.	Condole with them.
Wamekuja kutupa pole.	They have come to condole with us.

2.

A. -faa plus infinitive.

kueleza	Itafaa kueleza mambo haya yote.	It will be a good thing to explain about all these affairs.
kuelewa	Itafaa kuelewa mambo haya yote.	It will be a good thing to understand all these affairs.
kula	Itafaa kula dawa hii yote.	It will be a good thing to take all this medicine.

kusafisha	Itafaa kusafisha vyombo hivi vyote.	It will be a good thing to clean all these utensils.
kuuza	Itafaa kuuza mboga hizi zote.	It will be a good thing to sell all these vegetables.

B. Pamoja na.

baba	Tulikwenda pwani pamoja na baba yetu.	We went to the beach together with our father.
ndugu	Tulikwenda pwani pamoja na ndugu yetu.	We went to the beach together with our brother.
rafiki	Tulikwenda pwani pamoja na rafiki yetu.	We went to the beach together with our friend.
m̀pishi	Tulikwenda pwani pamoja na m̀pishi wetu.	We went to the beach together with our cook.
wazazi	Tulikwenda pwani pamoja na wazazi wetu.	We went to the beach together with our parents.

C. -salimia; WA nouns vs. N-personal nouns.

wazazi	Tusalimie wazazi wako.	Give our regards to your parents.
baba	Tusalimie baba yako.	Give our regards to your father.
ndugu	Tusalimie ndugu yako.	Give our regards to your brother.
watoto	Tusalimie watoto wako.	Give our regards to your children.
rafiki	Tusalimie rafiki yako.	Give our regards to your friend.

3.

A. Me-tense: affirmative vs. negative.

kupeleka	Umewapeleka watoto hospitalini? Bado sijawapeleka.	Have you taken the children to the hospital? I haven't taken them yet.
kufuta	Umepangusa maji? (or: Umefuta maji?)	Have you wiped up the water?

	Bado sijapangusa. or: Sijafuta.	I haven't wiped it yet.
kutia	Umetia mafuta katika taa?	Have you put oil in the lamp?
	Bado sijayatia.	I haven't put it in yet.
kupatia	Umenipatia viberiti?	Have you gotten me some matches?
	Bado sijakupatia.	I haven't gotten you any yet.

B.

kusafisha	Ṁpishi amesafisha jiko?	Has the cook cleaned the kitchen?
	Bado hajasafisha.	He hasn't cleaned it yet.
kuwasha	Ṁpishi amewasha taa?	Has the cook lit the lamp?
	Bado hajawasha.	He hasn't lit it yet.
kununua	Ṁpishi amenunua mafuta mengine?	Has the cook bought any more oil?
	Bado hajanunua.	He hasn't bought any yet.
kupa	Ṁpishi amewapa watoto ṁkate?	Has the cook given the children some bread?
	Bado hajawapa.	He hasn't given them any yet.
kutayarisha	Ṁpishi ametayarisha chakula cha ṁchana?	Has the cook prepared food for the day? (or: the midday meal?).
	Bado hajatayarisha.	He hasn't prepared any yet.

Conversation Starters

1. A went to see C on Thursday. He tells B what C and the various members of C's household were doing when he got there.

2. A is debating whether to take his child to the hospital. He seeks advice from B.

READING SELECTION I

Dar es Salaam

Dar es Salaam ni m̀ji m̀kubwa kuliko yote ǹchini Tanganyika, pia ni m̀ji m̀kuu wa serikali. Kuna watu wa makabila mbalimbali, lakini wote husema Kiswahili. Lugha ya Kiswahili inasemwa na kila m̀tu hata Wazungu, Wahindi na Waarabu.

Upande wa mashariki ya Dar, kuna bahari. Bahari hii huitwa Bahari ya Hindi. Katika sehemu ya magharibi ya m̀ji kuna majumba maarufu ya shughuli mbalimbali, kama vile, shule, boma, hospitali, na mengineyo. Bwana Gavana ni m̀tu m̀kubwa na maarufu sana m̀jini. Jumba lake zuri liko karibu na pwani. Pia ofisi za idara za serikali ziko karibu na pwani.

Wakati wa m̀chana watu huwa wengi katika hoteli. Wengine huenda kula chakula, na wengine hupenda kunywa kinywaji tu kama soda au maji ya machungwa. Katika hoteli vyakula vingi huuzwa. Katikati ya m̀ji kuna maduka makubwa na madogo. Maduka haya yanauza vyakula, nguo, vyombo vya nyumbani, na vingine vya aina mbali mbali. Vingine vinauzwa ghali kuliko vingine, pia vingine vinauzwa rahisi.

Soko liko katikati ya m̀ji vile vile. Huko kunapatikana samaki wa baharini, machungwa ya Utete na Morogoro, vitunguu, pilipili na muhogo wa Bagamoyo. Unajua wakulima wa Bagamoyo hupanda sana muhogo, kwa hivyo hupenda kuuza mazao yao katika soko hili maarufu.

kuliko	'than'	kama vile	'for example'
mbalimbali	'various'	gavana (N-pers.)	'governor'
kila	'each'	kama	'as'
bahari (N)	'sea, ocean'	katikati (N)	'in the midst'
hata	'even'	duka (MA)	'shop'
jumba (MA)	'building'	aina (N)	'kind'
maarufu	'famous'	ghali	'expensive'
shughuli (N)	'business'	rahisi	'cheap, easy'
		vile vile	'also'

Questions and Answers over Reading Selection

Questions	Sample Answers
1. Dar es Salaam ni m̀ji m̀kubwa?	Ndiyo, ni m̀kubwa kuliko miji yote ǹchini.
2. M̀ji m̀kuu wa serikali ya Tanganyika ni m̀ji gani?	Ni Dar es Salaam.
3. Katika m̀ji wa Dar es Salaam, kuna kabila moja tu?	Hapana, kuna makabila mengi mbalimbali.
4. Watu wote wa Dar es Salaam husema lugha gani?	Husema zaidi Kiswahili.
5. Kiswahili kinasemwa na watu wengi wa Dar es Salaam?	Ndiyo. Lugha hii inasemwa na kila m̀tu.
6. Kuna nini upande wa mashariki wa Dar?	Kuna bahari.
7. Bahari hii huitwaje?	Bahari hii huitwa Bahari ya Hindi.
8. Kuna nini katika sehemu ya magharibi ya m̀ji?	Kuna majumba mbalimbali.
9. Jumba la Bwana Gavana liko wapi?	Liko karibu ya pwani.
10. M̀tu gani ni m̀kubwa m̀jini?	Bwana Gavana.
11. Kuna majumba gani mengine karibu ya pwani?	Kuna ofisi za idara za serikali.
12. Watu huwa wachache katika hoteli?	Hapana, huwa wengi.
13. Watu wote huenda hoteli kula chakula?	Hapana, wengine huenda kunywa kinywaji tu.
14. Vyakula huuzwa katika hoteli?	Ndiyo, bwana. Vyakula vingi huuzwa katika hoteli.

15. Kuna maduka makubwa katikati ya m̀ji?	Ndiyo. Kuna makubwa na madogo pia.
16. Maduka haya yanauza nini?	Mengine yanauza nguo na vyombo vya nyumbani, na mengine yanauza vyakula.
17. Vingine vinauzwa ghali?	Ndiyo, lakini pia vingine ni rahisi.
18. Soko liko karibu ya pwani?	La, liko katikati ya m̀ji.

Review Sentences, Units 1 - 60.

1. Afadhali uondoke sasa usilikose gari la moshi.	You'd better leave now so as not to miss the train.
2. Ijapokuwa sikuja jana nilizipata habari.	Although I didn't come yesterday, I got the news.
3. Unataka kupumzika sasa?	Do you want to rest now?
4. Una nguo za aina ngapi?	How many kinds of clothes do you have?
5. Ukija leo jioni tutakwenda kuwatazama jamaa zetu.	If you come this evening, we will go visit our relatives.
6. Unaweza kusoma na kuandika?	Can you read and write?
7. Nikipata pesa za kutosha nitamtembelea ndugu yangu.	If I get enough money, I will visit my brother.
8. Watapewa chakula na mama yao.	They will be given food by their mother.
9. Usijiumize kwa kisu hicho.	Don't hurt yourself with that knife.
10. Juma, iwashe taa sasa.	Juma, light the lamp now.
11. Nina tamaa ya kunywa pombe kidogo.	I feel like drinking a little beer.
12. Ndugu yangu, usikate tamaa, Mungu atakusaidia.	Don't give up, brother, God will help you.
13. Sijui kwa hakika, lakini nadhani atakuja leo jioni.	I don't know for sure, but I think he will come this evening.
14. Wakipata nafasi, watakuja kesho?	If they get a chance, will they come tomorrow?
15. Ningefurahi sana kama wangekuja hapa.	I would be very glad if you would come here.
16. Itafaa sana umpe pesa zake.	It would be a very good idea for you to give him his money.

17.	Itanilazimu kwenda Dodoma kumwona rafiki yangu.	I will have to go to Dodoma to see my friend.
18.	Mji wa Nairobi uko kati ya Moshi na Kisumu.	The city of Nairobi is between Moshi and Kisumu.
19.	Vikombe vyote vimevunjika.	All the cups are broken.
20.	Vimevunjwa na mtoto.	They were broken by a child.
21.	Ameangusha vikombe chini.	He has dropped the cups.
22.	Je, sahani pia zimevunjika?	Were the plates broken too?
23.	Nipatie vyombo vya kupakulia.	Get me the dishes.
24.	Mtoto hataki maziwa hata kidogo.	The child doesn't want any milk at all.
25.	Baada ya kufika walisoma vitabu.	After arriving, they read some books.
26.	Nguo zake zilikuwa chafu sana.	His clothes were very dirty.
27.	Tafadhali unisalimie Hasani ukimwona.	Please give my regards to Hasani if you see him.
28.	Nasikitika kwa sababu ya hayo yametokea.	I am sorry because of what has happened.
29.	Akirudisha vitabu mpe barua hii.	When he returns the books, give him this letter.
30.	Nisaidie kwa baiskeli yako, tafadhali.	Please lend me your bicycle.
31.	Kwa heri, nitarudi baada ya siku chache.	Good bye, I'll be back in a few days.
32.	Miguu yangu yauma sana.	My feet hurt very much.
33.	Nitakwenda kumwona bwana daktari.	I'll go see the doctor.
34.	Watoto wangu wawili wanakohoakohoa.	My two children have light coughs.
35.	Wapishi hao walikuwa wakila nyama.	Those cooks were eating meat.

36. Pengine zitarudishwa nyumbani kesho.	Maybe they (N plu.) will be returned to the house tomorrow.
37. Leo asubuhi nitatengeneza motakaa yangu.	This morning I will repair my car.
38. Habari za nyumbani, wote hawajambo?	How's everything at home? Is everyone all right?
39. Hawajambo, asante.	They're fine, thank you.
40. Mume wangu ameambukizwa ugonjwa wa malaria.	My husband has contracted malaria.

Unit 61

1. Basic Dialogue. I don't feel too well.

Ahamed

mwalimu (WA)	teacher
Tafadhali, mwalimu, naumwa. (or:..., mimi ni m̊gonjwa.)	Please, teacher, I'm ill.

Magese

Wewe m̊gonjwa? Waumwa nini?	Are you ill? What are you suffering from?

Ahamed

shingo (MA)	neck
jino (MA: plu. meno)	tooth
Kichwa, shingo na meno.	[My] head, neck and teeth.

Magese

mafua (or: kamasi)	cold in the head
Pengine una mafua?	Maybe you have a cold?

Ahamed

pua (N)	nose
sawa	like, equal, level
Hapana, kwa sababu ninapumua sawa sawa.	No, because I'm breathing all right.

Magese

tabibu (MA-pers) (or: daktari, m̊ganga)	doctor
Jitayarishe, tutakwenda kwa tabibu.	Get yourself ready; we will go to the doctor.

2.

A. WA nouns vs. N-personal nouns.

watoto	Watoto wetu wengi waumwa meno.	Many of our children have toothaches.
walimu	Walimu wetu wengi waumwa meno.	Many of our teachers have toothaches.
ndugu	Ndugu zetu wengi waumwa meno.	Many of our brothers have toothaches.
rafiki	Rafiki zetu wengi waumwa meno.	Many of our friends have toothaches.

3.

A. *-a* plus infinitive; personal object prefixes.

watoto	Hakuna m̊tu wa kuwafunza watoto hesabu. Wafunze hesabu.	There is no one to teach the children arithmetic. Teach them arithmetic.
m̊toto	Hakuna m̊tu wa kum̊funza m̊toto hesabu. M̊funze hesabu.	There is no one to teach the child arithmetic. Teach him arithmetic.
mimi	Hakuna m̊tu wa kunifunza hesabu. Nifunze hesabu.	There is no one to teach me arithmetic. Teach me arithmetic.

B. Concord: Noun in first sentence, object prefix in second; adjective *vs.* related causative verb.

nguo	Nguo si tayari. Nitazitayarisha.	The dresses aren't ready. I will get them ready.
mimea	Mimea si tayari. Nitaitayarisha.	The plants aren't ready. I will get them ready.
mayai	Mayai si tayari. Nitayatayarisha.	The eggs aren't ready. I will get them ready.

uji	Uji si tayari.	The porridge isn't ready.
	Nitautayarisha.	I will get it ready.
mimi	Mimi si tayari.	I am not ready.
	Nitajitayarisha.	I will get ready.

C. Object prefixes, including the reflexive -ji-.

watoto	Watoto ni wagonjwa.	The children are sick.
	Baba hawezi kuwasaidia.	Father can't help them.
Hamisi	Hamisi ni m̂gonjwa.	Hamisi is sick.
	Baba hawezi kum̂saidia.	Father can't help him.
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe ni m̂gonjwa.	The cow is sick.
	Baba hawezi kum̂saidia.	Father can't help it.
baba	Baba ni m̂gonjwa.	Father is sick.
	Hawezi kujisaidia.	He can't help himself.

D. Verb phrases with -wa.

ninyi	M̂likuwa m̂kiumwa shingo?	Did you have stiff necks?
	Hapana, hatukuwa tukiumwa shingo.	No, we didn't have stiff necks.
	Tulikuwa tukiumwa kichwa.	We had headaches.
wewe	Ulikuwa ukiumwa shingo?	Did you have a stiff neck?
	Hapana, sikuwa nikiumwa shingo.	No, I didn't have a stiff neck.
	Nilikuwa nikiumwa kichwa.	I had a headache.

rafiki yako   rafiki zako

Unit 62

1. Basic Dialogue. You've hurt your finger!

Sangai

kidole (VI)	finger
damu (N)	blood
Kidole chako chatoka damu!	There is blood coming from your finger! ('your finger is coming-from blood')
Je uliumia?	Are you hurt?

Mutisya

-jeruhi	to bruise, wound
m̀lango (MI)	door
Ndiyo, bwana, nilijeruhiwa na m̀lango.	Yes, I was bruised by a door.

Sangai

-vimba	swell
Hata kimevimba sana.	It is even swollen quite a bit.

Mutisya

usaha (U)	pus
Ndiyo, jana kilitoka usaha kidogo.	Yes, yesterday a little pus came out [of it] ('out of it a little').

Sangai

m̀shipa (MI)	vein, artery (or any thin, elongated tissue, such as a nerve or tendon)
Natumaini mishipa salama.	I hope the blood vessels are all right.

Mutisya

-pona	to recover from illness or injury
Kitapona tu, asante.	Oh, it will get better, thanks.

Notes

A. Grammatical subject vs. logical subject.

Kidole chake kilitoka damu. Damu ilitoka kidoleni mwake.	Some blood came out of his finger.

These two sentences are synonymous. Note that the verb stem remains the same. The subject prefix agrees with whichever noun precedes it.

2.

A. MI-class with numbers 2 - 12.

2	Jumba hilo lina milango miwili.	That large building has two doors.
3	Jumba hilo lina milango mitatu.	That large building has three doors.

4 5 6 7 8 9 10

11	Jumba hilo lina milango kumi na moja.	That large building has eleven doors.
12	Jumba hilo lina milango kumi na miwili.	That large building has twelve doors.

B. VI-class with numbers 1 - 10.

1	Nimejeruhiwa kidole kimoja.	I am hurt on one finger.
2	Nimejeruhiwa vidole viwili.	I am hurt on two fingers.
4	Nimejeruhiwa vidole vinne.	I am hurt on four fingers.
5	Nimejeruhiwa vidole vitano.	I am hurt on five fingers.
7	Nimejeruhiwa vidole saba.	I am hurt on seven fingers.

9	Nimejeruhiwa vidole tisa.	I am hurt on nine fingers.
10	Nimejeruhiwa vidole kumi.	I am hurt on ten fingers.

C. Grammatical subject which is different from logical subject.

↓	Kidole chake kinatoka usaha kidogo.	His finger is discharging a little pus.
damu	Kidole chake kinatoka damu kidogo.	His finger is bleeding a little.
mishipa	Mishipa yake inatoka damu kidogo.	His blood vessels are bleeding a little.
m̀guu	M̀guu wake unatoka damu kidogo.	His foot is bleeding a little.
pua	Pua yake inatoka damu kidogo.	His nose is bleeding a little.

3.

A. Interchange of grammatical and logical subjects with -toka.

kidole	Kidole chake kilitoka damu.	His finger bled.
	Damu ilitoka kidoleni mwake.	His finger bled.
m̀guu	M̀guu wake ulitoka damu.	His foot bled.
	Damu ilitoka m̀guuni mwake.	His foot bled.
pua	Pua yake ilitoka damu.	His nose bled.
	Damu ilitoka puani mwake.	His nose bled.
kichwa	Kichwa chake kilitoka damu.	His head bled.
	Damu ilitoka kichwani mwake.	His head bled.
shingo	Shingo lake lilitoka damu.	His neck bled.
	Damu ilitoka shingoni mwake.	His neck bled.

4. The members of A's family have been having all kinds of misfortunes recently. He tells B about them. B inquires about details and expresses sympathy.

Unit 63

1. Basic Dialogue. Late to class.

Ahamed

-chelewa	to be late
Nasikitika, nimechelewa.	I'm sorry. I'm late.

Magesa

neno	word
Si neno. Tumeanza sasa hivi.	No matter. We've just now begun.
-kaa kitako	to sit down
Tafadhali nenda ukakae kitako.	Please go sit down.
ukurasa (U) (plu. in N class)	page
Tazameni ukurasa wa kumi na mbili.	Look at page 12.

------ . ------

-ongea	to converse
-funika	to close
kitabu (VI)	book
Sasa funikeni vitabu vyenu tuongee.	Now close your books, and we will converse.

Notes

A. Plural imperative.

Zitayarishe sasa hivi!	Get them ready right now. (said to one person)
Zitayarisheni sasa hivi!	Get them ready right now. (said to more than one person)
Njoo nyumbani!	Come to the house. (one person)
Njooni nyumbani!	Come to the house. (more than one)

The plural imperative in Swahili ends with *-ni*. The preceding vowel is *-e* for those verbs whose singular imperative ends in *-a*.

B. *Kitako*.

-kaa kitako is commonly used in Zanzibar and Tanganyika, but *kitako* is regarded as redundant and somewhat vulgar on the Kenya coast.

2.

A. *-chelewa* plus infinitive.

darasa	Kwa nini ulichelewa kuja darasani?	Why were you late [to come] to class?
kanisa	Kwa nini ulichelewa kuja kanisani?	Why were you late to come to church?

shule chakula

B. Negative imperative.

kurudi	Usichelewe kurudi nyumbani!	Don't be late in returning home.
kufanya	Usichelewe kufanya kazi yako.	Don't be late in doing your work.
kutayarisha	Usichelewe kutayarisha chakula.	Don't be late in preparing food.
kuwasha	Usichelewe kuwasha taa.	Don't be late in lighting the lamp.
kuletea	Usichelewe kutuletea kahawa.	Don't be late in bringing us coffee.
kuam̀kia	Usichelewe kuwaam̀kia wazee.	Don't be late in welcoming the old men.

C. N-class with numbers.

1	Kitabu hiki kina ukurasa mmoja tu.	This book has only one page.
2	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa mbili.	This book has two pages.
3	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa tatu.	This book has three pages.
11	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa kumi na moja.	This book has eleven pages.

12	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa kumi na mbili.	This book has twelve pages.
13	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa kumi na tatu.	This book has thirteen pages.
21	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa ishirini na moja.	This book has twenty-one pages.
22	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa ishirini na mbili.	This book has twenty-two pages.
23	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa ishirini na tatu.	This book has twenty-three pages.

3.

A. Negative -*ja*- tense *vs*. plural imperative.

kutayarisha	Bado ham̀jawatayarisha watoto? Watayarisheni sasa hivi!	Haven't you got the children ready yet? Get them ready right now.
kumaliza	Bado ham̀jamaliza kufanya kazi yenu? Malizeni sasa hivi!	Haven't you finished doing your work yet? Finish it right away.
kuenda	Bado ham̀jaenda nyumbani? Nendeni sasa hivi!	Haven't you gone home yet? Go right away.
kuja	Bado ham̀jaja hapa? Njooni sasa hivi!	Haven't you come here yet? Come right away.
kupa	Bado ham̀jawapa watoto vitabu? Wapeni sasa hivi!	Haven't you given the children books yet? Give [them to] them right away.
kuanza	Bado ham̀jaanza kujifunza? Anzeni sasa hivi!	Haven't you started learning yet? Start right away.

kujifunza	Bado hamjajifunza kusoma?	Haven't you learned how to read yet?
	Jifunzeni sasa hivi!	Learn right away.

B. Imperatives: singular vs. plural.

kupata	Pata taa.	Get the lamp. (you sing.)
	Pateni taa.	Get the lamp. (you pl.)
kuleta	Lete maji.	Bring some water.
	Leteni maji.	Bring some water.
kutengeneza	Tengeneza kahawa.	Make some coffee.
	Tengenezeni kahawa.	Make some coffee.
kula	Kula ndizi hizi.	Eat these bananas.
	Kuleni ndizi hizi.	Eat these bananas.
kuenda	Nenda shuleni.	Go to school.
	Nendeni shuleni.	Go to school.
kunywa	Kunywa chai hii.	Drink this tea.
	Kunyweni chai hii.	Drink this tea.
kuona	Ona farasi.	Look at the horse.
	Oneni farasi.	Look at the horse.

C. Imperatives: affirmative *vs*. negative.

kuleta	Lete vitabu vingine.	Bring some of the books.
	Usivilete vyote.	Don't bring them all.
kuuza	Uza vitabu vingine.	Sell some books.
	Usiviuze vyote.	Don't sell them all.
kununua	Nunua vitabu vingine.	Buy some books.
	Usivinunue vyote.	Don't buy them all.
kusafisha	Safisha vitabu vingine.	Clean some of the books.
	Usivisafishe vyote.	Don't clean them all.
kusoma	Soma vitabu vingine.	Read some of the books.
	Usivisome vyote.	Don't read them all.

Unit 64

1. Basic Dialogue. Classroom Routine.

Magese

ubao (U)	blackboard
Tafadhali, Bwana Aramian, nenda ubaoni ukaandike maneno haya.	Mr. Aramian, please go to the blackboard and write these words.

Magese

Bwana Butler, tafadhali anza kusoma.	Mr. Butler, please begin to read.
Basi!	That's enough.
maana (MA)	meaning
Unajua maana ya neno 'alasiri'?	Do you know the meaning of the word 'alasiri'?

Magese

-funua	to open
Sasa tufunue vitabu tusome Somo la Tisa.	Now let's open [our] books and read Lesson Nine.
kosa (MA)	a mistake
M̀sifanye makosa m̀kisoma.	Don't make mistakes as you read! ('don't make mistakes you-reading')

Notes

A. The prefix *-ka-* with subjunctives.

Funua kitabu usome Somo la Nane.	Open [your] book and read Lesson Eight.

Nenda ubaoni ukaandike maneno haya. Go to the board and write these words.

In a command or request involving two verbs, the second is in the subjunctive. If the first verb involves going somewhere, the prefix -ka- is used after the subject prefix of the second verb.

2.

A. Word order with lini; -anza plus infinitive.

kusoma	Juma alianza lini kusoma?	When did Juma begin reading?
kusema	Juma alianza lini kusema?	When did Juma begin speaking?
kula	Juma alianza lini kula?	When did Juma begin eating?
kufanya	Juma alianza lini kufanya kazi?	When did Juma begin working?
kupanda	Juma alianza lini kupanda mahindi?	When did Juma begin raising corn?

B. Ka-tense with the second of two verbs.

kuandika	Nenda ubaoni ukaandike maneno haya.	Go to the board and write these words.
kusoma	Nenda ubaoni ukasome maneno haya.	Go to the board and read these words.
kueleza	Nenda ubaoni ukaeleze maana ya maneno haya.	Go to the board and explain the meaning of these words.
kusema	Nenda ubaoni ukaseme maneno haya.	Go to the board and speak ('pronounce') these words.

C.

vitabu	Nenda nyumbani ukalete vitabu vyako vyote.	Go home and bring all your books.
vitu	Nenda nyumbani ukalete vitu vyako vyote.	Go home and bring all your things.

nguo	Nenda nyumbani ukalete nguo zako zote.	Go home and bring all your clothes.
senti	Nenda nyumbani ukalete senti zako zote.	Go home and bring all your small change.
machungwa	Nenda nyumbani ukalete machungwa yako yote.	Go home and bring all your oranges.
masomo	Nenda nyumbani ukalete masomo yako yote.	Go home and bring all your lessons.
watoto	Nenda nyumbani **ukawalete** watoto wako wote.	Go home and bring all your children.
wagonjwa	Nenda nyumbani **ukawalete** wagonjwa wako wote.	Go home and bring all your sick persons.

D.

kutazama	Nendeni sokoni m̊katazame nazi.	Go to the market and see if there are any coconuts.
kununua	Nendeni sokoni m̊kanunue nazi.	Go to the market and buy coconuts.
kuleta	Nendeni sokoni m̊kalete nazi.	Go to the market and bring coconuts.
kutafuta	Nendeni sokoni m̊katafute nazi.	Go to the market and look for coconuts.

3.

A. Subjunctive without -ka- vs. subjunctive with -ka- after -enda.

kusaidia	Njoo um̊saidie mwalimu.	Come and help the teacher.
	Nenda ukam̊saidie mwalimu.	Go and help the teacher.
kuandika	Njoo ubaoni uandike maneno haya.	Come to the board and write these words.
	Nenda ubaoni ukaadike maneno haya.	Go to the board and write these words.

kahawa	Njoo jikoni utengeneze kahawa. Nenda jikoni ukatengeneze kahawa.	Come into the kitchen and make coffee. Go into the kitchen and make coffee.
kuogelea	Njoo pwani uogelee. Nenda pwani ukaogelee.	Come to the beach and swim. Go to the beach and swim.

B. Negative *ja*-tense *vs.* subjunctive.

kuondoka	Hawajaondoka shuleni. Sasa wafunike vitabu, waondoke shuleni.	They haven't yet left the school. Now let them close the books, and leave the school.
kusaidia	Hawajatusaidia. Sasa wafunike vitabu, watusaidie.	They haven't yet helped us. Now let them close the books, and help us.
kula	Hawajala chakula. Sasa wafunike vitabu, wale.	They haven't eaten food yet. Now let them close the books, and eat.
kuenda	Hawajaenda nyumbani. Sasa wafunike vitabu, waende.	They haven't gone home yet. Now let them close the books, and go.

Conversation Starters

1. Describe a typical class hour.

2. From this point on, all class sessions should be conducted entirely in Swahili. Add to the content of Units 1 - 64 whatever words and phrases are necessary to make this possible.

Unit 65

1. Basic Dialogue. A letter from a student abroad.

Asha

dada (N-pers)	sister
Dada yako anafanya kazi gani?	What work is your sister doing?

Maina

-shinda	to be first, win
m̀tihani (MI)	a school examination
Ulaya	Europe
Mwaka jana alishinda m̀tihani wa juu akaenda Ulaya kusoma.	Last year she passed the Higher Examination and went to Europe to study.

Asha

-safiri	to travel
Alisafirije?	How did she travel?

Maina

-ruka	to fly
ndege (N), ndege Ulaya	bird, airplane ('European bird')
Aliruka kwa ndege Ulaya.	She flew by plane.
juzi	day before yesterday
-tuma	to send
ya kwamba	that ...
chuo (VI)	school

Juzi alituma barua kwa mama akasema ya kwamba yuko katika Chuo cha London.	Recently she sent a letter to Mother and said that she is in the University of London.

Asha

Asante sana. Kwa heri.	Thanks very much. Good bye.

Notes

A. The prefix *-ka-* with indicatives.

Alituletea barua akasema...	He sent us a letter saying ('and said')...

The prefix *-ka-* which was discussed in Unit 64 is used also with indicative verb forms. Ashton states (p. 133) 'The prefix *-ka-* may occur in the Indicative Mood, also in the Subjunctive. Wherever it occurs, it expresses an action or state which follows another action. Therefore its time implication is consecutive to the time expressed in the preceding verb.'

B. *-tuma* and *-peleka*.

Juma alituma barua.	Juma sent a letter,

-tuma is often used in this way nowadays but is by some speakers considered incorrect. A more standard word in this context is *-peleka*. *-tuma*, strictly speaking, applies only to persons.

2.

A. *Kwa* plus modes of transportation.

ndege	Dada yangu alikwenda Dar es Salaam kwa ndege.	My sister went to Dar es Salaam by plane.
gari la moshi	Dada yangu alikwenda Dar es Salaam kwa gari la moshi.	My sister went to Dar es Salaam by train.

motokaa miguu

B. Indirect statements.

kuwa na	Alituletea barua akasema ya kwamba ana vitabu vingi.	She sent us a letter saying that she has many books.
kuhitaji	Alituletea barua akasema ya kwamba anahitaji vitabu vingi.	She sent us a letter saying that she needs many books.

kusoma kununua kupoteza

C. A-tense; -tumaini plus infinitive.

mimi	Natumaini kushinda m̂tihani wa juu na kwenda Ulaya.	I hope to pass the Higher Examination, and go to Europe.
sisi	Twatumaini kushinda m̂tihani wa juu na kuenda Ulaya.	We hope to pass the Higher Examination, and go to Europe.

Mariamu ndugu yangu ndugu zangu

D. halafu plus ka-tense.

kwenda	Mwaka jana nilishinda m̂tihani wa juu, halafu nikaenda Ulaya.	Last year I passed the Higher Examination, then I went to Europe.
kupata	Mwaka jana nilishinda m̂tihani wa juu, halafu nikapata kazi.	Last year I passed the Higher Examination, then I got a job.
kurudi	Mwaka jana nilishinda m̂tihani wa juu, halafu nikarudi nyumbani.	Last year I passed the Higher Examination, then I returned home.
kuendelea	Mwaka jana nilishinda m̂tihani wa juu, halafu nikaendelea kusoma.	Last year I passed the Higher Examination, then I continued studying.

3.

A. Kuliko

ndege	Unapenda kusafiri kwa ndege au kwa gari la moshi?	Do you like to travel by plane, or by train?
	Ninapenda kusafiri kwa ndege kuliko kwa gari la moshi.	I prefer traveling by plane to traveling by train.
michezo	Unapenda michezo au masomo?	Do you like playing, or studying?
	Ninapenda masomo kuliko michezo.	I prefer studying to playing.
ndizi	Unapenda ndizi mbichi au mbivu?	Do you like green bananas, or ripe ones?
	Ninapenda mbivu kuliko mbichi.	I prefer ripe to green ones.
nazi	Unapenda nazi, au mananasi?	Do you like coconuts, or pineapples?
	Ninapenda nazi kuliko mananasi.	I prefer coconuts to pineapples.

B. A-tense: affirmative vs. negative.

kusafiri	Wasafiri mara nyingi?	Do you travel often?
	Hapana, sisafiri mara nyingi, nasafiri mara chache tu.	No, I do not travel often, I travel only a little.
kuruka kwa ndege	Waruka kwa ndege mara nyingi?	Do you fly often?
	Hapana, siruki kwa ndege mara nyingi, naruka mara chache tu.	No, I do not fly often, I fly only a little.

kusoma	Wasoma mara nyingi? Hapana, sisomi mara nyingi, nasoma mara chache tu.	Do you read often? No, I do not read often, I read only a little.
kunung'unika	Wanung'unika mara nyingi? Hapana, sinung'uniki mara nyingi, nanung'unika mara chache tu.	Do you grumble often? No, I do not grumble often, I grumble only a little.

Unit 66

1. Basic Dialogue. My parents are going to night school.

Maina

Wazazi wako wanajua kusoma na kuandika?	Do your parents know how to read and write?

Juma

Ndiyo, wanajua kusoma kidogo tu.	Yes, they know how to read just a little.

Maina

Na kuandika je?	And what about writing?

Juma

-hudhuria	to attend
Wameanza kuhudhuria masomo ya jioni.	They've begun to attend night school.

Maina

Wanafunzwa masomo gani?	What subjects are they being taught?

Juma

-ambia	to tell
Waliniambia wanajifunza hesabu, na kuandika Kiswahili na Kiingereza.	They told me they are learning arithmetic, and to write Swahili and English.

Maina

aina	kind, sort
Hesabu za aina gani?	What kind of arithmetic?

Juma

-jum̀lisha	to add
-toa	to take away
Za kujum̀lisha na kutoa.	Addition and subtraction.

2.

A. Aina.

matunda	M̀meleta matunda ya aina gani?	What sort of fruit have you brought?
vitabu	M̀meleta vitabu vya aina gani?	What sort of books have you brought?

vyakula nguo nyama

B. -hudhuria.

masomo	Twapenda kuhudhuria masomo ya jioni.	We like to attend the evening classes.
shule	Twapenda kuhudhuria shuleni.	We like to attend the school.
kanisa	Twapenda kuhudhuria kanisani.	We like to attend the church.
michezo	Twapenda kuhudhuria michezo ya farasi.	We like to attend the horse races.

3.

A. -ambia plus indirect statement.

kuanza	Bwana Sangai alianza lini masomo ya jioni? Aliniambia ya kwamba alianza juzi.	When did Mr. Sangai start the evening classes? He told me that he began recently.
kuhitimu	Bwana Sangai alihitimu lini masomo ya jioni? Aliniambia ya kwamba alihitimu juzi.	When did Mr. Sangai complete the evening classes? He told me that he completed them recently.

kuchelewa	Bwana Sangai alichelewa lini masomo ya jioni? Aliniambia ya kwamba alichelewa juzi.	When did Mr. Sangai come late for the evening classes? He told me that he came late recently.

4. Extra vocabulary.

matunda	Sokoni kuna matunda mbalimbali, kama vile machungwa, maembe, na kadhalika.	At the market there are various fruits such as oranges, mangoes and so forth.
nguo	Madukani kuna nguo mbalimbali, kama vile mashati, kanzu, suruali, na kadhalika.	At the shops there are various kinds of clothing such as shirts, kanzus, trousers and so forth.
vinywaji	Hotelini kunauzwa vinywaji mbalimbali, kama vile chai, kahawa, pombe, na kadhalika.	At the hotel there are sold various beverages such as tea, coffee, beer and so forth.
makabila	Ǹchini Tanganyika m̀na watu wa makabila mbalimbali, kama vile Wanyamwezi, Wabondei, Wazaramo, na kadhalika.	In Tanganyika there are people of different tribes such as the Nyamwezi, Bondei, Zaramo and so forth.
mboga	Sokoni kuna mboga mbalimbali, kama vile m̀chicha, kábiji, na kadhalika.	At the market there are various vegetables such as m̀chicha, cabbages and so forth.

Conversation Starters

1. Describe your own high school or college. Where was it located? How did you get to it? What did you study? Use the dictionary to add specialized vocabulary for the names of the various academic disciplines.

2. Tell about a letter which you have sent or received recently.

Unit 67

1. Basic Dialogue. What is it like at night school?

Maina

-endesha	to run, cause to go, drive [a car]
Nani anayeendesha shule hizi za jioni?	Who [is it] that is running these night schools?

Juma

m̂saada (MI)	assistance
-tolewa	to be put forward, be produced, be taken away
Nafikiri sehemu ya m̂saada hutolewa na Serikali.	I think a part of the support is supplied by the government.

Maina

-kubali	to accept
Ni watu wa umri gani wanaokubaliwa?	What age people are accepted? ('It is people of what age who are accepted?')

Juma

hoja (N)	necessity; what is urgent
Sidhani umri ni hoja.	I don't think the age is important.

Maina

-julisha	to make known, inform, cause to know
Basi, nitawajulisha wengi.	O.K., I'm going to tell a lot of people.

	('I'm going to cause many people to know.')

Juma

Hata ada yenyewe ni ndogo sana.	And besides, the fees themselves are very low.

Maina

Kweli? Asante! Kwa heri!	Really? Thanks! Good-bye!

Notes

A. Relative counterparts of the na- and li-tenses.

Anaendesha shule.	He runs the school.
...anayeendesha shule...	...who runs the school... he who runs the school...
Wanakubaliwa.	They are accepted.
...wanaokubaliwa...	...who are accepted...

The verbs in the two complete sentences above are 'indicative' forms. An 'indicative' form is one that can serve as the only verb in a complete statement.

The verbs in the second and fourth examples are 'relative' counterparts of the indicative forms. In general, there is a relative counterpart for any indicative verb form in Swahili. These are generally translated into English by relative clauses beginning with who or which.

For the na and li tenses, the relative forms are like the indicative forms except for the presence of a relative affix, which occupies a slot between the tense prefix and the object prefix.

The relative affixes are identical in form with the set of suffixes found in Unit 18, Note C.

2.

A. Relatives, li-tense.

kukubaliwa	Ṁtu aliyekubaliwa jana ataanza kesho.	The person who was accepted yesterday will begin tomorrow.
kuja	Ṁtu aliyekuja jana ataanza kesho.	The person who came yesterday will begin tomorrow.
kulipa	Ṁtu aliyelipa ada jana ataanza kesho.	The person who paid fees yesterday will begin tomorrow.
kutumwa	Ṁtu aliyetumwa jana ataanza kesho.	The person who was sent yesterday will begin tomorrow.

B. Relatives, li-tense, monosyllabic stem.

kuja	Wapagazi waliokuja asubuhi wamekwenda nyumbani.	The porters who came in the morning have gone home.
kuanza	Wapagazi walioanza asubuhi wamekwenda nyumbani.	The porters who began in the morning have gone home.
kukubaliwa	Wapagazi waliokubaliwa asubuhi wamekwenda nyumbani.	The porters who were accepted in the morning have gone home.
kutumwa	Wapagazi waliotumwa asubuhi wamekwenda nyumbani.	The porters who were sent in the morning have gone home.

C. Relatives, li-tense, stative verb stem.

vikombe	Vikombe vilivyovunjika viko mezani.	The broken cups are on the table.
kikombe	Kikombe kilichovunjika kiko mezani.	The broken cup is on the table.

visahani	Visahani vilivyovunjika viko mezani.	The broken saucers are on the table.
kisahani	Kisahani kilichovunjika kiko mezani.	The broken saucer is on the table.
visu	Visu vilivyovunjika viko mezani.	The broken knives are on the table.
kisu	Kisu kilichovunjika kiko mezani.	The broken knife is on the table.
sahani (sg.)	Sahani iliyovunjika iko mezani.	The broken plate is on the table.
sahani zote	Sahani zote zilizovunjika ziko mezani.	All the broken plates are on the table.
kalamu (sg.)	Kalamu iliyovunjika iko mezani.	The broken pen is on the table.
kalamu zote	Kalamu zote zilizovunjika ziko mezani.	All the broken pens are on the table.

D. Relatives, na-tense.

upishi	Watu wanaofanya kazi ya upishi waitwa wapishi.	People who do cooking are called cooks.
ukulima	Watu wanaofanya kazi ya ukulima waitwa wakulima.	People who do farming are called farmers.
ukarani	Watu wanaofanya kazi ya ukarani waitwa makarani.	People who do clerical work are called clerks.
kufunza	Watu wanaofanya kazi ya kufunza waitwa waalimu.	People who do teaching are called teachers.

3.

A. Li-tense: indicative vs. relative.

vikombe	Vikombe vipi vilivunjika?	Which cups got broken?
	Vilivyovunjika viko jikoni.	The broken ones are in the kitchen.

kikombe	Kikombe kipi kilivunjika? Kilichovunjika kiko jikoni.	Which cup got broken? The broken one is in the kitchen.
visu	Visu vipi vilivunjika? Vilivyovunjika viko jikoni.	Which knives got broken? The broken ones are in the kitchen.
kisu	Kisu kipi kilivunjika? Kilichovunjika kiko jikoni.	Which knife got broken? The broken one is in the kitchen.
sahani (sg.)	Sahani ipi ilivunjika? Iliyovunjika iko jikoni.	Which plate got broken? The broken one is in the kitchen.
sahani (pl.)	Sahani zipi zilivunjika? Zilizovunjika ziko jikoni.	Which plates got broken? The broken ones are in the kitchen.

B. Relative, na-tense, in question and answer.

kuendesha	Nani anayeendesha shule hii?	Who runs this school?
	Mtu anayeendesha shule hii anaitwa Bw. Hasani.	The person who runs this school is Mr. Hasani.
kufunza	Nani anayefunza hesabu shuleni humu?	Who teaches arithmetic in this school?
	Mwalimu anayefunza hesabu shuleni humu anaitwa Bw. Abdallah.	The teacher who teaches arithmetic in this school is called Mr. Abdallah.
kutengeneza	Nani anayeweza kutengeneza kalamu yangu?	Who can repair my pen?
	Fundi anayeweza kutengeneza kalamu yako anaitwa Bw. Juma.	The repairman who can repair your pen is called Mr. Juma.

Unit 68

1. Basic Dialogue. What about the fees?

Maina

mwezi (MI)	month
Je, ni kiasi gani kwa mwezi?	How much is it a month, by the way?

Juma

shilingi (N)	shilling
Ni kama shilingi tano tu.	It's only about 5 shillings.

Maina

haki (N)	justice
Haki? (or: Kweli?)	Is that right?

Juma

Ndiyo!	Yes!

Maina

Wanahitaji vitabu vipi?	Which books do they need?

Juma

bure	for nothing
Ukiisha lipa ada, vitabu utavipata bure.	Once you have paid the fee, you get the books free.

Maina

hamu (N)	desire, longing
Jamaa. Walio na hamu ya elimu, sasa wanayo nafasi.	Brother! Those who have a desire for education, now [they] have the opportunity.

Juma

Tena!	Right. ('[you can say that] again!')

Notes

A. Relative counterparts of forms with the stem -na.

Wana vitabu.	They have books.
...walio na vitabu...	...who have books... they who have books...
...aliye na njaa...	...who is hungry... he who is hungry...

The present relative affirmative forms corresponding to past aliyekuwa, waliokuwa are formed on a special stem -li-, to which we may assign the English translation 'be'. The relative affix is placed after this stem, not before it. Note that this stem is identical in sound with the prefix for the li-tense, but for practical purposes the two elements should be regarded as distinct.

2.

A. Relative counterparts of forms with the stem -na.

vitabu	Watoto walio na vitabu waende nyumbani.	The children who have books should go home.
kalamu	Watoto walio na kalamu waende nyumbani.	The children who have pens should go home.
chakula	Watoto walio na chakula waende nyumbani.	The children who have food should go home.
njaa	Watoto walio na njaa waende nyumbani.	The children who are hungry should go home.

B. Relative counterparts of indicatives in -wa na -, (past tense).

vitabu	Watoto waliokuwa na vitabu walikwenda nyumbani.	The children who had books went home.

kalamu	Watoto waliokuwa na kalamu walikwenda nyumbani.	The children who had pens went home.
chakula	Watoto waliokuwa na chakula walikwenda nyumbani.	The children who had food went home.
njaa	Watoto waliokuwa na njaa walikwenda nyumbani.	The children who were hungry went home.

C.

dawa	M̀gonjwa aliye na dawa akae hospitali.	Have the patient who has medicine stay in the hospital.
homa	M̀gonjwa aliye na homa akae hospitali.	Have the patient who has a fever stay in the hospital.
mafua	M̀gonjwa aliye na mafua akae hospitali.	Have the patient who has a chest complaint stay in the hospital.
malaria	M̀gonjwa aliye na malaria akae hospitali.	Have the patient who has malaria stay in the hospital.

D.

dawa	M̀gonjwa aliyekuwa na dawa alikaa hospitali.	The patient who had medicine stayed in the hospital.
homa	M̀gonjwa aliyekuwa na homa alikaa hospitali.	The patient who had a fever stayed in the hospital.
mafua	M̀gonjwa aliyekuwa na mafua alikaa hospitali.	The patient who had a chest complaint stayed in the hospital.
malaria	M̀gonjwa aliyekuwa na malaria alikaa hospitali.	The patient who had malaria stayed in the hospital.

3.

A. *Na*-tense, indicative *vs.* relative.

kichwa	Wagonjwa wengine wanaumwa kichwa.	Some patients have headaches.
	Wanaoumwa kichwa waje humu.	Have those who have headaches come in.

shingo	Wagonjwa wengine wanaumwa shingo.	Some patients have stiff necks.
	Wanaoumwa shingo waje humu.	Have those who have stiff necks come in here.

meno miguu

B. Li-tense: indicative vs. relative.

kichwa	Wagonjwa wengine walikuwa wanaumwa kichwa.	Some patients had headaches.
	Waliokuwa wanaumwa kichwa walipata dawa ya vidonge.	Those who had headaches got pills.
shingo	Wagonjwa wengine walikuwa wanaumwa shingo.	Some patients had stiff necks.
	Waliokuwa wanaumwa shingo walipata dawa ya vidonge.	Those with stiff necks got pills.
meno	Wagonjwa wengine walikuwa wanaumwa meno.	Some patients had toothaches.
	Waliokuwa wanaumwa meno walipata dawa ya vidonge.	Those who had toothaches got pills.
miguu	Wagonjwa wengine walikuwa wanaumwa miguu.	Some patients had sore feet.
	Waliokuwa wanaumwa miguu walipata dawa ya vidonge.	Those who had sore feet got pills.

Conversation Starters

1. Discuss adult education as it is carried on in the part of Africa in which you are most interested.

Unit 69

1. Basic Dialogue. A shortage of professional people.

Magese

haba	few
Nchi yetu ina walimu haba sana. Hata matabibu wachache pia.	Our country has very few teachers. ('Even doctors [are] few likewise.')
tangu	since
-zidi	to increase
mwanafunzi (WA)	student
Lakini tangu juzi juzi wanafunzi wamezidi.	But (since) recently students have increased [in number].

Butler

mia	hundred
[Haikuwa] Si mwaka jana mia tatu walipokwenda Amerika?	Wasn't it last year that 300 went to America?

Sangai

zaidi (N)	more, excess
Natumaini mwaka ujao wataruka zaidi ya hao.	I hope next year ['the year which comes'] more will fly than that.

Sangai

~gumu	hard, difficult
gharama (N)	expense, outlay
Kumbuka ni vigumu sana kupata pesa za kulipa gharama.	Remember it is very hard to get the money to pay the expenses.

Notes

A. Relative counterparts of the a-tense.

mwaka ujao	the year which comes
miezi ijayo	months which come
m̀tu aliye na njaa	a person who is hungry

These relative forms (cf. Unit 68) are all formed with subject prefix, plus stem (-ja or -li), plus relative affix. The first two examples illustrate relative counterparts of the a-tense.

2.

A. Multiples of ten.

10	Wanafunzi kumi walikwenda Ulaya mwaka jana.	Ten students went to Europe last year.
20	Wanafunzi ishirini walikwenda Ulaya mwaka jana.	Twenty students went to Europe last year.

30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100

B.

12	Mwalimu m̀kuu wa shule amenunua vikombe kumi na viwili.	The head teacher has bought twelve cups.
22	Mwalimu m̀kuu wa shule amenunua vikombe ishirini na viwili.	The head teacher has bought twenty-two cups.

32 42 52 62 72 82 92 102

C. Relative counterpart of the a-tense.

mwaka	Ninataka kusoma vitabu vingi mwaka ujao.	I want to read many books next year.
miaka	Ninataka kusoma vitabu vingi miaka ijayo.	I want to read many books in the years to come.
mwezi	Ninataka kusoma vitabu vingi mwezi ujao.	I want to read many books next month.

miezi	Ninataka kusoma vitabu vingi miezi ijayo.	I want to read many books in the months to come.
siku	Ninataka kusoma vitabu vingi siku zijazo.	I want to read many books in the days to come.

D.

15	Kila mwanafunzi atapata zaidi ya vitabu kumi na vitano.	Every student will get more than fifteen books.
25	Kila mwanafunzi atapata zaidi ya vitabu ishirini na vitano.	Every student will get more than twenty-five books.

35 45 55 65 75 85 95

105	Kila mwanafunzi atapata zaidi ya vitabu mia (moja) na vitano.	Every student will get more than a hundred and five books.
125	Kila mwanafunzi atapata zaidi ya vitabu mia (moja) na ishirini na vitano.	Every student will get more than a hundred and twenty-five books.

3.

A. Concord, including the last word in a numeral phrase.

chupa	Leo tumeuza chupa ishirini na tano za soda.	Today we have sold twenty-five bottles of soda.
	Jana tuliuza zaidi (ya hizo).	Yesterday we sold more than that.
taa	Leo tumeuza taa ishirini na tano.	Today we have sold twenty-five lamps.
	Jana tuliuza zaidi (ya hizo).	Yesterday we sold more than that.
mayai	Leo tumeuza mayai ishirini na matano.	Today we have sold twenty-five eggs.
	Jana tuliuza zaidi (ya hayo).	Yesterday we sold more than that.
mananasi	Leo tumeuza mananasi ishirini na matano.	Today we have sold twenty-five pineapples.
	Jana tuliuza zaidi (ya hayo).	Yesterday we sold more than that.

mikate	Leo tumeuza mikate ishirini na mitano. Jana tuliuza zaidi (ya hiyo),	Today we have sold twenty-five loaves of bread. Yesterday we sold more than that.
visu	Leo tumeuza visu ishirini na vitano. Jana tuliuza zaidi (ya hivyo).	Today we have sold twenty-five knives. Yesterday we sold more than that.
vitabu	Leo tumeuza vitabu ishirini na vitano. Jana tuliuza zaidi (ya hivyo).	Today we have sold twenty-five books. Yesterday we sold more than that.

B. Li-tense: affirmative vs. negative.

kuingia	Hasani aliingia nyumbani. Daudi hakuingia.	Hasani entered the house. Daudi didn't enter.
kukata tamaa	Hasani alikata tamaa. Daudi hakukata tamaa.	Hasani despaired. Daudi didn't despair.
kuam̊kia	Hasani alituam̊kia. Daudi hakutuam̊kia.	Hasani welcomed us. Daudi didn't welcome us.
kuendelea na masomo	Hasani aliendelea na masomo. Daudi hakuendelea.	Hasani continued with school. Daudi didn't continue.
kuhamishwa	Hasani alihamishwa na serikali. Daudi hakuhamishwa.	Hasani was moved by the government. Daudi wasn't moved.

Unit 70

1. Basic Dialogue. A day off.

Sangai	
furaha (N)	rejoicing
Leo ni Jumamosi, siku ya furaha!	Today is Saturday, a day of rejoicing.
Abasi	
m̀pango (MI)	plan, manner, method
Tena! Una mipango yo yote?	Right! Do you have any plans?
Sangai	
sinema (N) (or: senema (N))	cinema
Twende sinema leo jioni.	Let's go to the movies this evening.
Abasi	
ngoma (N)	drum
Haya. Halafu tutakwenda ngomani.	O.K., and then we'll go to watch the dances.
Sangai	
Ndiyo, mimi napenda ngoma sana.	Yes, I like the dances very much.
Abasi	
-cheza	to play
dansi (N)	dance
Mimi pia, ijapokuwa siwezi kucheza vizuri.	Me too, even though I can't dance well.

2.

A. Days of the week.

Sat.	Tutajaribu kukutembelea Jumamosi ijayo.	We'll try to visit you next Saturday.
Sun.	Tutajaribu kukutembelea Jumapili ijayo.	We'll try to visit you next Sunday.

Monday-Jumatatu Tuesday-Jumanne Wednesday-Jumatano

Thursday-Alhamisi Friday-Ijumaa

B.

Fri.	Hamisi amekuwa (po) hapa tangu Ijumaa.	Hamisi has been here since Friday.
Sat.	Hamisi amekuwa (po) hapa tangu Jumamosi.	Hamisi has been here since Saturday.

Sunday Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday

3.

A. Ta-tense: affirmative vs. negative, with person change.

Utakwenda sinema Jumamosi ijayo? Hapana, sitakwenda.	Are you going to the cinema next Saturday? No. I won't go.
Utaangusha sahani zote! Hapana, sitaziangusha.	You will drop all the plates. No. I won't drop them.
Utamwaga mafuta! Hapana, sitayamwaga.	You will spill the oil. No. I won't spill it.
Mafuta yatamwagika! Hapana, hayatamwagika.	The oil will be spilled. No. It won't be spilled.
Utaharibu kalamu yangu! Hapana, sitaiharibu.	You will spoil my pen. No. I won't spoil it.

Kalamu itaharibika!	The pen will be spoiled.
Hapana, haitaharibika.	No. It won't be spoiled.

4. A is a student in night school. B is thinking about attending, and asks A about it.

C is the father of three children who are of school age. D has five. They discuss the problems involved in the elementary education of their children.

Reading Selection II

Vyakula vya Afrika ya Mashariki

Katika Afrika ya Mashariki vyakula vitatu hutumiwa sana zaidi ya vingine na wenyeji. Upande wa Uganda, 'matoke' ndicho chakula kikuu. Ndizi huchem̀shwa halafu hupondwa kwa mwiko m̀paka ziwe kama viazi vilivyopondwa.

Ugali, ni unga wa mahindi au wa m̀tama unaochanganywa na maji yanayochem̀ka. Huu hufanana na uji lakini ugali ni m̀kavu zaidi kuliko uji. Unga hupatikana kutoka katika mahindi yaliyosagwa. Ili chakula chenyewe kiwe kitamu, ugali huliwa na kitoweo cha nyama au mboga na m̀chuzi. Wajaluo ndio walioanza kupika ugali.

Kama vile wenyeji wa bara wanavyosifu ugali, vivyo ndivyo watu wa pwani wanavyosifu wali. Waarabu wanajulikana sana kwa kula wali. M̀chele ukiwa na maganda huitwa m̀punga, na bila maganda kabla haujapikwa, m̀chele, lakini ukisha kuwa tayari kwa kula ni wali.

mwenyeji (WA)	the regular possessor; inhabitant	-changanya	to mix
matoke (pl. MA)	name of a type of food	-fanana	to resemble one another
ndicho	that is it, (sg. VI class)	˜kavu	dry
-chem̀sha	to cause to boil	-saga	to pulverize
-ponda	to crush by pounding	ili	in order that
mwiko (MI)	a large wooden spoon	˜tamu	sweet, pleasant delicious
ugali (U)	stiff porridge	kitoweo (VI)	a relish
unga (U)	flour, meal	m̀chuzi (MI)	gravy, soup, sauce
m̀tama (MI)	millet	ndio	it is they, (plu. WA class)
		-pika	to cook

bara (N)	the hinterland	wali (U)	cooked rice
-sifu	to praise	maganda (MA)	husks
-julikana	to be known	kabla (N)	before

Questions and Answers over Reading Selection

Questions	Sample Answers
1. Vyakula vingapi hutumiwa sana katika Afrika ya Mashariki?	Vyakula vitatu.
2. Vyakula hivyo ni vipi?	Vyakula hivyo ni matoke, ugali na wali.
3. Nani wanaotumia vyakula hivi zaidi?	Wenyeji hutumia vyakula hivi zaidi.
4. Matoke hupatikana wapi?	Matoke hupatikana katika n̍chi ya Uganda.
5. Utatumia nini kuponda ndizi?	Nitatumia mwiko.
6. Ni unga gani unatumiwa kwa kupika ugali?	Unga wa mahindi, wa m̍tama, au wa mpunga.
7. Unga na maji yanayochem̍ka hufanywaje?	Unga na maji yanayochem̍ka huchanganywa.
8. Ugali hufanana na uji?	Ndiyo, lakini ugali ni m̍kavu zaidi kuliko uji.
9. Unga hupatikana kutoka wapi?	Unga hupatikana kutoka katika mahindi.

10.	Kwa namna gani?	Mahindi husagwa.
11.	Ugali ni chakula kitamu?	Ndiyo, ugali ni chakula kitamu.
12.	Ugali huliwa na nini?	Ugali huliwa na kitoweo na m̀chuzi.
13.	Wenyeji wa pwani wanasifu nini?	Wanasifu wali.
14.	Ni watu gani wanaojulikana sana kwa kula wali?	Waarabu.
15.	M̂chele ukiwa na maganda huitwaje?	M̀chele ukiwa na maganda shambani huitwa m̀punga.
16.	Wali ni m̀chele wa nam̀na gani?	Wali ni m̀chele uliopikwa.

Unit 71

1. Basic Dialogue. Let's visit the farm.

Mirambo

shamba (MA)	farm
Tafadhali twende tukatembee shambani.	Please let's go take a walk around the farm.

Hasani

baada (N)	after
Ndiyo. Tutakwenda baada ya saa moja hivi.	Fine. We'll go in about an hour.

- - - - - - - - -

Hasani

-pita	to pass
Saa moja imepita. U tayari? (or: Uko tayari?)	An hour has passed. Are you ready?

Mirambo

Ndiyo, ni tayari. (or: niko tayari.) Twende basi.	Yes, I'm ready. Well, let's go.

Hasani

-tangulia	to lead
njia (N)	path
-fuata	to follow
Tangulia. Nitakufuata. Unaijua njia kuliko mimi.	[You] lead [the way]. I'll follow you. You know the way better than I do.

Mirambo

Haya, twende basi.	O.K., let's go then.

Notes

A. Further example of the meaning of -*ka*-.

Tutembee shambani.	Let's take a walk on the farm [beginning right where we are now].
Tukatembee shambani.	Let's [go] take a walk on the farm [beginning from some point away from here].

The above examples provide another instance of the meaning of the prefix -*ka*-.

B. *hivi* 'about'

baada ya saa moja	after an hour
baada ya saa moja hivi	after about an hour

The word *hivi*, which in its shape is identical with the proximal demonstrative of the plural of the VI class, is in this sentence a modifier of *saa moja*, with the translation 'about'.

2.

A. 'last' with days of the week.

Sun.	Ulikuwa wapi Jumapili iliyopita?	Where were you last Sunday?
Mon.	Ulikuwa wapi Jumatatu iliyopita?	Where were you last Monday?

Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday

B. Verb phrase with -*wa*; 'last year?'

wewe	Ulikuwa ukifanya kazi gani mwaka uliopita?	What type of work were you doing last year?

ninyi	M̀likuwa m̀kifanya kazi gani mwaka uliopita?	What type of work were you (pl.) doing last year?
Bw. Sangai	Bw. Sangai alikuwa akifanya kazi gani mwaka uliopita?	What type of work was Mr. Sangai doing last year?
wanafunzi hawa	Wanafunzi hawa walikuwa wakifanya kazi gani mwaka uliopita?	What type of work were these students doing last year?

C. *njia ya* plus infinitive.

soko	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda sokoni.	Please, show me the way (to go) to the market.
hospitali	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda hospitalini.	Please, show me the way to the hospital.
boma	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda bomani.	Please, show me the way to the administrative office.
kanisa	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda kanisani.	Please, show me the way to the church.
hoteli	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda hotelini.	Please, show me the way to the hotel.
nyumba	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda nyumbani.	Please, show me the way to the house.

3.

A. Infinitive vs. past negative.

kuja	Juma na Hasani waliahidi kuja mwezi uliopita, lakini hawakuja.	Juma and Hasani promised to come last month, but they didn't.
kwenda	Juma na Hasani waliahidi kwenda masomo ya jioni mwezi uliopita, lakini hawakwenda.	Juma and Hasani promised to go to the evening classes last month, but they didn't.

kuletea	Juma na Hasani waliahidi kuniletea barua mwezi uliopita, lakini hawakuniletea.	Juma and Hasani promised to send me a letter last month, but they didn't.
kusalimia	Juma na Hasani waliahidi kunisalimia mwalimu wao mwezi uliopita, lakini hawakunisalimia.	Juma and Hasani promised to convey my best regards to their teacher last month, but they didn't.

B. Simple vs. applied stem; 'every' vs. 'last' Saturday.

Sat.	Naandika barua kwa wazazi wangu kila Jumamosi. Niliwaandikia barua Jumamosi iliyopita.	I write to my parents every Saturday. I wrote them last Saturday.
Mon.	Naandika barua kwa wazazi wangu kila Jumatatu. Niliwaandikia barua Jumatatu iliyopita.	I write to my parents every Monday. I wrote them last Monday.

Wednesday Thursday Friday

Unit 72

1. Basic Dialogue. The farm needs rain and fertilizer.

Mirambo

-nyesha	to rain
mavuno (MA)	harvest
Mvua ikinyesha nitapata mavuno mengi.	If it rains, I'll get a large harvest.

Hasani

Umepanda mimea gani shambani mwako?	What kind of plants have you planted on your farm?

Mirambo

Viazi ulaya.	Irish potatoes. ('European potatoes')
ningalikuwa	if I were
mbolea (N)	fertilizer
Kama ningalikuwa na mbolea ningalipanda vitunguu.	If I had had fertilizer, I would have planted onions.

Hasani

-agiza	to order
Unaweza kuiagiza kutoka Idara ya Ukulima.	You can order it from the Ministry of Agriculture.

Mirambo

robo (N)	1/4
Lázima ulipe robo ya gharama kwanza.	It's necessary that you pay a quarter of the amount at the beginning.

Hasani

Kama huna pesa, utapanda nini?	If you don't have money, what will you plant?

Mirambo

Nitapanda njugu karanga.	I will plant groundnuts.

Notes

A. The MU, KU and PA locative concords.

shambani mwako on ('in') your farm

The mw- prefix belongs to the mu- class of locatives (cf. Unit 29, Note A). A general first-approximation translation equivalent for this class is 'in'. For the ku- class of locatives, whose first-approximation equivalent is 'to', the prefix used with possessive stems is kw-, and for the pa- locatives, it is p-.

The corresponding subject prefixes used with verbs are m̀-/mw-, ku-/kw-, pa-/p.

2.

A. Lázima plus subjunctive.

kutumia	Lázima utumie mbolea kwa vitunguu.	You must use fertilizer for onions.
kuagiza	Lázima uagize mbolea kutoka Idara ya Ukulima.	You must order fertilizer from the Agriculture Department.
kulipa	Lázima ulipe robo ya gharama kwanza.	You must pay a quarter of the expenses at first.
kumaliza	Lázima umalize kazi yako kesho.	You must finish your work tomorrow.

B. Relative of the na-tense.

kutumia	Wakulima wanaotumia mbolea watapata vitunguu.	The farmers who use fertilizer will get onions.

kuagiza	Wakulima wanaoagiza mbolea watalpata.	The farmers who order fertilizer will get it.
kutaka	Wakulima wanaotaka mbolea watalipa robo ya gharama.	The farmers who want fertilizer will pay a quarter of the expense.

C. MU locative concord with a possessive stem.

muhogo	Twapanda muhogo mwingi shambani mwetu.	We plant a lot of cassava in our garden.
mimea	Twapanda mimea mingi shambani mwetu.	We plant a lot of crops in our garden.
m̀punga	Twapanda m̀punga mwingi shambani mwetu.	We plant a lot of rice in our garden.
vitunguu	Twapanda vitunguu vingi shambani mwetu.	We plant a lot of onions in our garden.

D. KU locative concord with a possessive stem.

muhogo	Walileta muhogo mwingi shambani kwetu.	They brought a lot of cassava to our garden.
mimea	Walileta mimea mingi shambani kwetu.	They brought a lot of crops to our garden.
m̀punga	Walileta m̀punga mwingi shambani kwetu.	They brought a lot of rice to our garden.
vitu	Walileta vitu vingi shambani kwetu.	They brought a lot of things to our garden.

E. MU and KU locative concords as subject prefixes.

↓	Sandukuni m̀na chumvi.	There is salt in the box.
soko	Sokoni kuna chumvi.	There is salt at the market.
visu	Sokoni kuna visu.	There are knives at the market.
sanduku	Sandukuni m̀na visu.	There are knives in the box.

3.

A. MU locative concord with possessive stem and subject prefix.

taa	Nyumbani mwako m̀na taa?	Is there a lamp in your house?
	Ndiyo, m̀na mbili.	Yes, there are two.
meza	Nyumbani mwako m̀na meza?	Is there a table in your house?
	Ndiyo, m̀na mbili.	Yes, there are two.
saa	Nyumbani mwako m̀na saa?	Is there a clock in your house?
	Ndiyo, m̀na mbili.	Yes, there are two.
wino	Nyumbani mwako m̀na wino?	Is there ink in your house?
	Ndiyo, m̀na chupa mbili.	Yes, there are two bottles of ink.

B. KU locative concord with possessive stem and subject prefix.

baiskeli	Nyumbani kwako kuna baiskeli?	Is there a bicycle at your house?
	Ndiyo, kuna moja.	Yes, there is one.
motokaa	Nyumbani kwako kuna motakaa?	Is there a car at your house?
	Ndiyo, kuna moja.	Yes, there is one.
m̀gonjwa	Nyumbani kwako kuna m̀gonjwa?	Is there a patient at your house?
	Ndiyo, kuna m̀moja.	Yes, there is one.

Conversation Starters

1. A and B are from different parts of Africa (or the United States). A asks B about what things are like where he is from (kwako).

Unit 73

1. Basic Dialogue. Should I get a crop loan?

Hasani

-kopa	to borrow
mahali (PA)	place
Ukitaka, nitakuonyesha mahali pa kukopa pesa.	If you like, I'll show you a place to borrow money.

Mirambo

moyo (MI)	heart
Sina moyo wa kukopa pesa.	I've no liking for borrowing money.
desturi (N)	a custom, practice
Hii ni desturi mbaya.	It's a bad practice.

Hasani

mwisho (MI)	end
Hivyo ndivyo nilivyofanya, na (or: nami) nitazilipa mwisho wa mwaka.	That's how I did, and I will pay it [back] the end of the year.

Mirambo

Unajuaje kama utapata mavuno mazuri?	How do you know whether you will get good crops?

Hasani

wasiwasi (U)	doubt
-angalia	look at
jibu (MA)	answer, reply

Sina wasiwasi. Ukiangalia shambani, utapata majibu.	I don't have any doubts. If you look at the farm, you will get the answer.

Notes

A. Relative affixes in agreement with the objects of verbs.

kiti ulicholeta (or:...ulichokileta)	the chair that you brought
karanga tutakazopanda (or: tutakazozipanda)	the groundnuts that we will plant

The relative affix (-*cho*- and -*zo*- in these examples) may stand for the object of a verb, instead of for its subject. Where it stands for the subject, it must be of the same class as the subject prefix:

(m̀tu) aliyesikia	a person who heard ...

Where it stands for the object, it is in the class of the object:

(kitu) alichonunua	(the thing) which he bought...
(motokaa) aliyosikia	(the car) which he heard...

The relative affix may then be followed by the object prefix, though many speakers omit the latter.

B. *Ndi*- plus relative affix.

Ndicho.	That is the one (e.g. kitu, kiti, kisu)
Ndiyo.	That is the one (e.g. ǹchi, motokaa, ndizi)
Ndizo.	Those are the ones (e.g. ndizi, nyumba)
Ndivyo.	Those are the ones (e.g. vitunguu, vitu)

A combination of *ndi*- plus the relative affix is translated approximately as in these examples.

C. Combination of the constructions described in Notes A and B.

Ndiye niliyemwona.	He is the one I saw.
Ndicho ninachotumia. (or: ...ninachokitumia.)	That is the one (e.g. the thing) that I am using.

The constructions of Notes A and B are combined as shown above.

D. Concords of VI (plu.) class in expression of manner.

Hivyo ndivyo nilivyofanya.	That is how I did.

The concords of the plural VI class are used without antecedent to refer to manner. Compare the use of these same concords in the 'adverbial' forms vizuri, vyema.

2.

A. Moyo wa plus infinitive.

kukopa	Sina moyo wa kukopa pesa.	I have no desire to borrow money.
kuendelea	Sina moyo wa kuendelea na masomo.	I have no desire to continue with studies.
kujaribu	Sina moyo wa kujaribu tena.	I have no desire to try again.
kuenda	Sina moyo wa kuenda kwa tabibu.	I have no desire to go to a doctor.

B. VI plu. concords in expression of manner.

kufanya	Hivyo ndivyo nilivyofanya.	That's how I did it.
kusema	Hivyo ndivyo nilivyosema.	That's how I said it.
kufikiri	Hivyo ndivyo nilivyofikiri.	That's how I thought.
kuja	Hivyo ndivyo nilivyokuja.	That's how I came.
kuanza	Hivyo ndivyo nilivyoanza.	That's how I started.

C.

kufanya	Nataka kufanya kama ulivyofanya.	I want to do as you did.
kusema	Nataka kusema kama ulivyosema.	I want to speak as you spoke.
kuanza	Nataka kuanza kama ulivyoanza.	I want to start as you started.

kwenda	Nataka kwenda kama ulivyokwenda.	I want to go as you went.

D. Concords with mahali.

kuweka	Sioni mahali pa kuweka nguo.	I can't find a place to put clothes.
kuingia	Sioni mahali pa kuingilia nyumbani.	I can't find a place to get into the house.
kukaa	Sioni mahali pa kukaa.	I can't find a place to sit down.
kununua	Sioni mahali pa kununulia viberiti.	I can't find a place to buy matches.

The first and third sentences in this exercise use simple verb stems, while the second and fourth use applied stems. In the first sentence, mahali pa kuwekea nguo would also be correct, but it would have a different meaning. Generally speaking, in contexts of this kind, the applied stem is used when talking about a place especially set aside or especially suited for the purpose indicated.

3.

A. Li-tense: indicative vs. relative.

1. mbolea	Uliagiza mbolea nzuri?	Did you order some good fertilizer?
	Ndiyo. Mbolea niliyoiagiza ilikuwa nzuri sana.	Yes, the fertilizer that I ordered was very good.

sindano dawa nguo

2. mafuta	Uliagiza mafuta mazuri?	Did you order some good oil?
	Ndiyo. Mafuta niliyoyaagiza yalikuwa mazuri sana.	Yes, the oil that I ordered was very good.

mayai

3. kitabu	Uliagiza kitabu kizuri?	Did you order a good book?
	Ndiyo. Kitabu nilichokiagiza kilikuwa kizuri sana.	Yes, the book that I ordered was very good.

kinywaji		
4. vyakula	Uliagiza vyakula vizuri?	Did you order good food?
	Ndiyo. Vyakula nilivyoviagiza vilikuwa vizuri sana.	Yes, the food that I ordered is very good.
viberiti		
5. mikate	Uliagiza mikate mizuri?	Did you order some good loaves?
	Ndiyo. Mikate niliyoiagiza ilikuwa mizuri sana.	Yes, the loaves that I ordered are very good.
mimea		

Unit 74

1. Basic Dialogue. Farm implements.

Hasani

-lima	to cultivate
kwenu	at your place
Je, kwenu mwatumia vyombo gani kwa kulimia?	Say, what tools do you use in farming where you live?

Mirambo

jembe (MA)	hoe
uma (U, N)	rake
Tunatumia majembe na nyuma.	We use hoes and rakes.

Hasani

Kuna wakulima wanaotumia plau?	Are there farmers who use plows?

Mirambo

Ndiyo, wale walio na mashamba makubwa.	Yes, those who have large farms.

Hasani

m̀ti (MI)	tree
kijiti (VI)	small tree, underbrush
-kata	to cut
M̀kisha angusha miti m̀nakata vijiti na nini?	When you have finished felling trees, what do you cut the brush with?

Mirambo

panga (MA)	large knife
Wengi hukata vijiti kwa mapanga.	Many cut the brush with pangas.

Hasani

laini	soft, smooth
Na kwa kulainisha udongo?	And for softening the ground?
(or: na kwa kutifua udongo?)	

Mirambo

Panga latosha.	A panga is all right.

Notes

A. Locative concord plus possessive stem, with no antecedent.

Kwetu tunatumia majembe. At our place, we use hoes.

The concord *kw-* plus possessive stem is used where English would have 'at your place', 'where we live', etc.

B. The spelling of *-ki(i)sha*.

The forms which in Standard Swahili are spelled *akiisha*, *nikiisha*, etc. are commonly pronounced with only one *i*.

2.

A. Concords with *mahali*.

~ema	Tumeona mahali pema leo.	We have found a good place today.
~ngapi	Tumeona mahali pangapi leo?	How many places have we found today?
kupanda	Tumeona mahali pazuri pa kupanda muhogo leo.	We have found a good place for planting cassava today.
kuogelea	Tumeona mahali pazuri pa kuogelea leo.	We have found a good place for swimming today.

B.

kuweka	Mahali pa kuwekea taa ni wapi?	Where does the lamp belong?

kupata	Mahali pa kupatia dawa ni wapi?	Where is the place to get medicine?
kununua	Mahali pa kununulia pombe ni wapi?	Where is the place to buy beer?
kuvaa	Mahali pa kuvalia nguo ni wapi?	Where is the dressing room?

C. -kisha plus verb stem.

kuangusha	Ukisha angusha miti hii, rudi nyumbani.	When you finish felling these trees, return home.
kulainisha	Ukisha lainisha udongo huu, rudi nyumbani.	When you finish breaking up the earth, return home.
kufuta	Ukisha futa maji haya, rudi nyumbani.	When you finish wiping up the water, return home.
kusafisha	Ukisha safisha majembe haya, rudi nyumbani.	When you finish cleaning these hoes, return home.
kupigwa	Ukisha pigwa sindano, rudi nyumbani.	When you finish getting your injection, return home.

3.

A. Na-tense: indicative vs. relative.

kutumia	Wakulima wengi wanatumia plau?	Do many farmers use ploughs?
	Hapana, wanaotumia plau ni wachache.	No, those who use ploughs are few.
kujua	Watu wengi wanajua kutengeneza motakaa?	Do many people know how to repair cars?
	Hapana, wanaojua kutengeneza motakaa ni wachache.	No, those who know how to repair cars are few.

kuangusha	Watu wengi wanaangusha miti kwa visu?	Do many people fell trees with knives?
	Hapana, wanaoangusha miti kwa visu ni wachache.	No, those who fell trees with knives are few.
kuhudhuria	Wanafunzi wengi wanahudhuria vyuo vya juu?	Do many students attend universities?
	Hapana, wanaohudhuria vyuo vya juu ni wachache.	No, those who attend universities are few.

B. Relative counterpart of a-tense.

majembe	Wako wapi wanaume walio na majembe?	Where are the men with hoes?
	Wale walio na majembe wamekwisha kwenda shambani.	Those who have hoes have already gone to the garden.

uma mapanga

Unit 75

1. Basic Dialogue. Times for planting and weeding.

Hasani

mbegu (N)	seed
Utapanda mbegu zako lini?	When are you going to plant your seeds?

Mirambo

Mvua ikinyesha nitazipanda mbegu zangu.	I'll plant them when it rains.

Hasani

-palilia	to weed
Umenunua vyombo vya kupalilia?	Have you bought the tools for weeding?

Mirambo

kitambo	a short period of time, a piece (of time)
Kitambo! Mapanga sita na majembe matano.	Long ago! Six pangas and five hoes.

Hasani

Lakini, ni wakati gani m̀zuri wa kupalilia?	But what time is a good one for weeding?

Mirambo

Tuseme, kama mimea ikisha pata inchi sita hivi.	Let's say, when the plants have already gotten [to] about six inches.

Hasani

-mea	to grow

-meza (or: -meleza, -melesha)	to shoot out
jani (MA)	leaf
Maana yake ikisha meza majani?	That is to say, when they put out [their] leaves?

Mirambo

Ndiyo.	Yes.

2.

A. wakati wa plus infinitive.

kupanda	Wakati gani m̃zuri wa kupanda mbegu?	When is the best time to plant seeds?
kupalilia	Wakati gani m̃zuri wa kupalilia shamba?	When is the best time to weed a garden?
kuangusha	Wakati gani m̃zuri wa kuangusha vijiti?	When is the best time to fell trees?
kulainisha	Wakati gani m̃zuri wa kulainisha udongo?	When is the best time to break up the soil?

3.

A. Me-tense (affirmative) vs. -ja- negative.

kupalilia	Umepalilia mahindi yako? Bado sijapalilia.	Have you weeded your maize? Not yet, I haven't.
kupanda	Umepanda muhogo wako? Bado sijapanda.	Have you planted your cassava? Not yet, I haven't.
kupeleka	Umepeleka kalamu yako kwa fundi? Bado sijapeleka.	Have you taken your pen to the repairman? Not yet, I haven't.

B.

kuvuna	Wakulima wamevuna ṁtama?	Have the farmers harvested millet?
	Hapana. Bado hawajavuna.	No, the haven't yet.
kupanda	Wakulima wamepanda ṁtama?	Have the farmers planted millet?
	Hapana. Bado hawajapanda.	No, they haven't yet.
kutengeneza	Fundi ametengeneza kalamu yako?	Has the pen repairer repaired your pen?
	Hapana. Bado hajatengeneza.	No, he hasn't yet.

C. Infinitive vs. affirmative subjunctive vs. negative subjunctive.

ṁpunga	Ṁpunga huo unahitaji kupaliliwa.	That rice requires weeding.
	Tuupalilie kesho.	Let's weed it tomorrow.
	Tusiupalilie leo.	Let's not weed it today.
ṁtama	Ṁtama huo unahitaji kupaliliwa.	That millet requires weeding.
	Tuupalilie kesho.	Let's weed it tomorrow.
	Tusiupalilie leo.	Let's not weed it today.
mahindi	Mahindi haya yanahitaji kupaliliwa.	This maize requires weeding.
	Tuyapalilie kesho.	Let's weed it tomorrow.
	Tusiyapalilie leo.	Let's not weed it today.
maharagwe	Maharagwe haya yanahitaji kupaliliwa.	These beans require weeding.
	Tuyapalilie kesho.	Let's weed them tomorrow.
	Tusiyapalilie leo.	Let's not weed them today.
njugu	Njugu hizi zinahitaji kupaliliwa.	These groundnuts require weeding.
	Tuzipalilie kesho.	Let's weed them tomorrow.
	Tusizipalilie leo.	Let's not weed them today.

muhogo	Muhogo huo unahitaji kupaliliwa.	This cassava requires weeding.
	Tuupalilie kesho.	Let's weed it tomorrow.
	Tusiupalilie leo.	Let's not weed it today.

Conversation Starters

1. Discuss agricultural practices in the part of Africa in which you are most interested.

Unit 76

1. Basic Dialogue. Boy or Girl?

Adija	
Bibiye amepata m̀toto wa kiume au wa kike?	Did his wife have a boy or a girl?
Hamisi	
M̀toto wa kiume.	A boy.
Adija	
Je, hawajambo?	Are they all right?
Hamisi	
m̀gongo (MI)	back
Hawajambo, lakini mama aumwa m̀gongo.	They're all right, but the mother's back is hurting her.
Adija	
kujifungua	to release oneself
Pengine ni kwa sababu ya kujifungua.	Maybe it's because of delivering the baby.
Hamisi	
nafuu (N)	advantage
Atapata nafuu tu.	She'll recover.
Adija	
M̀toto mwenyewe ana matata?	How is the baby himself?
Hamisi	
fujo (MA)	disturbance

wala	nor, neither
matata (pl. MA)	complications
M̀zuri sana. Hana fujo wala matata.	Very fine. He has no trouble or complications.

Notes

A. Wala between negatives.

Wala either is both preceded and followed by a negative verb, or it joins two nouns which are in parallel relation to the same negative verb. See the exercises for further examples.

2.

A. Some special forms for possessives with family relationships.

m̀ke	M̀keo anapata nafuu?	Is your wife recovering?
bibi	Bibi yako anapata nafuu?	Is your wife recovering?
m̀toto	M̀toto wako anapata nafuu?	Is your child recovering?
baba	Baba yako anapata nafuu?	Is your father recovering?
mama	Mama yako anapata nafuu?	Is your mother recovering?
mume	Mumeo anapata nafuu? (or: Bwana wako...)	Is your husband recovering?
ndugu	Nduguyo anapata nafuu?	Is your brother recovering?
dada	Dadio anapata nafuu? (or: Dada yako...)	Is your sister recovering?

B. Wala

taa	Sina taa wala mafuta.	I have neither lamp nor oil.
chai	Sina chai wala kahawa.	I have neither tea nor coffee.
baiskeli	Sina baiskeli wala motakaa.	I have neither bicycle nor automobile.

C.

kiti	Wanafunzi hawana viti wala meza.	The students have neither chairs nor tables.
kitabu	Wanafunzi hawana vitabu wala kalamu.	The students have neither books nor pens.
mwalimu	Wanafunzi hawana mwalimu wala shule.	The students have neither teacher nor school.

D.

kusoma	Wanaume hawa hawajui kusoma wala kuandika.	These men know neither reading nor writing.
Kiingereza	Wanaume hawa hawajui Kiingereza wala Kiswahili.	These men know neither English nor Swahili.

3.

A. Concords, including relative forms of verbs.

kitabu	Nilinunua kitabu juzi.	I bought a book the day before yesterday.
	Kitabu nilichonunua juzi ni kibaya. (or: ...nilichokinunua...)	The book which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.
baiskeli	Nilinunua baiskeli juzi.	I bought a bicycle the day before yesterday.
	Baiskeli niliyonunua juzi ni mbaya.	The bicycle which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.
visu	Nilinunua visu juzi.	I bought knives the day before yesterday.
	Visu nilivyonunua juzi ni vibaya.	The knives which I bought the day before yesterday are bad.

mafuta	Nilinunua mafuta juzi.	I bought oil the day before yesterday.
	Mafuta niliyonunua juzi ni mabaya.	The oil which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.
jembe	Nilinunua jembe juzi.	I bought a hoe the day before yesterday.
	Jembe nililonunua juzi ni baya.	The hoe which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.
nanasi	Nilinunua nanasi juzi.	I bought a pineapple the day before yesterday.
	Nanasi nililonunua juzi ni baya.	The pineapple which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.
ndizi	Nilinunua ndizi juzi.	I bought bananas the day before yesterday.
	Ndizi nilizonunua juzi ni mbaya.	The bananas which I bought the day before yesterday are bad.
wino	Nilinunua wino juzi.	I bought some ink the day before yesterday.
	Wino nilionunua juzi ni mbaya.	The ink which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.

taa vitunguu maharagwe

Unit 77

1. Basic Dialogue. Prenatal care.

Mirambo

m̀ja m̀zito	a pregnant person
-tunza	to care for
Mama m̀ja m̀zito hutunzwaje?	How is a pregnant woman cared for?

Mohamed

Hupelekwa hospitalini akiwa karibu kujifungua.	She is taken to the hospital when she is about to deliver.

Mirambo

M̀le anafanya nini?	What does she do in there?

Mohamed

-pima	to measure, examine
Bwana daktari hum̀pima na kum̀pa dawa.	The doctor examines her and gives her medicine.
-lisha	to feed ('cause to eat')
Pia hum̀pa chakula cha kum̀lisha m̀toto.	She is also given food for nourishing the child.

Mirambo

tunzo (MA)	care
Wanapata matunzo safi?	Do they get good care?

Mohamed

-pum̀zika	to rest
Sana, hata mapum̀ziko.	Very much so. [They] even [get a lot of] rest.

Notes

A. Sequence of verbs joined by *na*.

daktari hum̀pima na kum̀pa dawa	the doctor examines her and gives her medicine

Here, the single subject word *daktari* is followed by two verbs, the stems of which are -*pima* and -*pa*. Where the action of the second verb is not clearly the goal or result of the action of the first, the second is in the infinitive form, following *na* 'and'.

2.

A. Causative stems based on -*la* and -*nywa*.

↓	Usim̀lishe m̀toto!	Don't feed the child!
kunywesha	Usim̀nyweshe m̀toto!	Don't give the child anything to drink!
watoto	Usiwanyweshe watoto!	Don't give the children anything to drink!
kulisha	Usiwalishe watoto!	Don't feed the children!

B. Subjunctive with -*ka*- after -*enda*.

kukaa	Kaa kitako upum̀zike.	Sit down and rest.
kwenda	Nenda nyumbani ukapum̀zike.	Go home and rest.
kuingia	Ingia nyumbani upum̀zike.	Get into the house and rest.

C. Passive stem based on -*pa*.

kalamu	Wanafunzi walipewa kalamu zao.	The pupils were given their pens.
vitabu	Wanafunzi walipewa vitabu vyao.	The pupils were given their books.
viti	Wanafunzi walipewa viti vyao.	The pupils were given their chairs.

4

meza	Wanafunzi walipewa meza zao.	The pupils were given their tables.

D. -tunza.

watoto	Kazi yangu ilikuwa kutunza watoto.	My job was to care for children.
ng'ombe	Kazi yangu ilikuwa kutunza ng'ombe.	My job was to care for cows.
nguruwe	Kazi yangu ilikuwa kutunza nguruwe.	My job was to care for pigs.
taa zetu zote	Kazi yangu ilikuwa kutunza taa zetu zote.	My job was to care for all our lamps.

3.

A. MU and KU locative concords with subject prefixes and demonstratives.

hospitali	Hospitalini m̀nafanywa nini? M̀le wagonjwa wanatunzwa.	What is done in the hospital? There patients are cared for.
shule	Shuleni m̀nafanywa nini? M̀le wanafunzi wanasomeshwa.	What is done in the school? There pupils are taught.
soko	Sokoni kunafanywa nini? Kule vyakula vinauzwa.	What is done at the market? There (foodstuffs) are sold.
pwani	Pwani kunafanywa nini? Kule watu wanaogelea.	What is done at the beach? There people swim.

Unit 78

1. Basic Dialogue. Post-natal care. (cont'd from Unit 77)

Mirambo

Wakiisha kuzaa wanakaa hospitalini?	When they have finished delivering, do they stay in the hospital?

Mohamed

Ndiyo, kwa siku chache tu.	Yes, for just a few days.

Mirambo

-lia	to cry
M̀toto akilia, hupewa chakula?	When the baby cries, is it given food?

Mohamed

-changa	young
-nyonya	to suck
Akiwa m̀changa sana, mama hum̀nyonyesha.	If it is very young, the mother nurses it.

Mirambo

hasa	exactly, very much
Hasa, ni chakula gani watoto hupenda?	Just what food do babies like?

Mohamed

Kwa kawaida, maziwa.	In general, milk.

Mirambo

-beba	to carry a child on back or hip
Kwenu mama hubeba watoto?	At your place does the mother carry the children on her back?

Mohamed

mbavuni	by the ribs
mbeleko (N)	cloth or sling for carrying a child
Ndiyo, huwabeba m̀gongoni, au mbavuni katika mbeleko.	Yes, they carry them on [their] back[s] or on [their] hip[s] in a sling.

2.

A. -lilia.

nini?	M̀toto analilia nini?	What is the child crying for?
chakula	M̀toto analilia chakula.	The child is crying for food.
maziwa	M̀toto analilia maziwa.	The child is crying for milk.
mama	M̀toto anam̀lilia mama.	The child is crying for the mother.

chai baba sukari Hamisi

B. Negative imperative.

kuliza	Usim̀lize m̀toto!	Don't make the child cry.
kunyonyesha	Usim̀nyonyeshe m̀toto.	Don't nurse the child.
kulisha	Usim̀lishe m̀toto.	Don't feed the child.
kupa	Usim̀pe m̀toto kisu!	Don't give the child a knife.

C. KU locative: concords with various possessive stems.

ninyi	Kwenu ni wapi?	Where is your (pl.) home?
wewe	Kwako ni wapi?	Where is your (sg.) home?
yeye	Kwake ni wapi?	Where is his/her home?
wao	Kwao ni wapi?	Where is their home?

D. PA locative concord with various possessive stems.

sisi	Hapa ni petu.	This is our home.
mimi	Hapa ni pangu.	This is my home.
wao	Hapa ni pao.	This is their home.
yeye	Hapa ni pake.	This is his home.

3.

A. -kwisha plus verb stem vs. negative imperative.

kulisha	Usim̀lishe m̀toto! Amekwisha lishwa na dada yake.	Don't feed the child! It has already been fed by its sister.
kunywesha	Usim̀nyonyeshe m̀toto! Amekwisha nyonyeshwa na mama yake.	Don't nurse the child! It has already been nursed by its mother.
kuliza	Usim̀lize m̀toto! Amekwisha lizwa.	Don't make the child cry! It has already been made to cry.
kupa chakula	Usim̀pe m̀toto chakula. Amekwisha pewa na mama yake.	Don't give the child food! It has already been given food by its mother.

Conversation Starters

1. A and B compare notes on the problems of pre- and post-natal care in Africa and in the United States.

Unit 79

1. Basic Dialogue. When are you getting married?

Magese	
-oa	to marry
Utaoa lini, Ochieng?	When are you going to get married Ochieng?
Ochieng	
m̀chumba	boy/girl friend, fiancé(e)
Wakati m̀chumba wangu atakaporudi.	At the time when my fiancée returns.
Magese	
Kwani yuko wapi?	Oh? Where is she?
Ochieng	
Alikwenda kusomesha huko upande wa Kisumu.	She went to teach in the region of Kisumu.
Magese	
mahari	lobola, dowry
Umelipa mahari au bado?	Have you paid the dowry or not (yet)?
Ochieng	
-ngoja	to wait
Bado. Nam̀ngoja arudi.	Not yet. I'm waiting for her to return.
Magese	
-kubali	to agree
Wazazi wako na wake wamekubali?	Have your parents and hers given their consent?

Ochieng

-zuia	to prevent
Hawawezi kunizuia nisimwoe.	They can't prevent me from marrying her.

Notes

A. Relative future forms with -taka-.

The future tense in its non-relative forms uses -ta- as its tense prefix, but in relative forms uses the disyllabic prefix -taka-.

B. Two verbs that are followed by subjunctive forms.

Note that subjunctive verb forms often follow the verbs -zuia 'to prevent from' and -ngoja 'to wait'. The former is followed by the negative subjunctive.

2.

A. -zuia plus negative subjunctive.

kusema	Huwezi kunizuia nisiseme.	You can't prevent me from talking.
kwenda	Huwezi kunizuia nisiende.	You can't prevent me from going.
kulewa	Huwezi kunizuia nisilewe.	You can't prevent me from being drunk.
kurudi	Huwezi kunizuia nisirudi.	You can't prevent me from coming back.
kuendelea	Huwezi kunizuia nisiendelee.	You can't prevent me from moving on.

B.

kusema	Hamwezi kuwazuia wasiseme.	You can't prevent them from talking.
kula	Hamwezi kuwazuia wasile.	You can't prevent them from eating.

kuelewa kujifunza kusikitika

C.

kuona	Hatuwezi kuwazuia wasimwone.	We can't prevent them from seeing him.
kusaidia	Hatuwezi kuwazuia wasimsaidie.	We can't prevent them from helping him.

kusikia kupenda kupiga

D. -ngoja plus subjunctive.

kusema	Hatutakungoja useme.	We'll not wait for you to speak.
kwanza	Hatutakungoja uanze.	We'll not wait for you to begin.

kwenda kujitayarisha kurudi

E. Verb phrase with -wa.

kusema	Ali alikuwa akiningoja niseme.	Ali was waiting for me to speak.
kuja	Ali alikuwa akiningoja nije.	Ali was waiting for me to come.

kufuata kutangulia kumaliza kuingia

3.

A. -ja- negative vs. affirmative subjunctive.

Bado hajasema. Tutamngoja aseme.	He hasn't spoken yet. We'll wait for him to speak.
Bado sijasema. Tutakungoja useme.	I haven't spoken yet. We'll wait for you to speak.
Bado hawajasema. Tutawangoja waseme.	They haven't spoken yet. We'll wait for them to speak.
Bado hajaenda. Tutamngoja aende.	He hasn't gone yet. We'll wait for him to go.

B. Infinitive *vs.* negative subjunctive.

kisu	Nataka kukinunua kisu hiki. Usijaribu kunizuia nisikinunue.	I want to buy this knife. Don't try to prevent me from buying it.
vitabu	Nataka kuvinunua vitabu hivi. Usijaribu kunizuia nisivinunue.	I want to buy these books. Don't try to prevent me from buying them.
mbegu	Nataka kuzinunua mbegu hizi. Usijaribu kunizuia nisizinunue.	I want to buy these seeds. Don't try to prevent me from buying it.

sanduku ng'ombe nguruwe m̊kate mikate m̊mea mimea

Unit 80

1. Basic Dialogue. Come along to the wedding!

Ochieng

wiki (N)	week
Je, ndugu yangu, wajua kwamba nitaoa wiki ijayo?	Say, brother, do you know I'm going to get married next week?

Magese

Kweli? Hiyo sijasikia bado.	Really? I hadn't heard (yet).
harusi (N) (or: arusi)	wedding
Harusi itakuwa siku gani?	What day will the wedding be?

Ochieng

kutwa	to set (of the sun)
Kesho kutwa, bwana.	The day after tomorrow.

Magese

-unga	to join
(-ungana)	to join one another
Nani atakayewaunganisheni?	Who is going to marry you? ('...to cause you to join one another')

Ochieng

kasisi (MA pers.)	clergyman, priest
Kasisi Kamau.	The Reverend Mr. Kamau.

Magese

-fika	to arrive

-shangilia	to make rejoicings for
Nitafika kuwashangilieni.	I'll be there to cheer for you.
-simama	to stand up
Nani ambao watawasimamieni?	Who will stand up with you?

Cchieng

mume (pl. waume)	husband
Dada yangu na mumewe.	My sister and her husband.

Notes

A. Relative phrases with amba-.

Certain tenses do not take the relative affix at all. Instead they form relative phrases in the following manner:

amba, plus rel. affix, plus indicative verb

vitabu ambavyo hujaviuza	the books that you haven't sold yet

Even tenses which may take the relative affix sometimes form relative phrases in this way. See the exercises for further examples.

B. Object affix(es) for second person plural.

The object pronouns for first and third person singular and plural, and for second person singular, are simple in form and are used all over the Swahili speaking area. The second person plural object prefix is different in both ways: it is variously represented in different forms of Swahili (see Ashton, p. 42 for details); it also involves both a prefixial element (identical with the 3 plu. or 2 sg. object prefix) and a suffixed element. For examples of one variant, see the exercises.

2.

A. Second person plural object.

kupa	Haruna hataki kuwapeni kalamu zenu.	Haruna does not want to give your pens to you.

kuletea	Haruna hataki kuwaleteeni kalamu zenu.	Haruna does not want to bring your pens to you.

kuonyesha kupatia kutengenezea kurudishia

B. Relative forms with amba- -o.

kusoma	Nitavisoma vitabu ambavyo sijaviuza.	I'll read the books which I haven't sold.
kuleta	Nitavileta vitabu ambavyo sijaviuza.	I'll bring the books which I haven't sold.
kupa	Nitakupa vitabu ambavyo sijaviuza.	I'll give you the books which I haven't sold.
kuonyesha	Nitavionyesha vitabu ambavyo sijaviuza.	I'll show the books which I haven't sold.

C.

vitabu	Nenda ukavichukue vitabu ambavyo hujaviuza.	Go and get the books which you haven't sold.
vitu	Nenda ukavichukue vitu ambavyo hujaviuza.	Go and get the things which you haven't sold.
wino	Nenda ukauchukue wino ambao hujauuza.	Go and get the ink which you haven't sold.
kalamu	Nenda ukaichukue kalamu ambayo hujaiuza.	Go and get the pen which you haven't sold.
jembe	Nenda ukalichukue jembe ambalo hujaliuza.	Go and get the hoe which you haven't sold.
mazao	Nenda ukayachukue mazao ambayo hujayauza.	Go and get the crops which you haven't sold.
m̂kate	Nenda ukauchukue m̂kate ambao hujauuza.	Go and get the loaf of bread which you haven't sold.

mimea	Nenda ukaichukue mimea ambayo hujaiuza.	Go and get the plants which you haven't sold.

3.

A.

vikombe	Nimeleta vikombe. Vikombe ambavyo umeleta ni vingapi?	I have brought cups. ('The cups which you have brought, how many are they?')
visahani	Nimeleta visahani. Visahani ambavyo umeleta ni vingapi?	I have brought saucers. How many saucers have you brought?

kalamu sindano majembe mikate mimea wapagazi

wanafunzi

Conversation Starters

1. What kind of woman (man) would you like to marry? (This topic is one which allows ample opportunity for the use of the relative forms of verbs.)

Reading Selection III

Shule za Tanganyika Zamani.

N̊chini Tanganyika m̊likuwa shule za nam̊na tatu hasa. Zile zilizoendeshwa na serikali, misheni, na pia wenyeji. Shule hizo zote zilikuwa na madarasa kutoka ya chini kabisa m̊paka ya juu. Lakini zile za wenyeji zilifikia madarasa ya katikati tu, kwa sababu baadaye wanafunzi waliingia zile nyingine.

Watoto walianza masomo yao yote katika lugha ya Kiswahili. Hawakujifunza katika lugha za makabila yao. Walipofika darasa la tano, yaani baada ya kusoma kwa muda wa miaka min̊ne, walianza kujifunza Kiingereza. Lugha mbili zilianza kutumiwa. Baadaye masomo yalikuwa katika Kiswahili na Kiingereza; halafu mafunzo yote yalikuwa katika Kiingereza tu m̊paka mwanafunzi alipohitimu na kuendelea na masomo ya juu katika chuo kikuu.

Katika shule za chini, watoto walianza kuhudhuria shule walipokuwa na umri wa miaka sita au saba. Lakini sasa wengi huanza kusoma wakiwa na umri wa miaka mitano hivi. Shule nyingi za chini hazikuwa za serikali kwa kawaida. Zamani kidogo watoto wachache walipata nafasi ya kusoma na kuandika, lakini sasa kwa ajili ya juhudi kuu iliyofanywa na wakuu wa Idara ya Elimu watoto wengi wanaelimishwa kila mwaka. Wingi wao unazidi sana mwaka kwa mwaka kwa jinsi ambavyo hata shule za juu zinashindwa kuwapokea wote. Skuli hizo ndogo ndogo, ambazo wakati mwingine ziliitwa 'shule za vijijini' zilikuwa na madarasa ya kwanza man̊ne tu. M̊kuu wa walimu waliofundisha humo aliitwa Mwalimu M̊kuu, na ndiye aliyesimamia na kuendesha shule za vijijini.

yaani	that is to say	wingi (U)	majority, number
juhudi (N)	effort, exertion	funzo (MA)	(course of) instruction
-elimisha	to educate	zamani	time past
jinsi (N, but often used with concords of VI)	way, manner	-shinda	to overcome
		-pokea	to accept
		-simamia	to oversee, supervise

Questions and Answers over Reading Selection

Questions	Sample Answers
1. Ǹchini Tanganyika mlikuwa na shule za nam̀na ngapi?	Mlikuwa na shule za nam̀na tatu hasa.
2. Shule hizo ni zipi?	Zile zilizoendeshwa na serikali, misheni, na wenyeji.
3. Je, shule hizo zilikuwa na madarasa m̀paka ya juu?	Ndiyo, lakini za wenyeji zilikuwa na madarasa m̀paka ya katikati tu.
4. Je, wanafunzi katika shule za wenyeji waliingia zile nyingine?	Ndiyo, waliingia.
5. Watoto walianza masomo yao katika lugha za makabila yao?	Hapana, bwana, mafunzo yote yalikuwa katika Kiswahili.
6. Je, Kiingereza?	Kiingereza! Watoto walijifunza walipofika darasa la tano.
7. Lugha gani zilitumiwa katika mafunzo baada ya kujifunza Kiingereza?	Kiingereza.
8. Watoto walianza shule wakiwa wakiwa na umri gani?	Miaka sita au saba, lakini sasa wengi huwa na miaka mitano hivi.
9. Skuli zote za chini zilikuwa za serikali?	La, nyingine zilikuwa za misheni na za wenyeji.
10. Watoto wachache wanapata nafasi ya kusoma na kuandika?	La, zamani kidogo. Lakini sasa wanaelimishwa wengi mwaka kwa mwaka.

11. Skuli ndogo ndogo ziliitwaje?	Wakati mwingine ziliitwa 'shule za vijijini'.
12. Shule za vijijini zilikuwa na madarasa mengi?	Hapana, zilikuwa na madarasa ya kwanza maǹne tu.
13. M̀kuu wa walimu aliitwa Mwalimu M̀kuu?	Ndiyo.
14. Mwalimu M̀kuu alisimamia shule za vijijini?	Ndiyo, pia aliziendesha.

Review Sentences, Units 1 - 80

1.	Juma aliwapatieni pesa ngapi?	How much money did Juma get them?
2.	Watu wengi wa nchi hii hunywa kahawa nyingi.	Many people of this country drink a lot of coffee.
3.	Unaweza kuitengeneza baiskeli hii?	Can you fix this bicycle?
4.	Siwezi, lakini nitaipeleka kwa fundi.	I can't, but I'll take it to the repairman.
5.	Maduka mengi huuza nguo na mengine huuza vyakula.	Many shops sell clothes, and others food.
6.	Afrika ya mashariki ni nchi nzuri sana.	East Africa is a very beautiful country.
7.	Wenyeji wa nchi hiyo huongea lugha mbali mbali.	The natives of that country speak various languages.
8.	Wanajenga nyumba zao kwa miti na udongo.	They build their houses of sticks and mud.
9.	Akifika jioni ya leo, tutamrudisha nyumbani kwao.	If he arrives this evening, we will have him go back home.
10.	Katika mji wa Dar kuna ofisi za Serikali.	In the city of Dar es Salaam there are government offices.
11.	Mpatieni nguo za kutosha.	Get him enough clothes.
12.	Nenda ukamwambie ya kwamba mimi siji.	Go tell him that I'm not coming.

13.	Mwanafunzi akisoma sana anahitimu mitihani.	A student, if he studies a lot, passes the examinations.
14.	Hawapendi nyama wala maziwa.	They don't like milk or meat.
15.	Atakaporudi atahudhuria kanisani.	When he gets back, he will attend church.
16.	Tukatembee huko pwani.	Let's go walk along the beach.
17.	Umepanda nini shambani mwako?	What have you raised on your farm?
18.	Nguo ambazo ulinunua juzi zimefika leo.	The clothes you bought the day before yesterday have arrived today.
19.	Kitabu ndicho ninachotaka.	A book is what I want.
20.	Mwambie kwamba matata yamekwisha.	Tell him that the trouble is over.
21.	Harusi yake itakuwa siku ya Jumamosi.	His wedding will be on Saturday.
22.	Nikipata pesa nitanunua motakaa.	If I get the money, I'll buy a car.
23.	Huo ulikuwa mwisho wa dansi.	That was the end of the dance.
24.	Walimu walifika shuleni kitambo.	The teachers got to school early.
25.	Usichanganye unga na maji.	Don't mix the meal with water.
26.	Nataka msaada wa pesa.	I want financial assistance.
27.	Watu wanaofanya kazi ya upishi wanaitwa wapishi.	People who do culinary work are called cooks.
28.	Ye yote atakayeniuliza mwambie aningoje.	Whoever asks for me, tell him to wait for me.

29.	Alikaa hapa kwa muda wa saa moja hivi.	He stayed here for about an hour.
30.	Kama akija, atatupigia simu.	If he comes, he will call us up.
31.	Kumbuka kumsalimia Bwana Hasani.	Remember to say hello to Hasani.
32.	Watakapofika tutasafiri mpaka Mbeya.	When they get here, we will make a trip to Mbeya.
33.	Pole, utapata nafuu.	Take it easy, you'll get better.
34.	Walimshangilia mkubwa wao alipofika.	They greeted their leader noisily when he arrived.
35.	Baba yake amepona, sasa hajambo.	His father recovered; he's all right now.
36.	Mtoto anapolia anataka kunyonya.	When a child cries, it wants to nurse.
37.	Ana wasiwasi juu ya mguu wake uliovimba.	He's worried about his swollen foot.
38.	Yafaa kuzuia magonjwa kwa kutumia dawa.	It's a good idea to prevent diseases through the use of medicine.
39.	Wapatieni vitu wanavyotaka ili waondoke.	Get them the things they want, so that they may go.
40.	Kile ndicho kitabu ninachokisoma.	That one there is the book I am reading.

Unit 81

1. Basic Dialogue. Getting into town from the airport.

Abasi

m̀zigo (MI)	load
Mizigo yangu ni tayari sasa.	My luggage ('loads') is ready now.
kwenye	which has/where there is
Tafadhali, ichukue m̀paka kwenye teksi.	Please take it to the taxi stand.
piga	to strike, hit
simu	telephone, telegraph
Kwanza, nataka kupiga simu.	First, I want to make a phone call (or: to send a telegram)

- - - - - - - - -

Hamisi

Bwana, unataka teksi?	Do you want a taxi, sir?

Abasi

Ndiyo. Bei gani kutoka hapa m̀paka m̀jini?	Yes. How much from here to downtown?

Hamisi

Itaonyeshwa na mita. Una mizigo mingapi?	It is shown by the meter. How many bags have you?

Abasi

~eusi	black
~ekundu	red

Nina miwili mikubwa myeusi, na m̀moja mwekundu.	I have two big black ones, and one red one.
~zito	heavy
Mwekundu ni m̀dogo, lakini ni m̀zito sana.	The red one is small, but it is very heavy.

Notes

A. The stem ~enye.

mahali penye teksi	a place where there are taxis
kahawa yenye sukari	coffee with sugar in it
kijana mwenye m̀chumba	a young fellow who has a financée

The stem ~enye is used as in these examples. With the ku concord it is frequently used without an antecedent, as in the basic dialogue for this unit.

2.

A. ~enye; concords with ~wili 'two'.

nyumba	Tulifika kwenye nyumba mbili.	We arrived where there were two houses.
mti	Tulifika kwenye miti miwili.	We arrived where there were two trees.
shule	Tulifika kwenye shule mbili.	We arrived where there were two schools.

jumba shamba hoteli

B. Concords with ~ingine and ~eusi.

vitabu	Vitabu vingine ni vyeusi.	Some books are black.
kitu	Kitu kingine ni cheusi.	Some thing is black. (or: the other thing...)
meza	Meza nyingine ni nyeusi.	Some tables are black.
baiskeli	Baiskeli nyingine ni nyeusi.	Some bicycles are black.
nguo	Nguo nyingine ni nyeusi.	Some clothes are black.

wino	Wino mwingine ni mweusi.	Some ink is black.

C. Concords with ~ingine and ~ekundu.

kitabu	Vitabu vingine ni vyekundu.	The other books are red.
tunda	Tunda jingine ni jekundu.	The other piece of fruit is red.

baiskeli nguo wino

D. Concords with ~ingine and ~zito.

m̀zigo	Mizigo mingine ni mizito.	Some luggage is heavy.
barua	Barua nyingine ni nzito.	Some letters are heavy.
jembe	Majembe mengine ni mazito.	Some hoes are heavy.

meza jiko kiti kitabu

3.

A. -po- as an equivalent for 'when.'

kusema	Alikuwa akisema. Nilifika alipokuwa akisema.	He was speaking. I arrived while he was speaking.
kusoma	Alikuwa akisoma. Nilifika alipokuwa akisoma.	He was reading. I arrived when he was reading.
kufanya	Alikuwa akifanya kazi. Nilifika alipokuwa akifanya kazi.	He was working. I arrived when he was working.
kula	Alikuwa akila. Nilifika alipokuwa akila.	He was eating. I arrived when he was eating.

B.

kurudi	Bado hajarudi. Atakaporudi, nitakwenda naye.	He hasn't returned yet. When he returns I'll go with him.

kumaliza	Bado hajamaliza kazi yake. Atakapomaliza kazi yake nitakwenda naye.	He hasn't finished his work yet. When he finishes his work I'll go with him.
kuingia	Bado hajaingia nyumbani. Atakapoingia nyumbani nitakwenda naye.	He hasn't entered the house yet. When he enters the house, I'll go with him.
kuondoka	Bado hajaondoka. Atakapoondoka, nitakwenda naye.	He hasn't left yet. When he leaves I'll go with him.
giza	Giza halijaingia. Giza litakapoingia, tutawasha taa.	It is not dark yet. When it gets dark, we will light the lamps.
teksi	Teksi haijafika. Teksi itakapofika, tutakwenda.	The taxi hasn't arrived. When the taxi arrives, we will go.
mvua	Mvua haijanyesha. Mvua itakaponyesha tutapanda mbegu.	It hasn't rained yet. When the rain falls, we will plant seeds.

Unit 82

1. Basic Dialogue. A trip to Tanga.

Sangai

Ninakusudia kusafiri Tanga kesho.	I'm planning to make a trip to Tanga tomorrow.

Magese

nauli (N)	fare
kiasi (KI sg. only)	amount
Nauli ya kutoka hapa m̀paka Tanga ni kiasi gani?	How much is the fare from here to Tanga?

Sangai

Ni shilingi thelathini na mbili.	It's 32 shillings.

Magese

Utakapofika Korogwe utashuka?	Are you going to get off (to disembark) when you get to Korogwe?

Sangai

La. Nitakwenda moja kwa moja.	No, I'm going to go straight on.
abiria (N-an.)	passenger
˜refu	long, tall
mwendo (MI)	journey
Kwa gari ni mwendo wa siku moja tu. Si m̀refu.	By bus it is a trip of only one day. It's not long.

Magese

Vema. Ujaliwapo kufika nisalimie jamaa.	Good! If you are helped (i.e. by God) to arrive, give my regards

to (your) family.

- - - - - - - - -

2.

A. Some sentences containing nijaliwapo.

kufika	Nijaliwapo kufika Tanga nitakuwa na furaha.	If I am helped to arrive at Tanga, I will be happy.
kuhitimu	Nijaliwapo kuhitimu masomo nitakuwa na furaha.	If I am helped to finish my education, I will be happy.
kupata	Nijaliwapo kupata mavuno mazuri nitakuwa na furaha.	If I am helped to get a good harvest, I will be happy.

B. -shuka katika-.

gari	Shukeni katika gari!	Get off the train!
motakaa	Shukeni katika motakaa!	Get out of the car!
baiskeli	Shukeni katika baiskeli!	Get off the bicycle!
m̀ti	Shukeni katika m̀ti!	Get down from the tree!

C. Things that can be ~refu.

mwendo	Mwendo ule ni m̀refu.	That is a long journey.
m̀kate	M̀kate ule ni m̀refu.	That loaf of bread is long.
m̀toto	M̀toto yule ni m̀refu.	That child is tall.
mwanam̀ke	Mwanam̀ke yule ni m̀refu.	That lady is tall.
jembe	Jembe lile ni refu.	That hoe is long.
gari la moshi	Gari la moshi lile ni refu.	That train is long.
ndizi	Ndizi zile ni ndefu.	Those bananas are long.

D. Sentences containing another form of -jalia.

kufika	Ujaliwe kufika Tanga.	May you be helped to reach Tanga.
kupata	Ujaliwe kupata mimea mizuri.	May you be helped to get good crops.
kuhitimu	Ujaliwe kuhitimu m̀tihani wako.	May you be helped to pass your examination.
kupona	Ujaliwe kupona homa yako.	May you be helped to recover from your fever.

3. A and B discuss a trip that one of them has taken recently, to see a friend of his get married.

Unit 83

1. Basic Dialogue. How much is the basket?

Adija

kikapu (VI)	basket
Kikapu hiki kidogo ni bei gani?	How much is this little basket?

Mr. Patel

Shilingi mbili na senti hamsini.	Two shillings and fifty cents.

Adija

-punguza	to make less
Nakitaka, lakini nipunguzie kidogo.	I want it, but reduce it a little for me.

Mr. Patel

Ah! Hiyo ndiyo bei yake.	Ah! That is its price.

Adija

Ndiyo, lakini nitakupa shilingi moja tu.	Yes, but I'll give you just one shilling.

Mr. Patel

Shilingi moja ni kidogo sana!	One shilling is very low.

Adija

-dhuru	to harm
Haidhuru. Nitakupa shilingi moja na senti kumi.	No matter. I'll give you 1.10.

(to be continued)

2. This entire series of exercises, involving the comparison of numbers, should be done orally with books closed. The exercises are printed chiefly as a guide to the tutor.

A. Which of the prices is greater - the first or the second?

a.	1s - 3s	shilingi moja	-	shilingi tatu	tatu
	2s - 3s	shilingi mbili	-	shilingi tatu	tatu
	3s - 6s	shilingi tatu	-	shilingi sita	sita
	6s - 3s	shilingi sita	-	shilingi tatu	sita
	4s - 6s	shilingi ǹne	-	shilingi sita	sita

f. 4s - 5s
7s - 4s
7s - 6s
8s - 9s
9s - 6s

k. 8s - 10s
7s - 5s
6s - 4s
9s - 10s
10s - 11s

p. 8s - 7s
7s - 9s
3s - 5s
5s - 9s
8s - 4s

3.

A. Of each set of three numbers, which is greatest?

a.	3-5-7	tatu - tano - saba	saba
	4-2-3	ǹne - mbili - tatu	ǹne
	6-7-5	sita - saba - tano	saba
	1-3-2	moja - tatu - mbili	tatu
	8-4-5	nane - ǹne - tano	nane

f. 3-6-5
9-8-7
4-8-3
2-4-8
7-6-5

k. 9-10-11
7-6-8
5-3-4
2-6-9
6-4-7

p. 4-3-5
8-9-7
6-9-7
8-4-6
3-5-1

Unit 84

1. Basic Dialogue. Settling on a price. (continued)

Patel

Ah! Siuzi. Ukitaka toa shilingi moja na senti ishirini na tano...	Ah, I won't sell, but if you want to pay 1.25...

Adija

ghali	expensive
Ndiyo lakini naona ni ghali, bado.	Yes, but it seems to me it is still high.

Patel

mwisho (MI)	end
Utatoa kiasi gani, mwisho wako?	What amount will you give, your last price?

Adija

Nitakupa shilingi moja na senti kumi na tano.	I'll give you $1.15.

Patel

rahisi	cheap
Vema. Kwako tu. Lakini ni rahisi sana.	All right. Only for you. But it's very cheap.

Adija

-shika	to grasp, hold fast
Vema. Shika shilingi mbili na nirudishie =/85 cts.	Fine. Take these two shillings and give me back 85 cts.

2.

A. Practice in imitation, reading, and dictation.

5 cts.
10 cts.
15 cts.
20 cts.
25 cts.
30 cts.
35 cts.
40 cts.
45 cts.
50 cts.
55 cts.
60 cts.
65 cts.
70 cts.
75 cts.
80 cts.
85 cts.
90 cts.
95 cts.
1s
1.10
1.25
1.30
1.50

B.

shs. 1.25
shs. 1.50
shs. 1.75
shs. 2.00
shs. 2.20
shs. 2.40
shs. 2.60
shs. 2.80
shs. 3.00
shs. 3.15
shs. 3.35
shs. 3.55
shs. 3.75
shs. 3.95
shs. 4.00
shs. 4.20
shs. 5.40
shs. 6.60
shs. 7.80
shs. 8.25
shs. 9.50

3.

In each part of these exercises, two prices are given, followed by a third. In most instances, the third is between the first and the second. Try to pick out the instances when it is not. In subsequent use of the exercise, listen to the first two prices and try to quote a middle price.

A. Higher, lower, split the difference:

shs. 10	shs. 8	shs. 9
9	7	8
8	6	7
7	5	6
6	4	9
5	3	4
4	2	3

shs. 3	shs. 1	shs. 0.20
10	7	8.50
8	5	6.50
6	3	4.50
4	1	2.50
5	2	6
7	4	5.50
2	1	1.50
1.50	0.50	1.00

B. Lower, higher, split the difference:

sh. 1.00	shs. 3	shs. 2
shs. 4.00	8	6
6.00	10	8
0.10 cts.	0.30 cts.	0.20 cts.
0.20 cts.	0.30 cts.	0.25 cts.
0.50 cts.	1.00	1.75
1.00	2.00	1.50

4.

Simulate bargaining involving several exchanges of quoted prices, for:

	(usual selling price)
a large basket	shs. 3.00
a pair of trousers	shs. 45.00
3 yards of cloth	shs. 15.00
a pair of shoes	shs. 45.00
a shirt	shs. 24.00
a loaf of bread	0.60 cts.

Unit 85

1. Basic Dialogue. Settling on a price (concluded).

Patel

-vunja	to break
Nasikitika, sina senti za kuvunja.	I'm sorry, I can't change (it).

Adija

Tutafanya nini sasa?	What shall we do now?
Ikiwa huwezi kuvunja utaniuziaje kile kikapu kikubwa?	Inasmuch as you can't change (it), how (much) will you sell me that big basket (for)?

Patel

Kwako wewe, toa hizo shilingi mbili.	For you, pay those two shillings.

Adija

haya	o.k.
Haya, bwana. Nitatoa hizo shilingi mbili. Lakini kesho nikija tena, lázima unipunguzie zaidi.	O.K. (sir) I'll give the two shillings. But if I come again tomorrow, you've got to reduce (your prices) for me more.

Patel

m̀nunuzi (WA)	customer
bila shaka	undoubtedly
Bila shaka! Umekuwa m̀nunuzi wangu m̀kubwa. Nitakuuzia kwa bei nafuu.	No doubt! You've become my great customer. I'll sell to you at a reasonable price.

2.

Try to give the sum of the first two numbers before it is given on the tape.

A.

2 + 1 = 3	Mbili na moja ni	tatu
3 + 1 = 4	Tatu na moja ni	n̂ne
4 + 1 = 5	N̂ne na moja ni	tano
5 + 1 = 6	Tano na moja ni	sita
6 + 1 = 7	Sita na moja ni	saba
7 + 1 = 8	Saba na moja ni	nane
8 + 1 = 9	Nane na moja ni	tisa
9 + 1 = 10	Tisa na moja ni	kumi
10 + 11 = 11	Kumi na moja ni	kumi na moja

2 + 2 = 4
3 + 2 = 5
5 + 2 = 7

6 + 2 = 8
8 + 2 = 10
9 + 2 = 11

2 + 3 = 5
4 + 3 = 7
6 + 3 = 9
9 + 3 = 12

3.

A.

20 + 10 = 30	Ishirini na kumi ni	thelathini
30 + 10 = 40	Thelathini na kumi ni	arobaini
40 + 10 = 50	Arobaini na kumi ni	ham̂sini
50 + 10 = 60	Ham̂sini na kumi ni	sitini
60 + 10 = 70	Sitini na kumi ni	sabini
70 + 10 = 80	Sabini na kumi ni	themanini
80 + 10 = 90	Themanini na kumi ni	tisini
90 + 10 = 100	Tisini na kumi ni	mia

B.

15 + 5 = 20	Kumi na tano, na tano ni	ishirini
25 + 5 = 30	Ishirini na tano, na tano ni	thelathini

35 + 5 = 40   45 + 5 = 50   55 + 5 = 60   65 + 5 = 70

75 + 5 = 30   85 + 5 = 90   95 + 5 = 100

C.

15 + 15 = 30	Kumi na tano na kumi na tano ni	thelathini
25 + 15 = 40	Ishirini na tano na kumi na tano ni	arobaini

45 + 15 = 60   75 + 15 = 90   15 + 25 = 40   25 + 25 = 50

50 + 25 = 75   75 + 25 = 100

D.

3 + 2 = 5	Tatu na mbili ni	tano
50 + 10 = 60	Hamsini na kumi ni	sitini
25 + 5 = 30	Ishirini na tano, na tano ni	thelathini
7 + 2 = 9	Saba na mbili ni	tisa
75 + 15 = 90	Sabini na tano na kumi na tano ni	tisini
25 + 15 = 40	Ishirini na tano na kumi na tano ni	arobaini
35 + 2 = 37	Thelathini na tano na mbili ni	thelathini na saba

8 + 2 = 10   5 + 2 = 7   90 + 10 = 100   4 + 2 = 6   25 + 25 = 50

65 + 15 = 80   25 + 50 = 75   85 + 5 = 90

Unit 86

1. Basic Dialogue. Buying trousers.

Hamisi	
suruali (N)	a pair of trousers
Nataka kununua suruali.	I want to buy a pair of trousers.
Patel	
kipande (VI)	a piece
Suruali ndefu au suruali kipande?	Long trousers, or short?
Hamisi	
Suruali ndefu.	Long (trousers).
Patel	
rangi (N)	color
Wataka suruali ya rangi gani?	What color trousers do you want?
Hamisi	
~eupe	white
Nyeupe.	White ones.
Patel	
kipimo (VI)	measurement
Na vipimo vyako?	And your measurements?
Hamisi	
urefu (U)	length
kiuno (VI)	waist
Kiuno inchi thelathini na mbili, na urefu thelathini na ñne.	Waist 32 inches, and length 34.

Patel

-enea	to fit
Hii inakuenea.	These fit your measurements.

Hamisi

Asante.	Thanks.

- - - - - -

2.

Which is greater?

A.

32 - 34	thelathini na mbili	thelathini na ǹne
44 - 42	arobaini na ǹne	arobaini na mbili
32 - 44	thelathini na mbili	arobaini na ǹne
42 - 34	arobaini na mbili	thelathini na ǹne
54 - 42	ham̀sini na ǹne	arobaini na mbili

35 - 33   73 - 65   65 - 73   84 - 92   77 - 66

B.

21 - 31	ishirini na moja	thelathini na moja
45 - 53	arobaini na tano	ham̀sini na tatu

27 - 18   81 - 41   55 - 65   46 - 43   87 - 86   63 - 65

26 - 27   97 - 96

3.

A.

Try to give the sum before it is given on the tape.

21 + 3 = 24   Ishirini na moja, na tatu   ni   ishirini na ǹne.

31 + 3 = 34 Thelathini na moja, na tatu ni thelathini na ǹne.

61 + 3 = 64 Sitini na moja, na tatu ni sitini na ǹne.

91 + 3 = 94 Tisini na moja, na tatu ni tisini na ǹne.

94 + 3 = 97 76 + 3 = 79 52 + 3 = 55 47 + 3 = 50

35 + 3 = 38

B.

38 + 3 = 41 Thelathini na nane, na tatu ni arobaini na moja

18 + 3 = 21 Kumi na nane, na tatu ni ishirini na moja

19 + 3 = 22 17 + 3 = 20 58 + 3 = 61 57 + 3 = 60

72 + 3 = 75 89 + 3 = 92 99 + 3 = 102 97 + 3 = 100

Unit 87

1. Basic Dialogue. Settling the price of the trousers.

Hamisi	
Bei yake ni pesa (or: shilingi) ngapi, Bwana?	What is the price (of it)?
Patel	
Bei yake ni sh. 7/= na senti 75.	It's 7.75.
Hamisi	
Oh! Hii ni ghali sana!	Oh! That is very high!
Patel	
maarufu	famous
Si ghali sana. Hiyo ni suruali maarufu.	It's not very expensive those are [a] well known [brand of] trousers.
Ni ngumu sana.	They're very tough.
kitambaa (VI)	cloth, material
kisasa (Sg. VI)	modern style
Kitambaa chake ni cha kisasa.	The material (of it) is modern.
Hamisi	
Hapana! Hii ni suruali rahisi tu.	No! These are just cheap trousers!
-raruka	to get torn
-upesi	quickly
Itararuka upesi.	They'll get torn quickly.
Patel	
Lete sh. 6/= basi.	Just pay six shillings.

Hamisi

Hiyo afadhali. Chukua sh. 6/-.	That's more like it. Here's the six shillings.

2.

A. Concords with the demonstrative stem ~le.

masomo	Yale masomo ni rahisi sana.	Those lessons are very easy.
somo	Lile somo ni rahisi sana.	That lesson is very easy.
kazi	Ile kazi ni rahisi sana.	That work is very easy.
nauli	Ile nauli ni rahisi sana.	That fare is very cheap.
kitabu	Kile kitabu ni rahisi sana.	That book is very cheap.
nguo	Ile nguo ni rahisi sana.	That dress is very cheap.
machungwa	Yale machungwa ni rahisi sana.	Those oranges are very cheap.
bei	Ile bei ni rahisi sana.	That price is very cheap.
lugha	Ile lugha ni rahisi sana.	That language is very easy.

B. Concords with the demonstrative h - o.

bei	Bei hiyo ni ghali sana.	That price is very expensive.
nauli	Nauli hiyo ni ghali sana.	That fare is very expensive.
kitabu	Kitabu hicho ni ghali sana.	That book is very expensive.
nguo	Nguo hiyo ni ghali sana.	That dress is very expensive.

C. Concords with ~gumu.

kitambaa	Kitambaa chake ni kigumu sana.	Her handkerchief is very heavy material.
kichwa	Kichwa chake ni kigumu sana.	His head is very hard.
kitabu	Kitabu chake ni kigumu sana.	His book is very difficult.

kazi	Kazi yake ni ngumu sana.	His work is very hard.
m̀tihani	M̀tihani wake ni m̀gumu sana.	His examination is very hard.
moyo	Moyo wake ni m̀gumu sana.	His heart is very hard.
lugha	Lugha yake ni ngumu sana.	His language is very hard.

D. Concords with *~pya*.

suruâli	Suruali yake m̀pya ilikuwa imeraruka.	His new trousers were torn.
nguo	Nguo yake m̀pya ilikuwa imeraruka.	Her new dress was torn.
kitambaa	Kitambaa chake kipya kilikuwa kimeraruka.	His new handkerchief was torn.
vitambaa	Vitambaa vyake vipya vilikuwa vimeraruka.	His new handkerchiefs were torn.
mbeleko	Mbeleko yake m̀pya ilikuwa imeraruka.	Her new mbeleko was torn.
shati	Shati lake jipya lilikuwa limeraruka.	His new shirt was torn.

3.

A. *-raruka* *vs.* *-rarua*.

suruali	Suruali yangu imeraruka. Nani ameirarua?	My trousers are torn. Who has torn them?
nguo	Nguo yangu imeraruka. Nani ameirarua?	My dress is torn. Who has torn it?
kitambaa	Kitambaa changu kimeraruka. Nani amekirarua?	My handkerchief is torn. Who has torn it?
shati	Shati langu limeraruka. Nani amelirarua?	My shirt is torn. Who has torn it?

B. -raruka vs. -raruliwa.

suruali	Suruali yangu imeraruka.	My trousers are torn.
	Imeraruliwa na nani?	By whom?
nguo	Nguo yangu imeraruka.	My dress is torn.
	Imeraruliwa na nani?	By whom was it torn?
mbeleko	Mbeleko yangu imeraruka.	My 'mbeleko' is torn.
	Imeraruliwa na nani?	By whom?
shati	Shati langu limeraruka.	My shirt is torn.
	Limeraruliwa na nani?	By whom?
kitambaa	Kitambaa changu kimeraruka.	My handkerchief is torn.
	Kimeraruliwa na nani?	By whom?

4.

A goes to a shop to buy a pair of trousers. He ends by buying two, but at a reduced price.

C buys a table and four chairs, starting with the table and two chairs.

Unit 88

1. Basic Dialogue. Where is the consulate?

Maina

balozi (MA pers)	consul
Unajua ofisi ya Balozi wa Amerika?	Do you know the American Consulate?

Aramian

Ndiyo, iko karibu na Post Office.	Yes, it's near the post office.

Maina

Nitawezaje kufika huko?	How will I be able to get there?

Aramian

njia panda (N)	intersection (N)
Fuata njia hii m̀paka penye njia panda.	Follow this road to where there is an intersection.
m̀kono wa kulia	right hand
Halafu fuata barabara ya m̀kono wa kulia.	Then follow the road on the right.
m̀taa (MI)	street
m̀kono wa kushoto	left hand
Ufikapo penye njia panda nyingine, fuata m̀taa wa Suleman, m̀kono wa kushoto, na nenda moja kwa moja.	When you get to the next intersection, follow Suleman Street, on the left, and go straight ahead.
-ita	to call
Baadaye utaona hoteli inaitwa 'Cosy Café.'	Then you will see a hotel called 'Cosy Cafe.'

(to be continued)

2.

A. Talking about the map.

Using maps, practice pointing out places and giving their names, using the following frames:

Sehemu hii ya	Africa	inaitwa ------------
	Tanganyika	
	Kenya	
	Uganda	

Njia	hii	
Jimbo	hili	(i)naitwa ----------
Mji	huu	

Sehemu hii ya__________inaitwaje?

Use this as an occasion to become familiar with the geography of East Africa.

Unit 89

1. Basic Dialogue. Where is the consulate? (concluded)

Aramian

Hapo mbele yako pana hoteli ya 'Cosy Café.'	There in front of you is the 'Cosy Cafe Hotel.'
Iipite.	Go past it.
Mbele kuna barabara ya Acacia.	Ahead there is Acacia Avenue.
Nenda moja kwa moja tu.	Just go straight ahead.
n̊je (N)	outside
Na mara utaona jumba kubwa m̊kono wa kulia, n̊je pameandikwa 'Cable and Wireless.'	And immediately after, you will see a big building on the right, outside (of which) is written 'Cable and Wireless.'
orofa (N)	story
Orofa ya pili ndio ofisi ya Balozi wa Amerika.	The third floor, that is the American Consulate.

2.

A. Talking about a street map.

Practice giving directions from a number of points in Dar es Salaam to various other points, using a simplified map. Some of the words and phrases that will be most useful are:

utafika kwenye ______

moja kwa moja ______

mbele ya ______

karibu na ______________

m̊kono wa kulia/kushoto ________

utaona __________

Unit 90

1. Basic Dialogue. Clothes for the laundryman.

Magese

Unabeba nguo, wazipeleka wapi?	You are carrying clothes on your back. Where are you taking them?

Sangai

~chafu	dirty
dobi (MA pers)	laundryman
Hizi nguo chafu, nazipeleka kwa dobi.	These dirty clothes, I'm taking them to the laundryman.

Magese

Dobi yupi?	Which laundryman?

Sangai

ng'ambo (N)	on the other side
Yule aliye na duka kule ng'ambo.	That one who has the shop there on the other side.

Magese

júmla	sum
Unazo ngapi kwa júmla?	How many do you have altogether?

Sangai

koti (MA)	coat
Zote ni suruali tatu na makoti mawili.	Altogether there are three pairs of trousers and two coats.

Magese

Atakutoza pesa ngapi?	How much will he make you pay?

Sangai

thum̊ni (N)	50 ct. piece
Kama shilingi mbili na thum̊ni.	About 2.50.

Notes

A. Abstract nouns of the U class.

~chache	few
uchache	paucity
safi	clean
usafi	cleanliness

A large number of abstract nouns are members of the u class. Frequently, except for the u prefix, they are identical in form with adjective stems.

2.

A. ng'ambo; concords with -ko.

duka	Duka lake liko ng'ambo ya m̊ji.	His shop is on the other side of town.
soko	Soko liko ng'ambo ya m̊ji.	The market is on the other side of town.
hoteli	Hoteli iko ng'ambo ya m̊ji.	The hotel is on the other side of town.
kanisa	Kanisa liko ng'ambo ya m̊ji.	The church is on the other side of town.
shule	Shule iko ng'ambo ya m̊ji.	The school is on the other side of town.

shamba	Shamba lake liko ng'ambo ya m̀ji.	His plantation is on the other side of town.
maduka	Maduka yake yako ng'ambo ya m̀ji.	His shops are on the other side of town.
mashamba	Mashamba yake yako ng'ambo ya m̀ji.	His plantations are on the other side of town.

B. Concords with ˜ngapi; U-class singulars with plurals in the N-class.

nguo	Unazo nguo ngapi kwa jumla?	How many clothes do you have altogether?
jembe	Unayo majembe mangapi kwa jumla?	How many hoes do you have altogether?
kidole	Unavyo vidole vingapi kwa jumla?	How many fingers do you have altogether?
mzigo	Unayo mizigo mingapi kwa jumla?	How many loads do you have altogether?
ngoma	Unazo ngoma ngapi kwa jumla?	How many drums do you have altogether?
uma	Unazo nyuma ngapi kwa jumla?	How many forks do you have altogether?
ubao	Unazo mbao ngapi kwa jumla?	How many boards do you have altogether?
ukurasa	Unazo kurasa ngapi kwa jumla?	How many pages do you have altogether?

C. Kiasi gani?

wino	Una wino kiasi gani?	How much ink do you have?
maji	Una maji kiasi gani?	How much water do you have?

pombe chumvi m̀chele wali

3. Adjective *vs.* U-class (abstract) noun.

~zuri	Ule m̀ji ni m̀zuri.	That city is beautiful.
	Walituambia juu ya uzuri wa m̀ji.	They told us about the beauty of the city.
~chache	Walimu ni wachache ǹchini mwetu.	Teachers are few in our country.
	Walituambia juu ya uchache wa walimu.	They told us about the scarcity of teachers.
~refu	Gari la moshi lilikuwa refu.	The train is long.
	Walituambia juu ya urefu wa gari la moshi.	They told us about the length of the train.
~eupe	Shuka zote zilikuwa nyeupe sana.	All the sheets were very white.
	Walituambia juu ya weupe wa shuka.	They told us about the whiteness of the sheets.
~ingi	Wanafunzi wa shule ni wengi sana.	The school pupils were very many.
	Walituambia juu ya wingi wa wanafunzi.	They told us about the [large] number of pupils.
safi	Jikoni mwa hoteli ni safi sana.	The inside of the hotel kitchen is very clean.
	Walituambia juu ya usafi wa jikoni.	They told us about the cleanness of the inside of the kitchen.
~gumu	Masomo yao ni magumu sana.	Their lessons are very difficult.
	Walituambia juu ya ugumu wa masomo.	They told us about the difficulty of the lessons.
hodari	Watoto wake ni hodari sana.	His children are very clever.
	Walituambia juu ya uhodari wa watoto.	They told us about the cleverness of the children.

Conversation Starters

1. A asks B to go pick up his laundry for him, B asks directions for finding the place.

Reading Selection IV

Namna ya Kulima

Katika wilaya yetu Serikali imeanza kuwasaidia wakulima kwa kuwaonyesha jinsi ya kupata mavuno mengi. Wakulima wengi wanayo mashamba yaliyotawanyika mahali mbali mbali. Hawa ndio wanaoonyeshwa vile wawezavyo kuyaunganisha mashamba yao.

Katika Idara ya Ukulima wako watu walio hodari kwa ukulima ambao wanasimamia mipango hii. Watu hawa huenda mashambani pamoja na wakulima na kufanya kazi kwa mikono yao. Hii huwasaidia wenyeji kuona na kujizoeza kulima vizuri.

Shamba hugawanywa katika sehemu tatu; ya kwanza, ni kiwanja cha nyumba; ya pili ni boma la ng'ombe, kuku, mbuzi, nguruwe na kadhalika; na ya tatu ni ya kupanda mimea.

Hii sehemu ya tatu, yaani ya mimea, hugawanywa katika visehemu vidogo vingi ambavyo mimea fulani hupandwa na kubadilishwa kila mwaka.

Mimea ikibadilishwa, haichoshi udongo, na hivi mkulima aweza kulima shamba lake kila mwaka. Hii ndiyo faida ya kupanda mimea tofauti kila mara baada ya kuvuna.

Questions	Answers
1. Ni wapi Serikali imeanza kuwasaidia wakulima?	Serikali imeanza kuwasaidia wakulima katika wilaya yetu.
2. Serikali imeanza kuwasaidiaje?	Kwa kuwaonyesha jinsi ya kulima vizuri.
3. Wenyeji wakilima vizuri hupata faida gani?	Hupata mavuno mengi.
4. Mashamba ya wakulima wengi yako pamoja?	Hapana, yametawanyika mahali mbali mbali.
5. Mashamba yatafanywaje?	Mashamba yataunganishwa.

6.	Kuna wakulima hodari katika Idara ya Afya?	Hapana. Watu hodari kwa kulima wako katika Idara ya Ukulima.
7.	Kazi yao ni nini?	Kusimamia mipango hii.
8.	Wasimamizi hawa hufanya kazi shambani?	Ndiyo, wanafanya kazi mashambani kwa mikono.
9.	Hii ni faida gani?	Wenyiji huona na kuzoea kulima vizuri.
10.	Shamba hugawanywa katika sehemu ngapi?	Tatu.
11.	Sehemu ya kwanza ni ya nini?	Sehemu ya kwanza ni kiwanja cha nyumba.
12.	Na ya pili?	Sehemu ya pili ni boma ya ng'ombe, kuku, mbuzi na kadhalika.
13.	Na ya tatu je?	Sehemu ya tatu ni ya kulima.
14.	Kuna faida katika kubadili mimea?	Ndiyo. Udongo hauchoki.
15.	Ukiwa mkulima utabadili mimea yako?	Ndiyo, nikiwa mkulima nitabadili mimea yangu.

wilaya (N)	district, province
jinsi (N)	way, method
-tawanya	to scatter
-simamia	to stand by, to oversee
-zoea	to become familiar with
-gawanya	to divide up, distribute
kiwanja (VI)	a plot of ground
kuku (N-anim)	chicken
mbuzi (N-anim)	goat
kadhalika	likewise, similarly
kisehemu (VI)	a small section
fulani	such-and-such
-badili	to change
-chosha	to make tired
faida (N)	profit, advantage
tofauti (N)	difference, discrepancy

Unit 91

1. Basic Dialogue. Doing the wash.

	Maina
-fua	to launder
Nani afuaye nguo zako?	Who washes your clothes?
	Juma
Mama hunisaidia.	Mother helps me.
	Maina
Yeye hufua kwa m̀kono au kwa mashine?	Does she wash [them] by hand or by machine?
	Juma
sabuni (N)	soap
(ya) uvuguvugu (U)	lukewarm
Anatumia mikono, sabuni na maji ya uvuguvugu.	She does them by hand ('uses her hands') [with] soap, and lukewarm water.
	Maina
-ondoa	to get rid of
Unafikiri mikono huondoa uchafu kweli?	Do you think that [washing by] hand(s) really gets rid of the dirt?

Juma

Sana!	Definitely!

Maina

wanga (U)	starch
Lakini anatia wanga lini?	But when does she pour in the starch?

Juma

-loweka	to wet something
Kwa kawaida, nguo ikiwa imelowekwa.	Ordinarily, when the clothes are wet.

Notes

A. Relative counterparts of the a-tense.

Nani afuaye nguo?	Who washes the clothes?
Nini kiondoshacho uchafu?	What gets the dirt off?

The relative counterparts of the indicative forms of the a-tense are formed as follows:

Subj. pref.	Stem	Rel. affix	
ni	jua	ye	'I who know'
u	jua	ye	'you (sg.) who know'
a	jua	ye	'he who knows'
wa	jua	o	'they who know'
li	ondosha	lo	'(that) which removes'

etc.

atumiaye...	he who uses...
atumialo...	which he uses (referring to something in sg. MA class).

As in other relative forms, the relative affix may refer to and agree with the subject or the object of the verb.

2.

A. Relative counterparts of the a-tense.

kufua	Nani afuaye nguo zako?	Who washes your clothes?
kupiga pasi	Nani apigaye pasi nguo zako?	Who irons your clothes?
kununua	Nani anunuaye nguo zako?	Who buys your clothes?

B.

kulima	(Watu) walimao shamba hili wako wapi?	Where are the people who cultivate this farm?
kuhudhuria	(Watu) wahudhuriao masomo haya wako wapi?	Where are the people who attend these lessons?
kutaka	(Watu) watakao kwenda wako wapi?	Where are the people who want to go?
kujua	(Watu) wajuao Kiswahili wako wapi?	Where are the people who know Swahili?
kufua	(Watu) wafuao nguo wako wapi?	Where are the people who wash clothes?

C. -ondoa.

uchafu	Tutaondoaje uchafu katika nguo hizi?	How shall we remove the dirt from these clothes?
wino	Tutaondoaje wino katika nguo hizi?	How shall we remove the ink from these clothes?

damu sabuni wanga

D. -ondoka.

uchafu	Uchafu umeondoka katika nguo sasa.	The dirt is off the clothes now.
wino	Wino umeondoka katika nguo sasa.	The ink is off the clothes now.

damu sabuni wanga

3.

A. Indicative vs. relative (relative subject).

kufua	Nguo hizi zinafuliwa kila wiki.	These clothes are washed every week.
	Nani anazifua?	Who washes them?
kupalilia	Shamba hili linapaliliwa mara kwa mara.	This farm is weeded often.
	Nani analipalilia?	Who weeds it?
kuzuia	Unanizuia nisipum̀zike.	You prevent me from resting.
	Nani anakuzuia?	Who prevents you?

B. Indicative vs. relative (relative object).

sabuni	Tunatumia sabuni.	We use soap.
	Sabuni gani m̀nayotumia?	What kind of soap do you use?
mafuta	Tuna mafuta.	We use oil.
	Mafuta gani m̀nayotumia?	What kind of oil do you use?
kalamu	Tuna kalamu.	We use pens.
	Kalamu gani m̀nayotumia?	What kind of pens do you use?
jembe	Tuna jembe.	We use a hoe.
	Jembe gani m̀nalotumia?	What kind of hoe do you use?
wanga	Tuna wanga.	We use starch.
	Wanga gani m̀naotumia?	What kind of starch do you use?
wino	Tuna wino.	We use ink.
	Wino gani m̀naotumia?	What kind of ink do you use?

Unit 92

1. Basic Dialogue. A good-looking uniform.

Maina	
mwenzi (WA)	companion
(mwenzangu)	(mwenzi wangu)
-ng'aa	to shine
Mwenzangu, nguo zako zang'aa.	Your clothes are very bright my friend.
Juma	
kabla ya	before
pasi (N)	iron (for pressing)
Ndiyo. Zilitiwa wanga kabla ya kupigwa pasi.	Yes, they were starched before being ironed.
moto (MI)	fire
Hata pasi yenyewe ilikuwa ya moto kweli.	Besides, the iron itself was really hot.
Maina	
-kauka	to get dry
Ndiyo, nguo zikisha kauka vizuri zapigika pasi vizuri.	Yes, when clothes have dried to the right point, they iron very well.
kifungo (VI)	button
Na hivi vifungo vyang'aa. Vimetiwa wanga pia?	And these buttons shine. Have they also been starched?

Juma

-sugua	to polish
Hapana, lakini vilisuguliwa na 'Brasso'.	No, but they've been polished with 'Brasso'.

2.

A. ~a moto.

kahawa	Kahawa hii ni ya moto.	This coffee is hot.
chai	nyama	
uji	Uji huu ni wa moto.	This porridge is hot.
wali		

B. -po- in first verb, followed by verb phrase with alikuwa haja-.

kumaliza	Hasani alipofika, Ali alikuwa hajamaliza kazi yake.	When Hasani arrived, Ali had not finished his work.
kwanza	Hasani alipofika, Ali alikuwa hajaanza kazi yake.	When Hasani arrived, Ali had not started his work.
kusema	Hasani alipofika, Ali alikuwa hajasema.	When Hasani arrived, Ali had not spoken.
kufunga	Hasani alipofika, Ali alikuwa hajafunga m̊lango.	When Hasani arrived, Ali had not closed the door.

3.

A. Concord: Subject prefix in the first sentence, with object prefix in the second.

nguo (pl.)	Nguo hizi zimekauka. Usizilowekw.	These clothes are dry. Don't wet them.

shati	Shati hili limekauka. Usilililoweke.	This shirt is dry. Don't wet it.
mashati	Mashati haya yamekauka. Usiyaloweke.	These shirts are dry. Don't wet them.
suruali (sg.)	Suruali hii imekauka. Usiiloweke.	This pair of trousers is dry. Don't wet it.
suruali (pl.)	Suruali hizi zimekauka. Usiziloweke.	These pairs of trousers are dry. Don't wet them.
koti	Koti hili limekauka. Usilililoweke.	This coat is dry. Don't wet it.
makoti	Makoti haya yamekauka. Usiyaloweke.	These coats are dry. Don't wet them.

B. -ja- negative verb vs. affirmative subjunctive verb

kukauka	Nguo hizi hazijakauka. Yafaa zikaushwe.	These clothes have not gotten dry. It's a good idea to dry them.
kupigwa	Nguo hizi hazijapigwa pasi. Yafaa zipigwe pasi.	These clothes have not been ironed. It's a good idea to iron them.
kutiwa wanga	Nguo hizi hazijatiwa wanga. Yafaa zitiwe wanga.	These clothes have not been starched. It's a good idea to starch them.
kufuliwa	Nguo hizi hazijafuliwa. Yafaa zifuliwe.	These clothes have not been washed. It's a good idea to wash them.

Conversation Starters

1. A is a laundryman. B discusses with him the way he wants his shirts done. He doesn't want his drip-dry shirts ironed.

2. B checks through the returned laundry with A and finds some articles missing.

Unit 93

1. Basic Dialogue. Making a bed.

Adija

-tandika	to spread
m̂geni (WA)	guest
kitanda (VI)	bed
Asha, m̂tandikie m̂geni kitanda.	Asha make the bed for [our] guest.

Asha

shuka	sheet
Uliweka blanketi na shuka wapi?	Where did you put the blankets and sheets?

Adija

ndani ya	inside of
Zimo ndani ya sanduku langu.	They're inside my cabinet.

Asha

godoro (MA)	mattress
Sioni godoro.	I can't find the mattress for the bed.

Adija

-uliza	to ask
Mwulize Juma akuonyeshe liliko.	Ask Juma to show you where it is.

Asha

Juma, tafadhali niletee godoro upesi.	Juma, please bring me the mattress quickly.

foronya (N)	pillowcase
Bado foronya tu. Asante, Juma.	And now just the pillowcase. Thank you, Juma.

Notes

A. A verb with two objects.

Ṁtandikie ṁgeni kitanda.	Make the bed for the guest.

This verb has two objects. The first of them is translated as what we would call an 'indirect object'.

B. -*uliza* plus subjunctive.

Mwulize akusaidie.	Ask him to help you.

The verb -*uliza* may be followed by subjunctive forms, with the meaning 'to ask someone to do something'.

C. -*li*- as a verb stem.

Atakuonyesha liliko.	He will show you where it (the mattress) is.

In the word *liliko*, the first *li*- is the subject prefix, the second -*li*- is the stem usually translated 'be', and *ko* is a suffix with the concord of the *ku*- class.

2.

A. Number agreement.

ṁgeni	Ṁtandikie ṁgeni kitanda.	Make the bed for the guest.
mwalimu	baba	
wageni	Watandikie wageni vitanda.	Make the beds for the guests.
waalimu		

B. -*onyesha* plus a clause; concord: subject noun and -*liko*.

godoro	Juma atakuonyesha godoro liliko.	Juma will show you where the mattress is.

kitanda	Juma atakuonyesha kitanda kiliko.	Juma will show you where the bed is.
shuka	Juma atakuonyesha shuka iliko.	Juma will show you where the bedsheet is.
m̀to	Juma atakuonyesha m̀to uliko.	Juma will show you where the pillow is.
mito	Juma atakuonyesha mito iliko.	Juma will show you where the pillows are.
blanketi	Juma atakuonyesha blanketi iliko.	Juma will show you where the blanket is.

C. Concord: noun subject and locative stem -mo.

↓	Vitanda vimo ndani ya nyumba.	The beds are in the house.
shuka	Shuka zimo ndani ya nyumba.	The sheets are in the house.
sanduku	Shuka zimo ndani ya sanduku.	The sheets are in the box.
mito	Mito imo ndani ya sanduku.	The pillows are in the box.
m̀to	M̀to umo ndani ya sanduku.	The pillow is in the box.
shati	Shati limo ndani ya sanduku.	The shirt is in the box.
mashati	Mashati yamo ndani ya sanduku.	The shirts are in the box.

3.

A. Imperative with object prefix vs. subjunctive with object prefix.

kusaidia	Tafadhali, nisaidie. Mwombe Juma akusaidie.	Please, help me. Ask Juma to help you.
kupiga pasi	Tafadhali, zipige pasi suruali hizi. Mwombe Juma azipige pasi.	Please, iron these trousers. Ask Juma to iron them.
kupalilia	Nenda ukapalilie mahindi. Mwombe Juma aende akapalilie mahindi.	Go to weed the maize. Ask Juma to go to weed the maize.

kutunza	Kaa nyumbani uwatunze watoto.	Stay at home and look after the children.
	Mwombe Juma akae nyumbani awatunze.	Ask Juma to stay and look after them.

B. A-tense: indicative *vs.* relative.

kutaka	Watoto wataka chakula gani?	What kind of food do the children want?
	Nitawauliza chakula watakacho.	I will ask them the kind of food they want.
kufanya	Watoto wanafanya nini?	What are the children doing?
	Nitawauliza kazi wafanyayo.	I will ask them (what) [work] they are doing.
kusema	Watoto wanasema nini?	What are the children saying?
	Nitawauliza wasemalo. (cf. *jambo* (MA) 'matter')	I will ask them what they are saying.
kula	Watoto wanakula nini?	What are the children eating?
	Nitawauliza vyakula walavyo.	I will ask them (the kinds of food) they are eating.
kusoma	Watoto wanasoma vitabu gani?	What books are the children reading?
	Nitawauliza vitabu wasomavyo.	I will ask them the type of books they are reading.
kupumzika	Kwa nini watoto wanapumzika?	Why are the children resting?
	Nitawauliza sababu wapumzikayo.	I will ask them the reason for their resting.
kucheza	Kwa nini wanacheza?	Why are they playing?
	Nitawauliza sababu gani wanacheza.	I will ask them why they are playing.

Unit 94

1. Basic Dialogue. The mosquito net.

Maina	
Hapa katika jimbo hili pana m̀bu wengi sana.	Here in this province there are very many mosquitoes.
chandalua (VI) (or: chandarua)	mosquito net
Hivi yatulazimu kuwa na chandalua.	Thus it's necessary for us to have a mosquito net.
Butler	
M̀nabadili nguo za kitanda mara ngapi kwa wiki?	How many times a week do you change the bed linens?
Maina	
Mama huzibadili kila Ijumaa.	Mother changes them every Friday.
Butler	
usingizi (U)	sleep
-sumbua	to annoy, tease, trouble
M̀kiwa usingizini, hawa m̀bu wawasumbueni?	When you are asleep, do the mosquitoes bother you?
Maina	
kelele (N)	noise
Wapiga kelele sana usiku.	They make a lot of noise at night.
Butler	
Nasikia kuwa m̀bu wa hapa waleta malaria?	I hear that the mosquitoes (of) here carry malaria.

Maina

Ndiyo, bwana, twasumbuliwa sana nao.	Yes, indeed. We are bothered a lot by them.

Notes

A. Pa as a subject prefix.

Note the subject prefix pa- agreeing with the word hapa.

B.

The use of the na tense (m̀nabadili) followed in the next sentence by the hu tense raises questions about the adequacy with which the published rules concerning these tenses reflect actual usage.

2.

A. Various objects used with -badili.

kitanda	Siwezi kubadili nguo za kitanda sasa.	I can't change the bed linen now.
nguo	Siwezi kubadili nguo zangu sasa.	I can't change my clothes now.
shilingi tano	Siwezi kuvunja shilingi tano sasa.	I can't change five shillings now.
meza	Siwezi kubadili kitambaa cha meza sasa.	I can't change the tablecloth now.

B. Various verbs used with m̀bu as subject.

kusumbua	M̀bu husumbua watu.	Mosquitoes bother people.
kuuma	M̀bu huuma watu.	Mosquitoes bite people.
kudhuru	M̀bu hudhuru watu.	Mosquitoes harm people.
kuletea	M̀bu huwaletea watu malaria.	Mosquitoes bring malaria to people.

3.

A. Various tenses in reported speech.

kuumia	Nilisikia kuwa uliumia m̀kono wako.	I heard that your hand was hurt.
	Ndiyo. Niliuumia juzi.	Yes. I hurt it the day before yesterday.
kujiumiza	Nilisikia kuwa ulijiumiza m̀kono wako.	I heard that you hurt your hand.
	Ndiyo. Nilijiumiza juzi.	Yes. I hurt myself the day before yesterday.
kuchelewa	Nilisikia kuwa wewe huchelewa kila siku.	I heard that you are always late.
	Ndiyo. Nilichelewa juzi.	Yes. I was late the day before yesterday.
kupalilia	Nilisikia kuwa utaupalilia ua.	I heard that you were to weed the yard.
	Ndiyo. Niliupalilia juzi.	Yes. I weeded it the day before yesterday.

B. Kama in indirect questions.

kusafisha	Mama amesafisha vyombo?	Has mother washed the utensils?
	Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama amevisafisha.	I don't know. I'll ask her if she has washed them.
kutandika	Mama ametandika kitanda?	Has mother made the bed?
	Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama amekitandika.	I don't know. I'll ask her if she has made it.
kuchem̀sha	Mama amechem̀sha maziwa?	Has mother boiled the milk?
	Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama ameyachem̀sha.	I don't know. I'll ask her if she has boiled it.

kuita	Mama amewaita watoto?	Has mother called the children?
	Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama amewaita.	I don't know. I'll ask her if she has called them.
kulipa	Mama amelipa mafuta?	Has mother paid for the oil?
	Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama ameyalipa.	I don't know. I'll ask her if she has paid.
kutengeneza	Mama ametengeneza chakula cha jioni?	Has mother prepared supper?
	Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama amekitengeneza.	I don't know. I'll ask her if she has prepared it.
kuenda	Mama amekwenda kununua sukari?	Has my mother gone to buy some sugar?
	Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama amekwenda.	I don't know. I'll ask her if she has gone.

Conversation Starters

1. A (a housewife) discusses with B (a domestic servant) the way in which she wants the bedrooms to be maintained.

2. C and D discuss the furniture that will be needed for C's house in Tabora.

Unit 95

1. Basic Dialogue. A guest is coming for dinner!

Hamisi

-tembelea	to visit
mashuhuri	famous
Leo jioni tutatembelewa na m̂geni mashuhuri.	This evening we're going to be visited by a famous guest.
Kwa hivyo Adija, tandika meza vizuri.	Therefore, Adija, set the table well.
Weka kitambaa na nyuma mbili upande wa kushoto.	Put the serviette and two forks on the left.
kijiko (VI)	spoon
Kulia kwa sahani, visu viwili na vijiko vitatu.	[To] the right of the plate, two knives and three spoons.
-sahau	to forget
Usisahau kuleta maji, bilauri, pilipili na chumvi.	Don't forget to bring water, glasses, salt and pepper.
Kwa kupakulia, tutahitaji vijiko vikubwa.	For dishing up the food, we will need some big spoons.

Adija

Nikimaliza hayo yote nitakuita.	When I finish all those [things] I'll call you.

Notes

A. Concord with a noun having the prefix ku.

In kulia kwa sahani, the prefix kw agrees with the ku of the preceding word.

2.

A. Location of one object relative to another.

kijiko-sahani	Kijiko kiko kulia kwa sahani.	The spoon is to the right of the plate.
sahani-kijiko	Sahani iko kushoto kwa kijiko.	The plate is to the left of the spoon.
kijiko-kisu	Kijiko kiko kulia kwa kisu.	The spoon is to the right of the knife.
kisu-kijiko	Kisu kiko kushoto kwa kijiko.	The knife is to the left of the spoon.
visu-vijiko	Visu viko kushoto kwa vijiko.	The knives are to the left of the spoons.
uma-sahani	Uma iko kushoto kwa sahani.	The fork is to the left of the plate.
sahani-uma	Sahani iko kulia kwa uma.	The plate is to the right of the fork.
nyuma-sahani	Nyuma ziko kushoto kwa sahani.	The forks are to the left of the plate.
kijiko cha supu-sahani	Kijiko cha supu kiko mbele ya sahani.	The soup spoon is in front of the plate.
bilauri-visu	Bilauri ya maji iko mbele ya visu.	The glass of water is in front of the knives.
kikombe-nyuma	Kikombe kiko kulia kwa nyuma.	The cup is on the right of the forks.

kitambaa-sahani	Kitambaa kiko kushoto kwa sahani.	The napkin is on the left of the plate.
kikombe-kitambaa	Kikombe kiko mbele ya kitambaa.	The cup is in front of the napkin.

3.

A. -sahau and -kumbuka.

wewe	Usisahau pilipili. Bila shaka nitakumbuka.	Don't forget the pepper. I will certainly remember.
ninyi	Msisahau pilipili. Bila shaka tutakumbuka.	Don't forget the pepper. We will certainly remember.
yeye	Asisahau pilipili. Bila shaka atakumbuka.	He must not forget the pepper. He will certainly remember.
wao	Wasisahau pilipili. Bila shaka watakumbuka.	They must not forget the pepper. They will certainly remember.

Unit 96

1. Basic Dialogue. At the table.

Adija	
Karibu mezani, Wambua.	Come to the table, Wambua.
Wambua	
Starehe.	You're very kind.
-tamu	sweet, delicious
Kweli leo mna vyakula vitamu sana.	Really, you have some very delicious dishes today.
Adija	
Asante, lakini tumeishiwa siagi.	Thank you, but we've run out of butter.
Wambua	
Si kitu.	Don't worry. ('It's nothing.')
-sogeza	to bring near
Tafadhali nisogezee maziwa.	Please pass the milk.

- - - - - - - - -

Adija	
Juma, tafadhali ondoa vyombo mezani; tumekwisha maliza kula.	Juma, please clear the dishes from the table; we have finished eating.
Juma	
Ndiyo, mama.	Yes, mother.
Chai na kahawa viko (or: iko) tayari.	The tea and coffee are ready.

Adija

bakuli (MA)	bowl
birika (MA)	pot (tea)
Leta vikombe na visahani vyake, bakuli la sukari na birika la chai.	Bring the cups and saucers, the sugar bowl, and the tea pot.

Juma

Ngoja kidogo.	Wait a bit.

Notes

A. Concord with two or more nouns.

Where two inanimate nouns (e.g. chai and kahawa) are the subject of the same verb, the question arises which subject prefix to use. The question is further complicated when the two nouns happen to belong to different classes (e.g. uma and jembe). Speakers differ in their practice in such situations; a final resolution of the problem must await further study.

B. ~ake with an inanimate plural antecedent.

vikombe na visahani vyake

Hitherto we have translated ~ake as either 'his' or 'her'. It may also correspond to the English possessive forms its and their(s). Note that ~ake is the stem used whether the inanimate antecedent of the stem (vikombe in this example) is singular or plural. Contrast, with animate nouns, ~ake when the antecedent is singular and ~ao when it is plural:

ṁkulima na watoto wake

wakulima na watoto wao

2.

A. Verb phrase with me-tense in second verb.

siagi Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa siagi. Yesterday we were short of butter.

chumvi	Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa chumvi.	Yesterday we were short of salt.
sukari	Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa sukari.	Yesterday we were short of sugar.
wino	Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa wino.	Yesterday we were short of ink.
sabuni	Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa sabuni.	Yesterday we were short of soap.
mafuta	Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa mafuta.	Yesterday we were short of oil.

B. -ja- negative; -ondoa with locative.

vyombo	Kwa nini hujaondoa vyombo mezani?	Why haven't you removed the utensils from the table?
sahani	Kwa nini hujaondoa sahani mezani?	Why haven't you removed the plates from the table?

vijiko vikombe kitambaa

3.

A. Concord: Subject prefix with two noun subjects.

chai	Chai iko tayari.	The tea is ready.
kahawa	Kahawa iko tayari.	The coffee is ready.
	Chai na kahawa viko (or: iko) tayari.	The tea and coffee are ready.
bilauri	Bilauri ziko tayari.	The glasses are ready.
sahani	Sahani ziko tayari.	The plates are ready.
	Bilauri na sahani ziko (or: viko tayari) tayari.	The glasses and plates are ready.

B.

suruali (sg.)	Suruali iko tayari.	The trousers are ready.

koti	Koti liko tayari.	The coat is ready.
uma	Uma uko (or: iko) tayari.	The fork is ready.
suruali (pl.)	Suruali ziko tayari.	The trousers are ready.
makoti	Makoti yako tayari.	The coats are ready.
suruali na makoti	Suruali na makoti viko (or: yako) tayari.	The trousers and coats are ready.
kalamu (pl.)	Kalamu ziko tayari.	The pens are ready.
wino	Wino uko tayari.	The ink is ready.
kitanda	Kitanda kiko tayari.	The bed is ready.
bakuli	Bakuli liko tayari.	The bowl is ready.
birika	Birika liko (or: iko) tayari.	The kettle is ready.
vyakula	Vyakula viko tayari.	The food is ready.
kalamu na wino	Kalamu na wino viko (or: upo) tayari.	The pens and ink are ready.

Unit 97

1. Basic Dialogue. Washing dishes.

Adija	
Nani atakayesafisha vyombo leo?	Who is going to wash the dishes today?
Juma	
Mimi, mama, Asha atanisaidia.	I [will], mother. Asha will help me.
Adija	
Nitawapatieni maji ya moto.	I'll get you some hot water.
Juma	
Asha, tafadhali lete sabuni na vitambaa.	Asha, please bring soap and cloths.
Adija	
ili	so that
-chem̂sha	to boil
Nimechem̂sha maji ili yaondoe mafuta katika vyombo.	I've boiled the water so that it will remove the grease from (on) the plates.
Juma	
Asante, mama.	Thank you, Mother.
Adija	
kabati (N or MA)	cupboard
Asha, weka vyombo vilivyokauka kabatini.	Asha, put the dry plates in the cupboard.

Juma

-ng'ang'ania	here: to stick to
Mayai yameng'ang'ania katika sahani.	Some egg is stuck to the plate.

Adija

Irudishe majini ili uisafishe vizuri.	Put it back into the water so that you [can] get it good and clean.

Notes

A. The subjunctive with ili.

Note the use of the subjunctive after ili 'so that'.

2.

A. Relative and locative suffixes on the same verb.

vyombo	Vyombo vilivyomo kabatini vimekauka.	The utensils that are in the cupboard are dry.
vikombe		
sahani	Sahani zilizomo kabatini zimekauka.	The plates that are in the cupboard are dry.

bilauri nguo kisu kijiko uma nyuma

B.

vyombo	Vyombo vilivyoko mezani vina majimaji.	The utensils that are on the table are wet.
visahani		
sahani	Sahani zilizoko mezani zina majimaji.	The plates that are on the table are wet.

nguo kisu kijiko uma nyuma

C. Concord: noun object in first clause and subject prefix in second.

vyombo	Weka vyombo mezani ili vikauke.	Put the utensils on the table to dry.
nyuma	Weka nyuma mezani ili zikauke.	Put the forks on the table to dry.
bilauri	Weka bilauri mezani ili zikauke.	Put the glasses on the table to dry.
uma	Weka uma mezani ili ikauke.	Put the fork on the table to dry.

3.

A. -na-tense affirmative vs. -ja- negative.

maji	Maji yanachem̀ka? Hapana, hayajachem̀ka bado.	Is the water boiling? No. It hasn't boiled yet.
chai	Chai inachem̀ka? Hapana, haijachem̀ka bado.	Is the tea boiling? No. It hasn't boiled yet.
kahawa	Kahawa inachem̀ka? Hapana, haijachem̀ka bado.	Is the coffee boiling? No. It hasn't boiled yet.
maziwa	Maziwa yanachem̀ka? Hapana, hayajachem̀ka bado.	Is the milk boiling? No. It hasn't boiled yet.

B. Concord in multiple positions.

viazi	Viazi hivi havina moto. Virudishe ndani ya jiko ili vipate moto.	These potatoes are not warm. Put them back on the fire to get warm.
nyama	Nyama hii haina moto. Irudishe ndani ya jiko ili ipate moto.	This meat is not warm. Put it back in the kitchen to get warm.
mboga	Mboga hizi hazina moto. Zirudishe ndani ya jiko ili zipate moto.	These vegetables are not warm. Put them back on the fire to get warm.

wali	Wali huu hauna moto. Urudishe ndani ya jiko ili upate moto.	This rice is not warm. Put it back on the fire to get warm.

Conversation Starters

1. A (a mother) discusses with B (a domestic servant) B's duties in setting the table and caring for the dishes.

2. C and D discuss the differences between British and American customs relating to the setting of a dinner table.

Unit 98

1. Basic Dialogue. Caring for the lawn.

Hamisi

m̂kasi (MI)	scissors
ua (U)	hedge
mwiba (MI)	thorn
Nipatie m̂kasi wa kukatia ua wa miiba.	Get me the clippers for cutting the thorn hedge.

Juma

nyasi (N pl.)	grass
Chukua. Ukimaliza, uje tukate nyasi uani.	Here you are ('take'). When you finish, come and we'll cut the grass in the yard.

Hamisi

Hapana. Wewe kata nyasi peke yako, mimi nina kazi nyingine.	No. You cut the grass by yourself. I have other work.

Juma

Kazi gani?	What work?

Hamisi

ua (MA)	flower
Maua yanahitaji kupaliliwa.	The flowers need to be weeded.

Juma

-mea	to grow
gugu (MA)	weed
Kwani magugu yamemea?	Why? Have the weeds come up?

Hamisi

Tena!	Of course!

Juma

Usisahau kumwagilia maua maji.	Don't forget to water the flowers.

Hamisi

-onana	to see one another
Haya. Tutaonana baadaye.	O.K. See you later.

Notes

A. The reciprocal suffix.

The 'reciprocal' suffix -an- corresponds roughly to English '...one another'.

2.

A. Concord: subject prefixes with some new nouns.

muhindi	Muhindi umemea upesi sana.	The maize has sprouted very soon.
m̂punga	M̂punga umemea upesi sana.	The rice has sprouted very soon.
magugu	Magugu yamemea upesi sana.	The weeds have sprouted very soon.
ua (flower)	Ua limemea upesi sana.	The flower has sprouted very soon.
maua	Maua yamemea upesi sana.	The flowers have sprouted very soon.
nyasi	Nyasi zimemea upesi sana.	The grass has sprouted very soon.

B. Reciprocal stems.

kuona	Wanaonana kila siku.	They see each other every day.
kupiga	Wanapigana kila siku.	They fight each other every day.
kusaidia	Wanasaidiana kila siku.	They help each other every day.
kuam̂kia	Wanaam̂kiana kila siku.	They greet each other every day.

kungoja	Wanangojeana kila siku.	They wait for each other every day.

C. A sentence which contains three examples of reciprocal stems.

kufuata, kupoteza, kuona	Hamisi na rafikiye (or: rafiki yake) walifuatana sokoni asubuhi, wakapotezana huko, wakaonana tena alasiri.	Hamisi and his friend went together to the market in the morning; they lost each other over there, and then saw each other again in the afternoon.

3.

A. Plural imperative: negative *vs.* affirmative.

kumwagilia	M̀sisahau kumwagilia maua maji.	Don't forget to water the flowers.
	Hapana. Ninyi mwagilieni maua peke yenu.	No. Water the flowers by yourselves.
kukata	M̀sisahau kukata nyasi.	Don't forget to cut the grass.
	Hapana. Ninyi kateni nyasi peke yenu.	No. Cut the grass by yourselves.
kuchem̀sha	M̀sisahau kuchem̀sha maji ya kusafishia vyombo.	Don't forget to boil water for washing the dishes.
	Hapana. Ninyi chem̀sheni maji peke yenu.	No. Boil the water by yourselves.
kutandika	M̀sisahau kutandika kitanda cha m̀geni.	Don't forget to make the guest's bed.
	Hapana. Ninyi tandikeni kitanda peke yenu.	No. Make the bed by yourselves.

B. *-ta-* tense *vs.* *-ki-* tense.

kukata	Utakata ua?	Will you cut the hedge?
	Ukikata ua, nitakata nyasi.	If you cut the hedge, I'll cut the grass.

kumwagilia	Utamwagilia maua maji?	Will you water the flowers?
	Ukimwagilia maua, nitakata nyasi.	If you water the flowers, I will cut the grass.

kupalilia shamba   kusafisha vyombo   kufua nguo

Unit 99

1. Basic Dialogue. Trials of a baby-sitter.

Maria

-chunga	to care for
Watoto wadogo wahitaji kuchungwa (or: kutunzwa) sana.	Young children need to be cared for very well.
-acha	to leave
Wakiachiliwa peke yao wataumia.	If they are left alone they will get hurt.
-ruhusu	to allow
-kimbia	to run
barabára	road, highway
Si vizuri kuwaruhusu wakimbie barabarani.	It's not good to let them run around in the street.
-epa	to avoid, escape
hatari (N)	danger
Hawajui kuepa hatari -- kama magari.	They don't know how to escape from dangers, like cars.
-linda	to protect
Wanataka kulindwa kila mara.	They require protection every minute.

Notes

A. The verb -ruhusu with infinitive or subjunctive.

The verb -ruhusu 'to permit' may be followed by infinitive or by subjunctive verb forms.

2.

A. Vocabulary practice in a sentence with an example of the use of the -ki- tense.

kuumia	Watoto wakiachiliwa peke yao wataumia.	If children are left alone they'll get hurt.
kukimbia	Watoto wakiachiliwa peke yao watakimbia huko na huko.	If children are left alone they'll run around.

kucheza kupigana

B. -acha plus infinitive.

kusema	Wakati gani aliacha kusoma?	At what time did he stop reading?
kulima	Wakati gani aliacha kulima?	At what time did he stop cultivating?

kucheza kulia

C.

kusoma	Acheni kusoma!	Stop reading!
kushangilia	Acheni kushangilia!	Stop rejoicing!
kupigana	Acheni kupigana!	Stop fighting!
kelele	Acheni kupiga kelele!	Stop making noise!
kuchemsha	Acheni kuchemsha maji!	Stop boiling water!

D. -kimbia na ______.

pesa	Watoto walikimbia na pesa zangu.	The children ran away with my money.
kalamu	Watoto walikimbia na kalamu yangu.	The children ran away with my pen.

kitabu jembe kijiko

3.

A. -*ruhusu* plus a subjunctive form; infinitive vs. subjunctive of a single verb.

kucheza	Watoto wataka kucheza barabarani. Hatuwaruhusu wachezee humo.	The children want to play in the road. We don't allow them to play in it.
kukimbia	Watoto wataka kukimbia barabarani. Hatuwaruhusu wakimbie humo.	The children want to run in the road. We don't allow them to run in it.

kukaa kwenda

B. -*acha* and -*endelea* plus infinitive; *m̀paka*.

kusema	Acha kusema! Siachi. Nitaendelea kusema m̀paka usiku.	Stop talking! I won't stop. I will keep on talking until dark.
kusoma	Acha kusoma! Siachi. Nitaendelea kusoma m̀paka usiku.	Stop reading! I won't stop. I will keep on reading until dark.

kufanya kazi kuogelea kukata nyasi

Unit 100

1. Basic Dialogue. Trials of a baby-sitter. (continued)

Mirambo

kifaranga (VI - pers.)	chick (dim.): small child (colloq.)
-onja	to taste, try
Vifaranga hupenda kuonja kila kitu.	Small children like to taste everything.

Magese

-jali	to give honor to
Hata udongo na uchafu, hawajali.	They don't even stop at soil and dirt.

Mirambo

jua (MA)	sun
-choma	to burn, apply fire to
Tena, watoto wa kizungu wakikaa juani kwa muda m̊refu, huchomwa na jua vibaya.	Also, European children, if they stay in the sun for a long period, get badly burned (by the sun).

Magese

-tii	to obey
Watoto yawalazimu kuwatii wazazi wao.	It's necessary for children to obey their parents.

Mirambo

-lea	to rear

-kua	to grow
'M̂toto um̂leavyo ndivyo akuavyo.'	'As the twig is bent, the tree's inclined.'

2.

A. tangu

Jan.	Hamisi amekua sana tangu Januari.	Hamisi has grown a lot since January.
Feb.	Hamisi amekua sana tangu Februari.	Hamisi has grown a lot since February

Machi Aprili Mei Juni Julai Agosti Septemba
Oktoba Novemba Desemba

B. -kusudia plus infinitive.

soko	Hatukusudii kukaa sokoni kwa muda m̂refu.	We don't intend to stay in the market long.
pwani	Hatukusudii kukaa pwani kwa muda m̂refu.	We don't intend to stay at the coast long.
nyumba	Hatukusudii kukaa nyumbani kwa muda m̂refu.	We don't intend to stay in the house long.
kwao	Hatukusudii kukaa kwao kwa muda m̂refu.	We don't intend to stay at their place long.
Morogoro	Hatukusudii kukaa Morogoro kwa muda m̂refu.	We don't intend to stay in Morogoro long.
kusini	Hatukusudii kukaa kusini kwa muda m̂refu.	We don't intend to stay in the south long.
mashariki	Hatukusudii kukaa mashariki kwa muda m̂refu.	We don't intend to stay in the east long.

C. -tii

wazazi	Watii wazazi wako!	Obey your parents!
waalimu	Watii waalimu wako!	Obey your teachers!

mwalimu	Ṁtii mwalimu wako!	Obey your teacher!
baba	Ṁtii baba yako!	Obey your father!
mama	Ṁtii mama yako!	Obey your mother!

3.

A. Concord: the word *mahali* and the PA locative.

kalamu	Nimepoteza kalamu yangu! Mahali ulipoiacha kalamu, ndipo ilipo.	I have lost my pen! The place where you left the pen, is where it is.
pesa	Nimepoteza pesa zangu! Mahali ulipoziacha pesa, ndipo zilipo.	I have lost my money! The place where you left the money, is where it is.
kofia	Nimepoteza kofia yangu! Mahali ulipoiacha kofia, ndipo ilipo.	I have lost my hat! The place where you left the hat, is where it is.
kitabu	Nimepoteza kitabu changu! Mahali ulipokiacha kitabu, ndipo kilipo.	I have lost my book! The place where you left the book, is where it is.
chupa	Nimepoteza chupa yangu! Mahali ulipoiacha chupa ndipo ilipo.	I have lost my bottle! The place where you left the bottle, is where it is.
viberiti	Nimepoteza viberiti vyangu! Mahali ulipoviacha viberiti, ndipo vilipo.	I have lost my matches! The place where you left your matches, is where they are.

Conversation Starters

1. A (a mother) discusses with B (a baby sitter) B's responsibilities in caring for a three year old child during the day and putting the child to bed at night.

2. A (a homeowner) discusses with B (a gardener) B's responsibilities in caring for the lawn.

READING SELECTION V

Motokaa Za Abiria

Motokaa za abiria zina manufaa sana kwa wasafiri. Ingawa abiria wapanda gari la moshi, motokaa ina sifa kabisa.

Ni ajabu kuwa safari ya motokaa si ya raha kama ile ya gari la moshi, lakini wasafiri wengi hupenda kupanda motokaa. Ukipanda motokaa, utafika upesi zaidi kuliko kama ukipanda gari la moshi. Sababu yake ni kwamba motokaa yakimbia upesi zaidi ya gari la moshi.

Motokaa ni nyingi sana, nazo zinasafiri kila upande ǹchini. Katika miji mikubwa kuna namna mbili za motokaa hizi. Zile zinazosafiri ǹje ya m̀ji, na nyingine zile zinazozungukazunguka humo humo m̀jini. Safari nyingi huanza asubuhi na adhuhuri, na chache hufanywa alasiri na jioni. Magari haya hupita katika sehemu mbali mbali, milimani na mabondeni. Juu ya mito kuna madaraja. Madaraja mengine ni membamba na mengine ni mapana. Yale membamba huruhusu gari moja moja kupita, polepole. Katika sehemu zilizo sawa, yaani zisizokuwa za milima, magari hukimbia sana. Ni vibaya kukimbiza sana gari la abiria kwa sababu ni hatari. Wenye magari hupata faida kubwa, lakini wakati mwingine hupata hasara pia. Magari ya bidhaa, kama yale yachukuayo madebe ya mafuta, au magogo, hayachukui abiria. Hii ni amri ya serikali.

Ni wazi kwamba ukisafiri kwa motokaa, safari ndefu huwa fupi.

manufaa (pl. MA)	useful things, tools
sifa (N)	praise, reputation
raha (N)	rest, comfort
-zunguka	to go around
bonde (MA)	valley, low-lying country
~embamba	narrow - thin
~pana	broad, (flat)
hasara (N)	loss, damage
debe (MA)	a four-gallon tin
amri (N)	a command; law authority, rule
wazi	open, evident

Questions and Answers over Reading Selection

Questions	Sample Answers
1. Motokaa za abiria zina manufaa kwa wasafiri?	Ndiyo, zina manufaa sana kwao.
2. Je, safari ya motokaa ni ya raha kama ile ya gari la moshi?	La, si ya raha.
3. Kwa nini wasafiri hupenda kupanda motokaa?	Kwa sababu motokaa hukimbia upesi zaidi.
4. Ni kweli kwamba ukipanda motokaa utafika upesi?	Ndiyo.
5. Motokaa zinasafiri upande m̀moja tu ǹchini?	La, ni nyingi sana, zinasafiri kila upande.
6. Katika miji mikubwa, kuna namna zipi za motokaa za abiria?	Zile zinazosafiri ǹje ya m̀ji na zile zinazozungukazunguka humo.
7. Safari huanza lini?	Nyingi huanza asubuhi na adhuhuri, na chache alasiri na jioni.
8. Magari haya hupita sehemu za namna gani?	Milimani na mabondeni.
9. Juu ya mito kuna nini?	Kuna madaraja.
10. Madaraja yote ni membamba?	Hapana, mengine ni mapana.
11. Magari hupitaje juu ya madaraja membamba?	Hupita moja moja, polepole.
12. Katika sehemu gani magari hukimbia sana?	Katika sehemu zilizo sawa, zisizokuwa na milima.
13. Ni vibaya kukimbiza sana gari la abiria?	Oh ndiyo, kwa sababu ni hatari.
14. Wenye magari hupata faida tu?	Sio faida tu, pia hasara.

15. Kwa nini magari ya bidhaa hayachukui abiria?	Ni amri ya serikali.

Review Sentences, Units 1 - 100

1.	Alinipa vitabu viwili.	He gave me two books.
2.	Kimoja ni cheusi na kingine ni chekundu.	One is black and the other is red.
3.	Mahali penyewe ni pazuri sana.	The place itself is very beautiful.
4.	Watoto walifika alipokuwa akila.	The children arrived when he was eating.
5.	Mama alifika mtoto alipoanza kulia.	The mother arrived when the child began to cry.
6.	Bado hajamaliza kazi yake.	He hasn't finished his work yet.
7.	Alivinunua kwa shilingi hamsini na tano.	He bought them for 55 shillings.
8.	Nijaliwapo kufika Nairobi nitamtembelea Hamedi.	If God grants that I reach Nairobi, I'll visit Hamedi.
9.	Akinipunguzia bei nitakinunua kile kikapu.	If he reduces the price for me, I'll buy that basket there.
10.	Suruali yako inayo mifuko mingapi?	How many pockets do your trousers have?
11.	Mbuzi wako huko kwenye nyasi nyingi.	The goats are where there is lots of grass.
12.	Bila shaka barabara za kwao ni nzuri sana.	Certainly their roads are very nice.
13.	Unayo mizigo mingapi kwa jumla?	How many pieces of luggage have you altogether?
14.	Ataongea juu ya elimu ya Waafrika.	He will speak on the education of Africans.
15.	Mimea hubadilishwa kila mwaka.	The crops are rotated every year.

16.	Shamba langu limegawanywa katika sehemu tano.	My farm is divided into five parts.
17.	Mtandikie mgeni kitanda.	Make the bed for the guest.
18.	Wakulima na watoto wao walipewa msaada wa fedha.	The farmers and their children were given financial assistance.
19.	Yeye na dada yake wanafanana.	He and his sister resemble one another.
20.	Nguo avaazo huzinunua kutoka Ulaya.	The clothes he wears are purchased in Europe.
21.	Mwambie akuonyeshe godoro liliko.	Ask him to show you where the mattress is.
22.	Unafikiri nguo zimelowekwa?	Do you think the clothes are wet?
23.	Nani apigaye pasi nguo zake?	Who irons his clothes?
24.	Watoto wachungao ng'ombe hawa, wako wapi?	Where are the children who tend the cattle?
25.	Tutaondokaje hapa?	How will we leave here?
26.	Mtapanda gari la moshi.	You will take the train.
27.	Tutafanyaje ili tupate msaada na pesa?	What shall we do in order to get financial assistance?
28.	Baba alipofika, mama alikuwa hajaanza kupika.	When Father arrived, Mother had not yet begun cooking.
29.	Maziwa yamechemka hata yakamwagika.	The milk boiled over.
30.	Suruali haijapigwa pasi.	The pair of trousers hasn't been ironed yet.
31.	Mto umo ndani ya sanduku.	The pillow is in the chest.
32.	Kwanini balozi hajafika?	Why hasn't the diplomat arrived?

33.	Haya, twendelee basi.	O.K., let's go on.
34.	Vifungo vyote vya koti lake vimepotea.	All the buttons of his coat are lost.
35.	Sina pesa za kuvunja noti ya shilingi ishirini.	I don't have change for a 20 shilling note.
36.	Duka liko kushoto kwa jumba la sinema.	The shop is to the left of the theater.
37.	Juzi tulikuwa tumeishiwa chakula chote.	The day before yesterday, we were completely out of food.
38.	Msipigane kwa sababu ya thumni.	Don't fight over a 50 cent piece.
39.	Hawakusudii kuja kesho kututembelea.	They don't plan to come to see us tomorrow.
40.	Yafaa kuwazuia watoto wasichezecheze barabarani.	It's necessary to prevent children from playing around in the street.

Unit 101

1. Basic Dialogue. Riding a bicycle on the streets.

Hamisi

Unajua kuendesha baiskeli?	Do you know [how] to ride a bicycle?

Abasi

Ndiyo, lakini nilianza majuzi hivi.	Yes, but I began only recently.

Hamisi

-sikiliza	to listen
sheria (N)	law
Sikiliza bwana, ni hatari sana kuendesha baiskeli kama hujui sheria za barabara.	Listen, Mister, it is very dangerous to ride a bicycle if you don't the traffic regulations.
Kila wakati endesha upande wa kushoto wa barabara.	Always ride on the left side of the road.
kengele (N)	bell
Piga kengele kama kuna m̀tu mbele yako.	Ring the bell if there is someone ahead of you.
-geuka	to turn
ishara (N)	signal
Ukitaka kugeuka, onyesha ishara.	If you want to turn, give a signal.
Waangalie sana wapitao kwa m̀guu.	Watch the pedestrians carefully.

Notes

A. 'Next' and 'last' with units of time.

The Swahili equivalents for 'next week', 'next month', etc. are in the form:

noun	rel. a-tense of kuja
mwezi	( ) ja ( ) o
wiki	
mwaka	

2.

A. Relative forms of the a-tense.

m̀guu	Waangalie sana wapitao kwa m̀guu.	Watch out for those crossing on foot.
baiskeli	Waangalie sana waendeshao baiskeli.	Watch for those riding bicycles.
motokaa	Waangalie sana waendeshao motokaa.	Watch for those driving automobiles.

B. Relative forms of a-tense, in time expressions.

↓	Tutaanza kujifunza mwezi ujao.	We'll begin studying next month.
mwaka	Tutaanza kujifunza mwaka ujao.	We'll begin studying next year.
wiki	Tutaanza kujifunza wiki ijayo.	We'll begin studying next week.
kupanda	Tutaanza kupanda mbegu wiki ijayo.	We'll begin sowing seeds next week.
kuvuna	Tutaanza kuvuna wiki ijayo.	We'll begin harvesting next week.
mwezi	Tutaanza kuvuna mwezi ujao.	We'll begin harvesting next week.

C. Nouns used as objects of -geuza.

maneno	Tugeuze maneno haya.	Let's change these words.
m̀pango	Tugeuze m̀pango huu.	Let's change this program.
mipango	Tugeuze mipango hii.	Let's change these programs.
majibu	Tugeuze majibu haya.	Let's change these answers.
rangi	Tugeuze rangi hii.	Let's change this color.

D. Nouns used as objects of -badili.

sheria	Tubadili sheria hizi.	Let's change these laws.
shati	Tubadili shati hili.	Let's exchange this shirt.
nguo	Tubadili nguo hii.	Let's exchange this piece of cloth.

E. The derived stem -badilishana.

koti	Tubadilishane makoti.	Let's exchange coats.
nguo	Tubadilishane nguo.	Let's exchange clothes.

kofia kalamu kitabu

3.

A. Relative forms of the a-tense.

vyombo	Vyombo vinahitaji kusafishwa. Nani asafishaye vyombo?	The dishes need washing. Who washes the dishes?
vitanda	Vitanda vinahitaji kutandikwa. Nani atandikaye vitanda?	The beds need making. Who makes the beds?
maji	Maji yanahitaji kufutwa. Nani afutaye maji?	The water needs wiping up. Who wipes the water up?
vijiti	Vijiti vinahitaji kukatwa. Nani akataye vijiti?	The bushes need cutting. Who cuts the bushes?

Unit 102

1. Basic Dialogue. Conditions of employment.

Sangai

Siku hizi wafanya kazi wapi?	Where are you working these days?

Wambua

fedha (N)	money
Katika Idara ya Fedha.	In the Ministry of Finance.
Twafanya kazi kwa siku tano.	We work five days [a week].

Sangai

M̂shahara ni kiasi gani?	How much is the pay?

Wambua

Shilingi mia mbili ham̂sini.	250 shillings [per month].
Tunafanya kazi kwa muda wa saa saba.	We work a seven-hour day.

Sangai

M̂naanza lini asubuhi?	When do you begin in the morning?

Wambua

adhuhuri	noon
Saa mbili m̂paka adhuhuri tupum̂zikapo.	8:00 until noon, when we rest.

Sangai

Halafu?	Then?

Wambua

alasiri	early afternoon
Halafu, tunaanza tena alasiri m̂paka saa kumi.	Then, we begin again in the afternoon [and work] until 4.

A. Matching hours with portions of the day.

Point to the appropriate hour as each sentence is practiced. Practice in fixed, then random order.

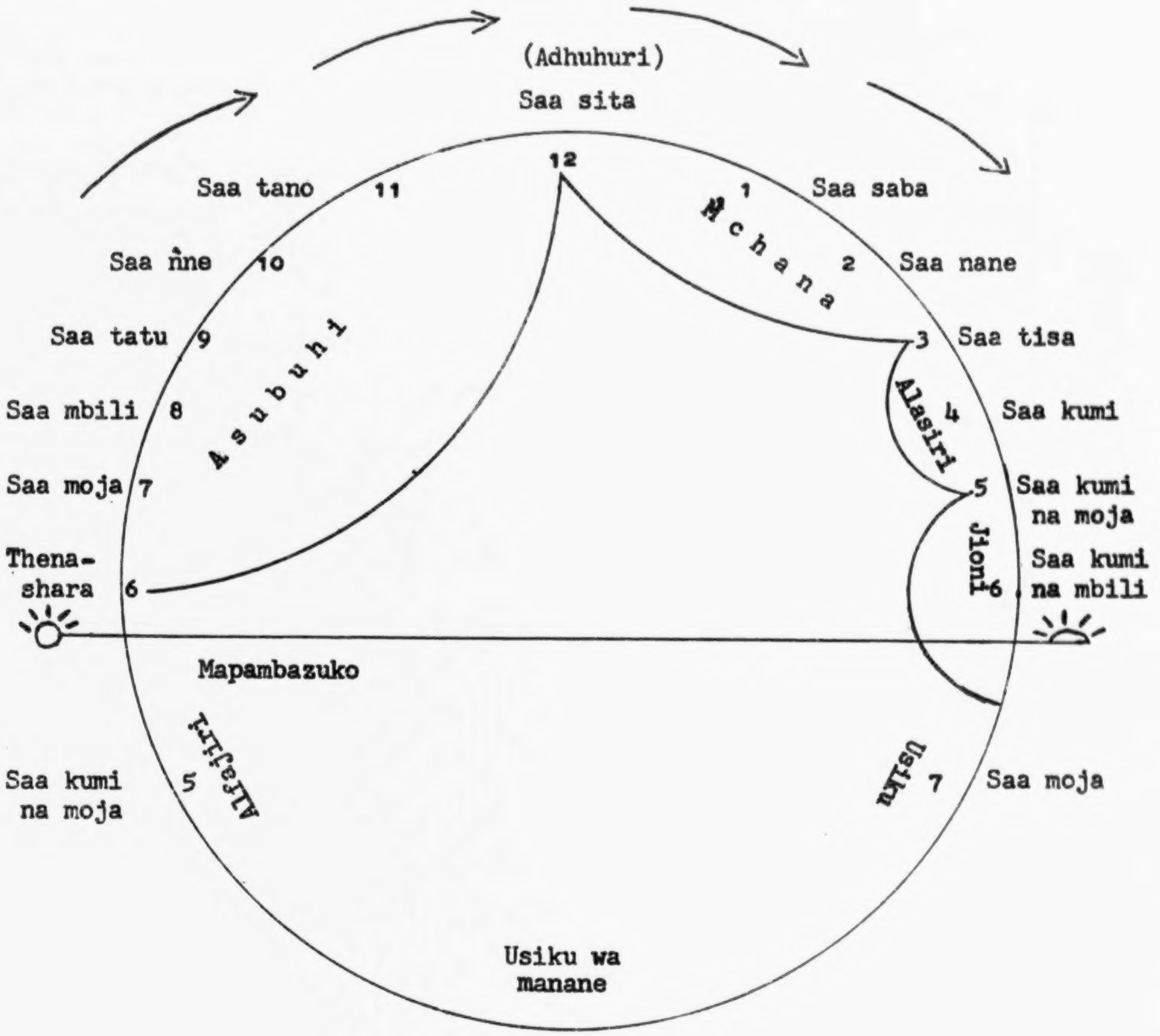
moja	Alifika saa moja asubuhi.	He arrived at seven o'clock in the morning.

mbili tatu ǹne tano

sita	Alifika saa sita adhuhuri.	He arrived at noon.
saba	Alifika saa saba m̀chana.	He arrived at one o'clock in the afternoon.

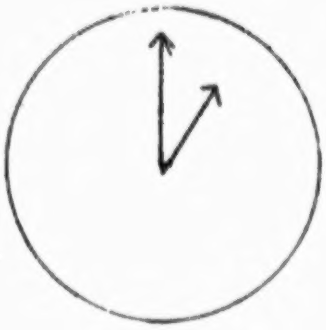
nane tisa kumi

kumi na moja	Alifika saa kumi na moja jioni.	He arrived at five o'clock in the evening.
kumi na mbili	Alifika saa kumi na mbili jioni.	He arrived at six o'clock in the evening.

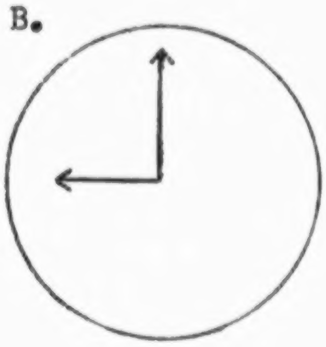

(Adhuhuri)
Saa sita
12
Saa tano
11
Saa ñne
10
Saa tatu
9
Saa mbili
8
Saa moja
7
Thena-shara
6
Asubuhi
1
Saa saba
Mchana
2
Saa nane
3
Saa tisa
Alasiri
4
Saa kumi
5
Saa kumi na moja
Jioni
6
Saa kumi na mbili
Mapambazuko
Alfajiri
5
Saa kumi na moja
Usiku
7
Saa moja
Usiku wa manane

3.
A. What are the following in Swahili? (Assume that the sun is up.)

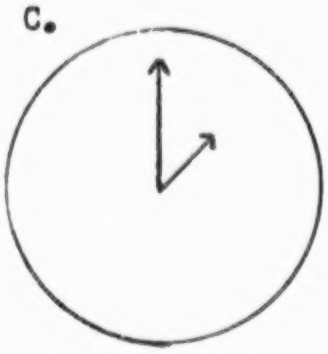
A.



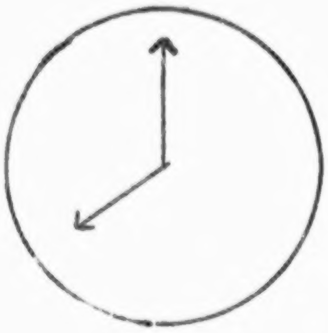
B.



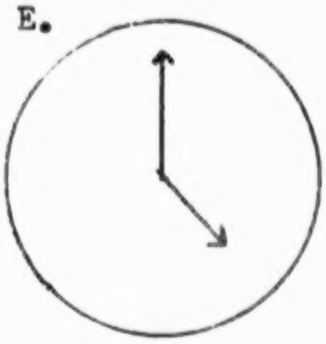
C.



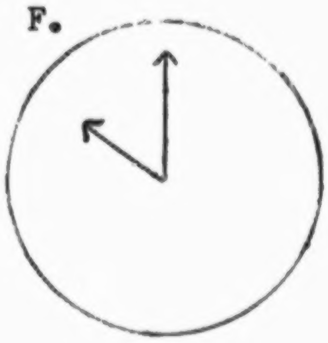
D.



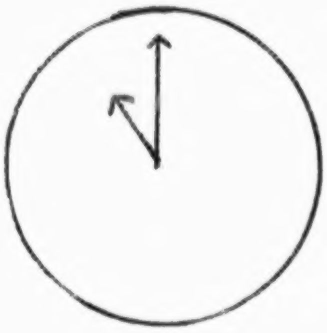
E.



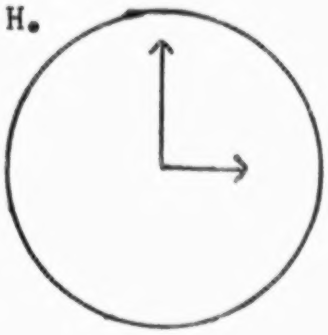
F.



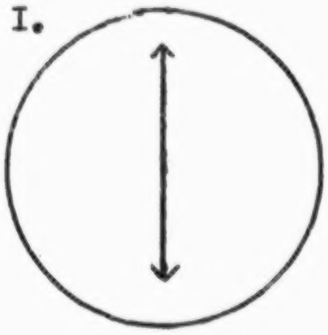
G.



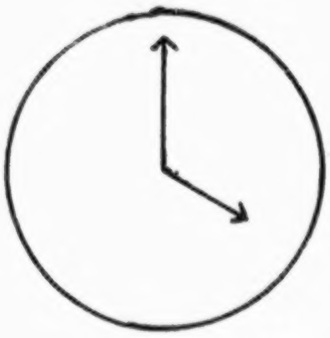
H.



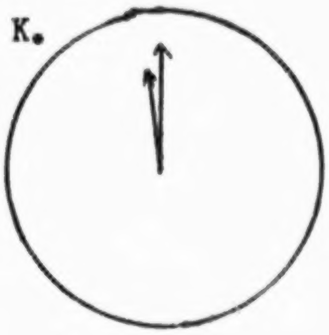
I.



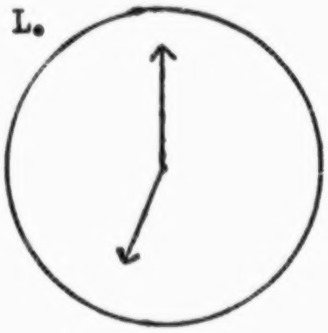
J.



K.



L.



Unit 103

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Sangai

Kazi yenyewe ni ngumu?	Is the work itself hard?

Wambua

afisi (N)	office
Hapana, ukiwa umeelimika, unafanya kazi afisini. Lakini wengine wanafanya kazi ngumu.	No, if you are educated, you work in an office. But some do hard work.
bidhaa (N)	merchandise
kadhalika	etc.
Wanabeba bidhaa kama sabuni, mafuta ya taa, na kadhalika.	They carry merchandise like soap, kerosene, and so forth.
-paka	to apply
(-pakia)	(to pile up)
Wanazipakia katika motokaa.	They load them into a lorry.

Sangai

jasho (MA)	sweat
Kweli ni kazi ya jasho!	[That] is really sweaty work.

Wambua

mapum̀ziko	place/time of resting
Lakini sote twapewa nguo bure, na chakula saa ya mapum̀ziko.	But we all are given free clothing, and food during the rest hour.

Sangai

bahasha (N)	envelope
karatasi (N)	paper
-omba	to request
Nitakwenda kununua bahasha na karatasi ya barua ya kuombea kazi kwenu.	I'm going to buy an envelope and letter paper for applying for work at your place.

Notes

A. The stem ~ote 'all'.

As we have seen, the stem ~ote takes a full set of class concords. It also takes prefixes for first person and second person plural:

sote	we all
nyote	you all

2.

A. Subjunctive with object prefixes.

bidhaa	Ziweke bidhaa karibu na m̀lango.	Put the goods near the door.
bahasha	Ziweke bahasha karibu na m̀lango.	Put the envelopes near the door.
jembe	Liweke jembe karibu na m̀lango.	Put the hoe near the door.
majembe	Yaweke majembe karibu na m̀lango.	Put the hoes near the door.
meza	Iweke meza karibu na m̀lango.	Put the table near the door.

B. Relatives of me-tense and a-tense.

kuelimika	Wote walioelimika wafanya kazi afisini.	All those who are educated work in the office.

kujua	Wote wajuao kuandika na kusoma wafanya kazi afisini.	All those who know how to read and write work in the office.
kusema	Wote wasemao Kiingereza wafanya kazi afisini.	All those who speak English work in the office.
kujifunza	Wote waliojifunza Ulaya wafanya kazi afisini.	All those who studied in Europe work in the office.
kuhitimu	Wote waliohitimu wafanya kazi afisini.	All those who qualified work in the office.

C. Sote 'we all'.

kuchelewa	Tutachelewa sote.	We'll all be late.
kufurahi	Tutafurahi sote.	We'll all be happy.

kusaidia kwenda

D. Nyote 'you all'.

kuenda	Nendeni nyote.	All of you go.
kuja	Njooni nyote.	All of you come.

kungoja kuanza kuandika

3.

A. Relative with 1 plu. s.p.

kuwa	Sote tulikuwa kanisani. Sote tuliokuwako tulipata homa kesho yake.	We all were in the church. All of us who were there got a fever the following day.
kuenda	Sote tulikwenda kanisani. Sote tuliokwenda huko tulipata homa kesho yake.	We all went to church. All of us who went there got a fever the following day.
kula	Sote tulikula chakula kanisani.	We all ate food in the church.

	Sote tuliokula chakula huko tulipata homa kesho yake.	All of us who ate food there got a fever the following day.
kushinda	Sote tulishinda m̀jini.	We all spent the day in town.
	Sote tulioshinda huko tulipata homa kesho yake.	All of us who spent the day there got a fever the following day.

B. Relative with 2 plu. s.p.

kuwa	Nyote m̀likuwa shuleni.	You all were in the school.
	Nyote m̀liokuwako m̀lipata homa.	All of you who were there got a fever.
kuenda	Nyote m̀likwenda sokoni.	You all went to market.
	Nyote m̀liokwenda huko m̀lipata homa.	All of you who went there got a fever.
kula	Nyote m̀likula m̀jini.	You all ate in town.
	Nyote m̀liokula huko m̀lipata homa.	All of you who ate there got a fever.
kushinda	Nyote m̀lishinda Morogoro.	You all spent the day in Morogoro.
	Nyote m̀lioshinda huko m̀lipata homa.	All of you who spent the day there got a fever.

Conversation Starters

1. A is looking for a good job. His friend B advises him.

Unit 104

1. Basic Dialogue. Rearranging the furniture.

Abasi	
chumba (VI)	room
Chumba hiki kimejaa vyombo vingi visivyohitajiwa upesi.	This room is full of furniture which which will not be needed soon.
pambo (MA)	furniture, ornament
Mutisya	
Ni mapambo ya nyumba.	They are pieces of furriture for the house.
Abasi	
Tafadhali viondoe ukipata wakati.	Please remove them when you have time.
Mutisya	
Nitaviweka wapi?	Where shall I put them?
Abasi	
rafu (N)	shelf
dari (N)	upper floor
Chukua rafu na kabati ndani ya chumba cha Hamisi, darini.	Take the shelf and the cupboard into Hamisi's room, upstairs.
kinanda (VI)	stringed instrument, gramophone
Kile kinanda, weka upande wa kitanda.	That musical instrument, put [it] by the bed.
kufuli (N)	padlock
ufunguo (U-N)	key
-funga	to lock

-fungua	to unlock
Kisha, chukua kufuli na funguo hizi ufunge ili watoto wasiweze kufungua.	[When you] finish, take this padlock and key and lock [the room] so that the children aren't able to unlock [it].

Notes

A. Negative relative present verbs.

visivyohitajiwa	[things] which are not needed

The negative relative forms corresponding to the present tense have *-si-* in the slot between subject prefix and relative affix.

B. The 'reversive' suffix.

kufunga	to lock
kufungua	to unlock

The 'reversive' suffix *-u-* is found in the word *kufungua*. Compare also *kuvaa* 'to don', *kuvua* 'to doff'.

2.

A. Object before the verb.

kitanda	Kile kinanda, weka upande wa kitanda.	That (stringed) instrument, put it beside the bed.
meza	Kile kinanda, weka upande wa meza.	That (stringed) instrument, put it beside the table.

m̂lango kiti jiko

B. *-pi* 'which' followed by relative.

vyombo	Vyombo vipi visivyohitajiwa sasa?	Which dishes are not wanted now?
kikapu	Kikapu kipi kisichohitajiwa sasa?	Which basket is not wanted now?

birika	Birika lipi lisilohitajiwa sasa?	Which kettle is not wanted now?
magodoro	Magodoro yapi yasiyohitajiwa sasa?	Which mattresses are not wanted now?
wino	Wino upi usiohitajiwa sasa?	Which ink is not wanted now?
m̀kasi	M̀kasi upi usiohitajiwa sasa?	Which pair of scissors is not wanted now?
mito	Mito ipi isiyohitajiwa sasa?	Which pillows are not wanted now?
sabuni	Sabuni ipi isiyohitajiwa sasa?	Which soap is not wanted now?
shuka (pl.)	Shuka zipi zisizohitajiwa sasa?	Which sheets are not wanted now?

vijiko kitanda godoro mapanga ubao mimea pasi

nguo (pl.)

C. Negative relative, present tense.

kupiga	Wasiopiga kelele watapewa pesa.	Those who do not make noise will be given money.
kukimbia	Wasiokimbia watapewa pesa.	Those who do not run will be given money.
kupewa	Wasiopewa livu watapewa pesa.	Those who are not given leave will given money.
kusumbua	Wasiotusumbua watapewa pesa.	Those who do not bother us will be given money.
kuchelewa	Wasiochelewa watapewa pesa.	Those who are not late will be given money.
kucheza	Wasiocheza watapewa pesa.	Those who do not play will be given money.

kulima	Wasiolima njugu watapewa fedha na serikali.	Those who do not grow peanuts will be given money by the government.

3.

A. The reversive stem -vua.

kofia	Vaa kofia hii. Usiivue m̀paka adhuhuri.	Put on this hat. Don't take it off till noon.
suruali	Vaa suruali hii. Usiivue m̀paka adhuhuri.	Put on these trousers. Don't take them off till noon.
nguo	Vaa nguo hizi. Usizivue m̀paka adhuhuri.	Put on these clothes. Don't take them off till noon.
shati	Vaa mashati haya. Usiyavue m̀paka adhuhuri.	Put on these shirts. Don't take them off till noon.

B.

kofia	Vua kofia ile! Ni yangu. Kwa nini uliivaa?	Take off that hat! It's mine. Why did you put it on?
suruali	Vua suruali ile! Ni yangu. Kwa nini uliivaa?	Take off those trousers! They're mine. Why did you put them on?
nguo	Vua nguo ile. Ni yangu. Kwa nini uliivaa?	Take off that cloth! It's mine. Why did you put it on?
shati	Vua shati lile. Ni langu. Kwa nini ulilivaa?	Take off that shirt! It's mine. Why did you put it on?

Unit 105

1. Basic Dialogue. Planning a trip by car.

Butler

Nataka kwenda Bagamoyo kwa motokaa.	I want to go to Bagamoyo by car.
Je, njia ni nzuri?	Is the road good?

Hamisi

Njia ni nzuri, lakini si sana.	The road is good, but not very good.

Butler

Kwa nini?	Why?

Hamisi

daraja (MA)	bridge
Kwa sababu juzi ilinyesha mvua kubwa, na daraja moja limevunjika.	Because the day before yesterday there was a big rain, and one bridge was washed out.

Butler

Sasa nitafikaje Bagamoyo?	Now how shall I get to Bagamoyo?

Hamisi

gogo (MA)	log
Utaweza kufika kwa sababu watu wameweka magogo, na motokaa inaweza kupita hapo polepole.	You will be able to get there because they've put logs [there], and a car can cross there [by going] very slowly.

2.

A. N-class forms of some adjectives.

-zuri	Njia hiyo ilikuwa nzuri.	That road was good.

~refu	Njia hiyo ilikuwa ndefu.	That road was long.
~kubwa	Njia hiyo ilikuwa kubwa.	That road was big.
~pya	Njia hiyo ilikuwa m̀pya.	That road was new.

B. LI-class forms of some adjectives.

~zuri	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa zuri.	That bowl was good.
~bovu	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa bovu.	That bowl was unfit for use.
~kubwa	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa kubwa.	That bowl was large.
~pya	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa jipya.	That bowl was new.
~chafu	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa chafu.	That bowl was dirty.
~eusi	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa jeusi.	That bowl was black.
~zito	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa zito.	That bowl was heavy.

C. M-class forms of some adjectives.

~zuri	M̀to huo ulikuwa m̀zuri.	That pillow was good.
~kubwa	M̀to huo ulikuwa m̀kubwa.	That pillow was big.
~bovu	M̀to huo ulikuwa m̀bovu.	That pillow was in a bad shape.
~pya	Mto huo ulikuwa m̀pya.	That pillow was new.
~chafu	M̀to huo ulikuwa m̀chafu.	That pillow was dirty.
safi	M̀to huo ulikuwa safi.	That pillow was clean.
~eupe	M̀to huo ulikuwa mweupe.	That pillow was white.

D. MI-class forms of some adjectives.

~zuri	Mito hiyo ilikuwa mizuri.	Those pillows were good.
~bovu	Mito hiyo ilikuwa mibovu.	Those pillows were in bad shape.
~pya	Mito hiyo ilikuwa mipya.	Those pillows were new.
~chafu	Mito hiyo ilikuwa michafu.	Those pillows were dirty.
~eupe	Mito hiyo ilikuwa myeupe.	Those pillows were white.

E. U-class forms of some adjectives.

˜zuri	Ubao huo ulikuwa m̂zuri.	That board was good.
˜zito	Ubao huo ulikuwa m̂zito.	That board was heavy.
˜bovu	Ubao huo ulikuwa m̂bovu.	That board was rotten.
˜pya	Ubao huo ulikuwa m̂pya.	That board was new.
˜eusi	Ubao huo ulikuwa mweusi.	That board was black.

3.

A. Switching tense.

↓	Watu wameweka magogo.	People have put logs in place.
kesho	Watu wataweka magogo kesho.	People will put logs in place tomorrow.
sasa	Watu wanaweka magogo sasa.	People are putting logs in place now.
jana	Watu waliweka magogo jana.	People put logs in place yesterday.
bado	Watu hawajaweka magogo bado.	People haven't put longs in place yet.
waambie	Waambie watu waweke magogo.	Tell people to put logs in place.

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Atafika Bagamoyo kesho.	He will arrive at Bagamoyo tomorrow.
jana	Alifika Bagamoyo jana.	He arrived at Bagamoyo yesterday.
tayari	Amekwisha fika Bagamoyo tayari.	He has arrived at Bagamoyo already.
bado	Hajafika Bagamoyo bado.	He hasn't arrived at Bagamoyo yet.

jana	Hakufika Bagamoyo jana.	He didn't arrive at Bagamoyo yesterday.

C. Switching tenses.

↓	Atajaza chumba mapambo kesho.	He will fill the room with furniture tomorrow.
sasa	Anajaza chumba mapambo sasa.	He is filling the room with furniture now.
jana	Alijaza chumba mapambo jana.	He filled the room with furniture yesterday.
wapi	Aliyejaza chumba mapambo yuko wapi?	Where is the one who filled the room with furniture?
sasa	Anayejaza chumba mapambo yuko wapi?	Where is the one who is filling the room with furniture?

Unit 106

1. Basic Dialogue (continued)

Butler	
Je, mbele hakuna hatari nyingine?	Say, is there any danger ahead?
Hamisi	
ajabu (N)	a surprise
Sijui, lakini si ajabu daraja la Mapinga pia limeharibika.	I don't know, but I wouldn't be surprised if the Mapinga bridge is out as well.
Butler	
Naweza kupata m̀tu m̀moja wa kufuatana naye?	Can I get someone to go along with me? ('one person to travel with him')
Hamisi	
iwapo	in case, if
shida (N)	difficulty
Ndiyo. Mimi mwenyewe nitaweza kufuatana nawe na kukusaidia iwapo utapatwa na shida.	Yes, I myself will be able to go with you and help you if you meet difficulty.
Butler	
Vema. Asante sana.	Good! Thanks a lot!
Hamisi	
hali (N)	condition

Kabla ya kuondoka inafaa uangalie kama gari limo katika hali nzuri.	Before leaving it's a good thing for you to check whether the car is in good shape.

Butler

Bila shaka, hata petroli nitaangalia pia.	By all means. I'll also see to the petrol.

2.

A. Si ajabu...

kuharibu	Si ajabu gari lake limeharibika.	It's no wonder his vehicle is broken down.
kutengeneza	Si ajabu gari lake limetengenezwa.	It's no wonder his vehicle is repaired.
kuuza	Si ajabu gari lake limeuzwa.	It's no wonder his vehicle is sold.
hali	Si ajabu gari lake limo katika hali nzuri.	It's no wonder his vehicle is in good condition.

B. ~enyewe.

mimi	Mimi mwenyewe nitakwenda nawe.	I myself will go with you.
yeye	Yeye mwenyewe atakwenda nawe.	He himself will go with you.
sisi	Sisi wenyewe tutakwenda nawe.	We ourselves will go with you.
wao	Wao wenyewe watakwenda nawe.	They themselves will go with you.

C. na with personal pronouns.

sisi	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana nasi.	Father himself will go along with us.

wewe	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana nawe.	Father himself will go along with us.
yeye	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana naye.	Father himself will go along with her.
ninyi	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana nanyi.	Father himself will go along with you (pl).
wao	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana nao.	Father himself will go along with them.
mimi	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana nami.	Father himself will go along with me.

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓	Mbele naona magari.	I see vehicles ahead.
jana	Mbele niliona magari jana.	I saw vehicles ahead yesterday.
hapana	Mbele sikuona magari jana.	I didn't see vehicles ahead yesterday.
bado	Mbele sijaona magari bado.	I haven't seen any vehicles ahead yet.

B. Questions included in a larger sentence.

gari	Gari limo katika hali nzuri? Inafaa uangalie kama gari limo katika hali nzuri.	Is the vehicle in good condition? You'd better check whether the vehicle is in good condition.
vifungo	Vifungo vimo sandukuni? Inafaa uangalie kama vifungo vimo sandukuni.	Are the buttons in the box? You'd better check if the buttons are in the box.
hatari	Kuna hatari nyingine mbele?	Is there other danger ahead?
miiba	Kuna miiba mingi njiani?	Are there many thorns on the road?

Unit 107

1. Basic Dialogue. In a shoe store.

Patel

Karibu, bwana.	Come in, sir!
Je, unataka viatu vya aina gani?	What kind of shoes do you want?

Butler

Ngoja niangalie kwanza.	Wait and let me look first.
Je, m̀na viatu vya Bata?	Do you have Bata shoes?

Patel

Oh, ndiyo, tunavyo katika rangi mbili: nyeusi na nyekundu.	Oh yes, we have them in two colors: black and brown.
Unataka vipi, basi?	Which do you want?

Butler

hebu	''well, then!''
mwundo (MI)	shape, form
chini (N)	below, under
Hebu nione mwundo huo chini ya viatu vyekundu; pia mwundo huu hapa.	Well, then, let me see that style under the brown shoes; also this style here.

Patel

Nitakuonyesha, bwana!	I'll show [them] to you, sir!

2.

A. Chini

kucheza	Watoto wanacheza chini.	The children are playing on the ground.

kuanguka	Mkasi umeanguka chini.	A pair of scissors has fallen down.
kuangusha	Hamisi aliangusha sabuni chini.	Hamisi dropped soap on the ground.
kiko	Kikapu kiko chini.	The basket is on the ground.

B. Negative relative, present tense.

shati	Nataka shati lisiloraruka upesi.	I want a shirt that doesn't get torn easily.
mashati	Nataka mashati yasiyoraruka upesi.	I want shirts that don't get torn easily.
suruali	Nataka suruali isiyoraruka upesi.	I want trousers that don't get torn easily.
nguo	Nataka nguo isiyoraruka upesi.	I want a dress that doesn't get torn easily.
chandalua	Nataka chandalua kisichoraruka upesi.	I want a mosquito net that doesn't get torn easily.
vyandalua	Nataka vyandalua visivyoraruka upesi.	I want mosquito nets that don't get torn easily.

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓	Tunavyo katika rangi tatu.	We have them in three colors.
jana	Tulikuwa navyo katika rangi tatu.	We had them in three colors.
kesho	Tutakuwa navyo katika rangi tatu.	We will have them in three colors.
sasa	Tunavyo katika rangi tatu.	We have them in three colors.

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Wana viatu vya Bata.	They have Bata shoes.
kesho	Watakuwa na viatu vya Bata.	They will have Bata shoes.
jana	Walikuwa na viatu vya Bata.	They had Bata shoes.
hapana	Hawakuwa na viatu vya Bata.	They didn't have Bata shoes.

C. Switching tenses.

↓	Mariamu anataka viatu vyekundu.	Mariamu wants brown shoes.
kesho	Mariamu atataka viatu vyekundu kesho.	Mariamu will want brown shoes tomorrow.
hapana	Mariamu hatataka viatu vyekundu.	Mariamu will not want brown shoes.
jana	Mariamu hakutaka viatu vyekundu.	Mariamu did not want brown shoes.

D. Switching tenses.

↓	Sanduku hili limejaa viatu.	This box is full of shoes.
jana	Sanduku hili lilikuwa limejaa viatu jana.	This box was full of shoes yesterday.
kesho	Sanduku hili litakuwa limejaa viatu kesho.	This box will be full of shoes tomorrow.
sasa	Sanduku hili limejaa viatu sasa.	This box is full of shoes now.
wapi?	Sanduku lililokuwa limejaa viatu liko wapi?	Where is the box that was full of shoes?

Conversation Starters

1. A and B discuss preparations for a cross-country trip.

2. Improvise several conversations beginning with the question 'Utafanya nini kesho?'

Unit 108

1. Basic Dialogue (continued)

Butler

jozi (N)	pair
soli	sole
~embamba	narrow, delicate, thin
Bei gani jozi hii yenye soli nyembamba?	How much [is] this pair with thin soles?

Patel

Shilingi thelathini na tisa tu.	Only 39 shillings.

Butler

Na hii jozi nyingine?	And this other pair?

Patel

kuliko	where there is, than
Hii ni shilingi arobaini na sita, bwana, kwa sababu jozi hii ni nzuri zaidi kuliko hii.	These are 46 shillings, sir, because this style is more attractive than this [other].

Butler

m̀no	much
Lakini, bwana, bei yake ni ghali m̀no.	But sir, their price is very high.

Patel

hafifu	poor in quality
bora	best

Ndiyo. Unajua, kitu bora siku zote ni ghali zaidi kuliko kitu hafifu.	Yes, you know the best (thing) is always more expensive than the low-quality stuff.

2.

A. Kinds of soles.

˜embamba	Nataka viatu vyenye soli nyembamba.	I want the shoes with thin soles.
˜gumu	Nataka viatu vyenye soli ngumu.	I want the shoes with hard soles.
laini	Nataka viatu vyenye soli laini.	I want the shoes with soft soles.
˜zito	Nataka viatu vyenye soli nzito.	I want the shoes with heavy soles.
m̀pira	Nataka viatu vyenye soli ya m̀pira.	I want the shoes with rubber soles.
ngozi	Nataka viatu vyenye soli ya ngozi.	I want the shoes with leather soles.

B. Comparisons with kuliko.

m̀zigo	M̀zigo huu ni m̀zito kuliko huu.	This load is heavier than that.
mizigo	Mizigo hii ni mizito kuliko hii.	These loads are heavier than those.
kikapu	Kikapu hiki ni kizito kuliko hiki.	This basket is heavier than this.
vikapu	Vikapu hivi ni vizito kuliko hivi.	These baskets are heavier than these.
gogo	Gogo hili ni zito kuliko hili.	This log is heavier than this.

magogo	Magogo haya ni mazito kuliko haya.	These logs are heavier than these.
ndege	Ndege huyu ni m̀zito kuliko huyu.	This bird is heavier than this.
meza	Meza hii ni nzito kuliko hii.	This table is heavier than this.
ubao	Ubao huu ni m̀zito kuliko huu.	This board is heavier than this.

C. Comparison with zaidi kuliko.

mimi	Juma asema Kiswahili vizuri zaidi kuliko mimi.	Juma speaks Swahili better than I.
wewe	Juma asema Kiswahili vizuri zaidi kuliko wewe.	Juma speaks Swahili better than you.

Daudi sisi ninyi wengine

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓	Bei ya viatu ni ghali m̀no.	The price of shoes is exceedingly high.
mwaka ujao	Bei ya viatu itakuwa ghali m̀no mwaka ujao.	The price of shoes will be exceedingly high next year.
mwaka uliopita	Bei ya viatu ilikuwa ghali m̀no mwaka uliopita.	The price of shoes was exceedingly high last year.
hapana	Bei ya viatu haikuwa ghali mwaka uliopita.	The price of shoes was not exceedingly high last year.

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Niko katika darasa la tano.	I am in the fifth grade.
mwaka ujao	Mwaka ujao, nitakuwa katika darasa la tano.	Next year, I will be in the fifth grade.

mwaka uliopita	Mwaka uliopita, nilikuwa katika darasa la tano.	Last year, I was in the fifth grade.
bado	Bado sijawa katika darasa la tano.	I'm not in the fifth grade yet.

C. Switching tenses.

↓	Alikuwa Mbeya.	He was at Mbeya.
ni nani	Ni nani aliyekuwa Mbeya?	Who was at Mbeya?
ujao	Ni nani atakayekuwa Mbeya mwaka ujao?	Who will be at Mbeya next year?
uliopita	Ni nani aliyekuwa Mbeya mwaka uliopita?	Who was at Mbeya last year?
sasa	Ni nani aliye Mbeya sasa?	Who is at Mbeya now?

Unit 109

1. Basic Dialogue (continued)

Butler	
Hivi hapa je?	What about these here?
Patel	
sawa	like
Bei ya viatu hivi ni sawa na bei ya jozi hii.	The price of these shoes is the same as the price of those.
Butler	
Hivi si ghali kama vile! Unavyo vyeusi?	These are not so expensive as those. Do you have them [in] black?
Patel	
Ndiyo.	Yes [we have]!
Butler	
Aha, hivyo ndivyo viatu nivitakavyo!	Aha! These are the shoes that I want.
Lakini, nipunguzie bei kidogo bwana.	But reduce the price a little for me, sir.
Patel	
Tuna bei moja tu; hatupunguzi wala hatuzidishi.	We have only one price; we don't lower or increase [our prices].
Butler	
Haidhuru! Nipatie kwa bei hiyo hiyo.	No matter. Give it to me at that price.
Patel	
Vyema!	Fine!

Notes

A. The negative word wala.

hatupunguzi wala hatuzidishi	we neither lower nor raise [prices]

The word wala between two negative verbs corresponds to English 'neither ...nor...'

2.

A. ndi( ) plus noun plus relative of a-tense.

viatu	Hivyo ndivyo viatu nivitakavyo!	Those are the shoes that I want.
kitambaa	Hicho ndicho kitambaa nikitakacho!	That is the handkerchief that I want.
m̂fuko	Huo ndio m̂fuko niutakao!	That is the bag that I want.
mifuko	Hiyo ndiyo mifuko niitakayo!	Those are the bags that I want.
panga	Hilo ndilo panga nilitakalo!	That's the panga that I want.
mapanga	Hayo ndiyo mapanga niyatakayo!	Those are the pangas that I want.
sabuni	Hiyo ndiyo sabuni niitakayo!	That's the soap that I want.
shuka	Hiyo ndiyo shuka niitakayo!	That's the sheet that I want.
wino	Huo ndio wino niutakao!	That's the ink that I want.

B. ndi ( ) plus noun plus relative of a-tense.

vifungo	Hivi ndivyo vifungo tuvipendavyo.	These are the buttons that we like.
kitabu	Hiki ndicho kitabu tukipendacho.	This is the book that we like.
m̂pango	Huu ndio m̂pango tuupendao.	This is the plan that we like.

mahali	Hapa ndipo mahali tupapendapo.	This is the place that we like.
godoro	Hili ndilo godoro tulipendalo.	This is the mattress that we like.
matunda	Haya ndiyo matunda tuyapendayo.	These are the fruits that we like.
urefu	Huu ndio urefu tuupendao.	This is the length that we like.
mbegu	Hizi ndizo mbegu tuzipendazo.	These are the seeds that we like.
shuka	Hii ndiyo shuka tuipendayo.	This is the sheet that we like.

3.

A. wala

kupunguza	Wanapunguza bei? Hawapunguzi wala hawazidishi.	Do they reduce the price? They neither lower nor increase.
kuuza	Wanauza maharagwe? Hawauzi wala hawanunui.	Do they sell beans? They neither sell nor buy.
kwenda	Wanakwenda? Hawaendi wala hawaji.	Do they go? They don't go nor come.
kulima	Wanalima? Hawalimi wala hawapalilii.	Do they cultivate? They don't cultivate nor weed.

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Wamezidisha nauli ya gari la moshi.	They have increased the train fare.
mwezi uliopita	Walizidisha nauli ya gari la moshi mwezi uliopita.	They increased the train fare last month.
ujao	Watazidisha nauli ya gari la moshi mwezi ujao.	They will increase the train fare next month.

hapana	Hawatazidisha nauli ya gari la moshi mwezi ujao.	They will not increase the train fare next month.
bado	Bado hawajazidisha nauli ya gari la moshi.	They haven't yet increased the train fare.

C. Adjective antonyms.

ghali	Viatu hivi ni ghali kama vile? Hapana, vile ni rahisi zaidi kuliko hivi.	Are these shoes just as expensive as those? No, those are cheaper than these.
~gumu	Viatu hivi ni vigumu kama vile? Hapana, vile ni laini zaidi kuliko hivi.	Are these shoes just as tough as those? No, those are softer than these.
~zuri	Viatu hivi ni vizuri kama vile? Hapana, vile ni vibaya zaidi kuliko hivi.	Are these shoes just as beautiful as those? No, those are uglier than these.
~chafu	Viatu hivi ni vichafu kama vile? Hapana, vile ni safi zaidi kuliko hivi.	Are these shoes just as dirty as those? No, those are cleaner than these.
~zito	Viatu hivi ni vizito kama vile? Hapana, vile ni vyepesi zaidi kuliko hivi.	Are these shoes just as heavy as those? No, those are lighter than these.

Conversation Starters

1. Buy a pair of shoes or a hat. Discuss the price, and also the qualities of the merchandise.

Unit 110

1. Basic Dialogue. I live in the country.

Abasi

Bwana Mirambo, siku hizi unaishi wapi?	(Mr.) Mirambo, where are you living these days?

Mirambo

Ninaishi shamba, bwana.	I'm living on a farm (sir).

Abasi

Nyumba yako iko mahali gani huko shamba?	Where is your house there on the farm?

Mirambo

m̀lima (MI)	mountain
m̀paka (MI)	boundary
kati	between, among
Ikiwa watoka m̀jini, iko chini ya m̀lima kati ya m̀paka wa jimbo letu na` lenu.	If you leave the city, it is below the mountain between the boundary of our province and yours.

Abasi

nyuma (N)	after, on far side of
mwitu (MI)	forest
m̀to (MI)	river
Nyuma ya m̀lima huo kuna mwitu na m̀to vile vile?	On the far side of that mountain are there also a forest and a river?

Mirambo

Hasa!	Right!

2.

A. Kati

nyumba	Ṁpaka uko kati ya nyumba yetu na yao.	The boundary is between our house and theirs.
shamba	Ṁpaka uko kati ya shamba letu na lao.	The boundary is between our shamba and theirs.
kijiji	Ṁpaka uko kati ya kijiji chetu na chao.	The boundary is between our village and theirs.
ṁji	Ṁpaka uko kati ya ṁji wetu na wao.	The boundary is between our town and theirs.

3.

A. Relative forms, past tense, agreeing with object of verb.

pombe	Alikunywa pombe. Pombe aliyoinywa ilikuwa mbaya.	He drank beer. The beer that he drank was bad.
maji	Alikunywa maji. Maji aliyoyanywa yalikuwa mabaya.	He drank water. The water that he drank was bad.
chai	Alikunywa chai. Chai aliyoinywa ilikuwa mbaya.	He drank tea. The tea that he drank was bad.
maziwa	Alikunywa maziwa. Maziwa aliyoyanywa yalikuwa mabaya.	He drank milk. The milk that he drank was bad.
kinywaji	Alikunywa kinywaji. Kinywaji alichokinywa kilikuwa kibaya.	He took a beverage. The beverage he took was bad.
uji	Alikunywa uji. Uji aliounywa ulikuwa mbaya.	He drank gruel. The gruel that he drank was bad.

B. Relative past, agreeing with object of verb.

kisu	Alinunua kisu jana. Leo amejiumiza kwa kisu alichokinunua jana.	He bought a knife yesterday. Today, he hurt himself with the knife which he bought yesterday.
panga	Alinunua panga jana. Leo amejiumiza kwa panga alilolinunua jana.	He bought a panga yesterday. He hurt himself with the panga which he bought yesterday.
jembe	Alinunua jembe jana. Leo amejiumiza kwa jembe alilolinunua jana.	He bought a hoe yesterday. He hurt himself today with the hoe which he bought yesterday.
uma	Alinunua uma jana. Leo amejiumiza kwa uma aliounununua jana.	He bought a fork yesterday. He hurt himself with the fork which he bought yesterday.
kalamu	Alinunua kalamu jana. Leo amejiumiza kwa kalamu aliyoinunua jana.	He bought a pen yesterday. He hurt himself with the pen which he bought yesterday.

READING SELECTION VI

Chama cha Wafanyi Kazi

Kama tunavyojua, wafanyi kazi hunung'unika katika kazi zao. Pengine wananung'unika kwa ajili ya mshahara au pengine juu ya saa za kazi. Wakipeleka au wakituma mashtaka kwa bwana mkubwa wao, kwa kawaida mjumbe huwa taabuni.

Katika miaka kumi au kumi na mitano iliyopita, wafanyi kazi wa Kenya walijiunga katika vyama mbali mbali. Madereva wote walianzisha chama chao. Wapishi, waalimu, wapagazi, na kadhalika, wote walifanya vyama vyao. Waliwachagua viongozi wao wenyewe, kama vile, mwenye kiti, mwandishi mkuu, na mweka hazina.

Walichanga pesa hata wakajenga afisi zao wenyewe--mahali pa kukutania. Wanachama wa vyama hivi mbali mbali walikusanyika wakachagua mkubwa wao, ambaye ndiye aliyekuwa mtu wa kuwaongoza wakati wanapogoma.

Pakiwa na mabishano juu ya mshahara kati ya wafanyi kazi na wakuu wa kazi, yule mkubwa wao humwendea mkuu wa kazi na kuwasemea wafanya kazi wote.

Sasa tunacho chama kikubwa sana cha wafanyi kazi wa kila aina katika nchi ya Kenya.

Maswali	Majibu
1. Wafanyi kazi hunung'unika juu ya vitu gani?	Juu ya mshahara au juu ya saa za kazi.
2. Ukitaka mshahara zaidi utamwambia nani?	Utamwambia mwenye kazi.
3. Wajumbe wako taabuni?	Ndiyo, wakubwa wa kazi hawawapendi wajumbe.
4. Tangu lini wafanyi kazi wa Kenya wakajiunga pamoja?	Tangu miaka kumi hivi iliyopita.
5. Walijiungaje?	Walifanya vyama mbali mbali.

6. Ni watu gani waliofanya vyama?	Watu kama, madereva, wapishi, makarani na kadhalika.
7. Walichanga pesa za nini?	Za kujengea afisi na vyombo vya kuandikia.
8. Wanao wakubwa wao?	Ndiyo, waliwachagua viongozi wao.
9. Wafanyi kazi wasipopata maongezo ya mshahara wanafanya je?	Wanagoma.
10. Kwa muda gani?	Mpaka viongozi watulize manung'uniko.
11. Wafanyi kazi wa Amerika hugoma?	Ndiyo.
12. Nani mkubwa wa Idara ya Kazi katika Amerika?	Bwana __________.

Vocabulary

(ma)bishano (MA)	dispute, quarrel
-chagua	to choose, elect
chama (VI)	club, union, party
-changa	to collect
-goma	to strike (work)
-jenga	to build
kiongozi (VI pers)	leader
-kusanyika	to be gathered together
-ongoza	to lead
(ma)shtaka (MA)	accusation, complaint
taabu (N)	trouble, distress

Unit 111

1. Basic Dialogue (continued)

Abasi

Napajua mahali hapo!	I know that place!

Mirambo

zamani	time, ancient times
ovyo	at random, carelessly
ardhi (N)	soil
Zamani, pale palikuwa pa ovyo, ingawa ardhi yake ilikuwa nzuri.	In early times, that place was a mess, even though the soil was good.

Abasi

ajili (N)	cause, reason, sake
akili (N)	ability, intelligence
~erevu	shrewd, clever
Sasa bwana ni pazuri kabisa, kwa ajili ya akili na werevu wa wenyeji wa pale.	Now, it's quite lovely, because of the intelligence and cleverness of the inhabitants of the place.

Mirambo

Wamefanya nini?	What have they done?

Abasi

~vivu	lazy
wivu	jealousy, envy
Unajua, wao si wavivu, pia hawana wivu.	You know, they are not lazy, nor are they envious.

A

fitina (N)	discord
heshima (N)	respect
Ingawa wana fitina, wanayo heshima.	Although they have discords yet they respect one another.

Abasi

Hali ya hewa, je?	How is the weather?

Mirambo

baridi (N)	coldness
ila	except, unless, but
barafu (N)	ice
Huko kuna baridi, ila m̀limani hakuna barafu.	There it is cold, but there is no frost in the mountains.

Notes

A. Further examples of pa concords.

Pale palikuwa pa ovyo.
Napajua mahali hapo.

Note the example of pa-class concords in these sentences.

B. Concessive verb forms with -nge-.

Ingawa wana fitina, wanayo heshima.	Although they have discord, they have respect [for one another].
Kama ningekuwa na maji ya moto, ningesafisha vyombo.	If I had hot water, I would wash the dishes.
Kama ningejua, ningemwambia.	If I knew, I would tell him.

The prefix -nge- occurs between the subject and object prefixes. Its meaning, however, is not related primarily to time, but to the fact that the condition described by the verb is not realized. Verb forms with this prefix thus correspond to English phrases beginning with *although*, *even though*, etc.

Negative counterparts of the above forms may be formed with the prefix -*si*-:

Kama nisingejua ...	If I didn't know ... [but I do know].

C. Concessive forms with -*ngali*-.

Kama ningalikuwa na maji ya moto, ningalisafisha vyombo.	If I had had hot water, I would have washed the dishes.
Kama nisingalijua...	If I had not known ... [but I did know].

Parallel to the affirmative and negative forms with -*nge*-, there exists a set of forms with -*ngali*-. The latter set of forms are supposed to refer to contrary-to-fact condition in the past, while the -*nge*- forms are supposed to be used only for contrary-to-fact condition in the present. It is recommended that the student observe this distinction, which is a part of Standard Swahili, even though Ashton (p. 187) states that 'in actual practice there is considerable laxity in the use of -*nge*- and -*ngali*-,' and Perrott (p. 53) goes further, saying that 'in actual practice, few natives make this distinction consistently; they are as uncertain about the use of -*nge*- and -*ngali*- as many English people are about the use of *should* and *would*.

2.

A. *heshima kwa*

wazazi	Inafaa kuwa na heshima kwa wazazi wetu.	It's proper to show respect to our parents.
yeye	Inafaa kuwa na heshima kwake.	It's proper to show respect to him.
serikali	Inafaa kuwa na heshima kwa serikali yetu.	It's proper to show respect to our government.
walimu	Inafaa kuwa na heshima kwa walimu wetu.	It's proper to show respect to our teachers.

kanisa	Inafaa kuwa na heshima kwa wakuu wa kanisa.	It's proper to show respect to the church elders.

B. fitina na.

mimi	Juma alikuwa na fitina nami.	Juma had a quarrel with me.
wewe	Juma alikuwa na fitina naye.	Juma had a quarrel with him.
mama	Juma alikuwa na fitina na mama yake.	Juma had a quarrel with his mother.
m̂chumba	Juma alikuwa na fitina na m̂chumba wake.	Juma had a quarrel with his fiancée.

C. wivu juu ya

mimi	Hasani alikuwa na wivu juu yangu.	Hasani was jealous of me.
sisi	Hasani alikuwa na wivu juu yetu.	Hasani was jealous of us.
nyumba	Hasani alikuwa na wivu juu ya nyumba yetu.	Hasani was jealous of our house.
m̂chumba	Hasani alikuwa na wivu juu ya m̂chumba wa rafiki yake.	Hasani was jealous of his friend's girl friend.
motokaa	Hasani alikuwa na wivu juu ya motokaa ya rafiki yake.	Hasani was jealous of his friend's car.

D. ila

-ita	Nimewaita watoto wote ila Daudi.	I have called all the children except Daudi.
-saida	Nimewasaidia watoto wote ila Daudi.	I have helped all of them except Daudi.

-ona -piga

3.

A. ingawa.

werevu	Haruni ana werevu m̂kubwa. Ingawa Haruni ana werevu m̂kubwa, hawezi kusoma.	Haruni has great shrewdness. Though Haruni has great shrewdness, he can't read.
chai	Haruni anywa chai nyingi. Ingawa Haruni anywa chai nyingi, hanywi kahawa.	Haruni drinks a lot of tea. Though Haruni drinks lots of tea, he doesn't drink coffee.
maembe	Haruni apenda maembe sana. Ingawa Haruni apenda maembe sana, hawezi kuyala.	Haruni likes mangoes very much. Though Haruni likes mangoes very much he can't eat them.
vipimo	Shati hili halinienei. Ingawa shati hili halinienei, nitalinunua.	This shirt does not fit me. Though this shirt doesn't fit me I will buy it.

B. yu.

kulima	Juma alima vizuri sana. Yu mwerevu kwa kulima.	Juma cultivates very well. He is clever in cultivating.
kuotesha	Juma aotesha vitunguu vizuri sana. Yu hodari kwa kuotesha vitunguu.	Juma grows very good onions. He is clever in growing onions.
kupanda	Juma apanda viazi vizuri sana.	Juma plants very good potatoes.
kutengeneza	Juma atengeneza baiskeli vizuri sana.	Juma repairs bicycles very well.

C. The -nge tense.

kusafisha	Kama ningekuwa na maji ya moto, ningesafisha vyombo.	If I had hot water, I would wash the dishes.
kufua	Kama ningekuwa na maji ya moto, ningefua nguo zangu.	If I had hot water, I would wash my clothes.

kutengeneza	Kama ningekuwa na maji ya moto, ningetengeneza kahawa.	If I had hot water, I would make coffee.

D. The -ngali tense.

mimi	Sikujua kuwa utakuja jana.	I didn't know that you would come yesterday.
	Kama ningalijua kuwa utakuja, nisingaliondoka nyumbani.	If I had known that you were coming, I would not have left the house.
wewe	Hukuja jana.	You didn't come yesterday.
	Kama ungalikuja, nisingaliondoka nyumbani.	If you had come, I would not have left the house.
mvua	Mvua haikunyesha jana.	The rain didn't fall yesterday.
	Kama ingalinyesha, nisingaliondoka nyumbani.	If it had rained, I would not have left the house.

Conversation Starters

1. A and B discuss a mountainous area that A has visited recently.

2. Talk about the topography and climate of an area where you have lived for some time.

Unit 112

1. Basic Dialogue. You'd better not go hunting without a license.

Abasi

Mnafanya kazi gani huko shamba?	What kind of work do you do there on the farm?

Mirambo

biashara (N)	trade, commerce
vilevile	just the same, likewise
-winda	to hunt
bunduki (N)	gun
Tunalima na kufanya biashara. Vilevile kuwinda, kwa sababu wengi tuna bunduki.	We hunt and carry on trade. Also hunting, because many of us have guns.

Abasi

cheti (VI)	certificate
Nadhani ni lázima ukate cheti ukitaka kuwinda, au sivyo?	I think it's necessary that you get a license if you want to hunt. Or isn't that so?

Mirambo

-shtaki	to accuse, prosecute
baraza (N)	verandah, place of public council
Hakika. Ukiwinda pasipo cheti utashtakiwa barazani.	Certainly, if you hunt without a license you will be prosecuted in court.

Abasi

Lakini, nani atajua kuwa huna cheti?	But, who will know that you don't have a license?

Mirambo

ajabu (N or MA)	amazement
askari (WA)	policeman
Askari! Ni ajabu kwamba wanajua nani amekata cheti na nani hakukata.	A policeman! It's amazing that they know who has gotten a license and who hasn't.

2.

A. pasipo.

jembe	Ukijaribu kulima pasipo jembe, utapatwa na shida.	If you try to cultivate without a hoe, you'll find it difficult.
uma	Ukijaribu kulima pasipo uma, utapatwa na shida.	If you try to cultivate without a rake, you'll find it difficult.

mbolea mbegu njema

B. bila

baiskeli	Huwezi kununua baiskeli hii bila fedha nyingi.	You can't buy this bicycle without a lot of money.
motokaa	Huwezi kununua motokaa hii bila fedha nyingi.	You can't buy this motor car without a lot of money.

vitabu jiko kitanda

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓	Mama alipelekwa hospitali jana.	My mother was taken to the hospital yesterday.

kesho	Mama atapelekwa hospitali kesho.	My mother will be taken to the hospital tomorrow.
tutafanya nini	Mama akipelekwa hospitali, tutafanya nini?	If my mother is taken to the hospital, what shall we do?
lázima	Ni lázima mama apelekwe hospitalini.	My mother must be taken to the hospital.
jana	Mama alipelekwa hospitali jana.	My mother was taken to the hospital yesterday.
ndiye	Mama ndiye aliyepelekwa hospitali jana.	It was my mother who was taken to the hospital yesterday.
kesho	Mama ndiye atakayepelekwa hospitali kesho.	It's my mother who will be taken to the hospital tomorrow.

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Yeye ni m̀gonjwa sana.	He is very sick.
tutafanya nini	Yeye akiwa m̀gonjwa sana, tutafanya nini?	If he is very sick, what shall we do?
jana	Yeye alikuwa m̀gonjwa sana.	He was very sick.
sasa	Yeye ni m̀gonjwa sana sasa.	He is very sick now.
ndiye	Yeye ndiye aliyekuwa m̀gonjwa sana.	He is the one who was sick.

C. Switching tenses.

↓	Anatumaini kuendelea katika masomo.	He hopes to continue with his studies.
mwaka uliopita	Mwaka uliopita, alitumaini kuendelea katika masomo.	Last year, he hoped to continue with his studies.
hapana	Mwaka uliopita, hakutumaini kuendelea katika masomo.	Last year, he didn't hope to continue with his studies.
ndiye	Yeye ndiye ambaye hakutumaini kuendelea katika masomo.	He is the one who didn't hope to continue with his studies.

Unit 113

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Mirambo

m̀jomba (WA)	kinship term used reciprocally by brother and son of a woman
bahati (N)	luck (good or bad)
Mwaka jana, m̀jomba wangu alipata bahati mbaya, bwana.	Last year, my mjomba had some bad luck.

Abasi

Ipi?	What kind?

Mirambo

badala (N)	a substitute
m̀nyama (WA)	animal
-vua	to fish
bahari (N)	sea, ocean
Badala ya kupata cheti cha kuwinda wanyama mwituni, alipewa cha kuvua samaki baharini.	Instead of getting a license for hunting game in the forest, he was given one for fishing in the sea.

Abasi

Ilikuwaje?	How did that happen?

Mirambo

hati (N)	document
Kwa sababu, hakuwa na hati ya kumwezesha kukata cheti cha kuwinda.	Because he didn't have the document to enable him to get a hunting license.

Abasi

Kama akija kuishi kwetu atafurahi, kwa sababu ni vyepesi kupata cheti cha kuwinda huko.	If he comes to live at our place, he will be glad, because it is easy to get a hunting license there.

2.

A. Ki-tense; lázima with subjunctive.

kuwinda	Ukihitaji cheti cha kuwinda, lázima upate hati kutoka bomani.	If you need a hunting license, you must get a written note from the District Office.
kuvua	Ukihitaji cheti cha kuvua, lázima upate hati kutoka bomani.	If you need a fishing license, you must get a written note from the District Office.
njia	Ukihitaji cheti cha njia, lázima upate hati kutoka bomani.	If you need a road license, you must get a written note from the District Office.

B. badala ya

uma	Umeleta uma badala ya kijiko.	You have brought a fork instead of a spoon.
bakuli	Umeleta bakuli badala ya kikapu.	You have brought a bowl instead of a basket.
panga	Umeleta panga badala ya kisu.	You have brought a big knife instead of a knife (ordinary).
shuka	Umeleta shuka badala ya kitambaa.	You have brought a sheet instead of a piece of cloth.
thúmni	Umeleta thúmni badala ya shilingi.	You have brought a fifty cent piece (E. African) instead of a shilling.

C. Location with -ni.

bahari	Niliangusha ufunguo baharini.	I dropped the key into the sea.
mwitu	Niliangusha ufunguo mwituni.	I dropped the key in the forest.
chini	Niliangusha ufunguo chini.	I dropped the key on the ground.

m̀to maji ua nyasi

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓	Anakuja kuishi kwetu.	He is coming to live at our place.
uliopita	Alikuja kuishi kwetu mwezi uliopita.	He came to live at our place last month.
ujao	Atakuja kuishi kwetu mwezi ujao.	He is coming to live at our place next month.
ndiye	Yeye ndiye atakayekuja kuishi kwetu mwezi ujao.	He is the one who is coming to live at our place next month.
uliopita	Yeye ndiye aliyekuja kuishi kwetu mwezi uliopita.	He is the one who came to live at our place last month.

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Unapata bahati mbaya siku hizi.	You are unlucky these days.
jana	Ulipata bahati mbaya jana.	You were unlucky yesterday.
hapana	Hukupata bahati mbaya jana.	You were not unlucky yesterday.
kesho	Hutapata bahati mbaya kesho.	You will not be unlucky tomorrow.
sasa	Hupati bahati mbaya sasa.	You are not unlucky now.

Unit 114

1. Basic Dialogue. Time to get up.

Asha	
-cha	to dawn
-am̀ka	to wake up
Juma, Juma, kumekucha bwana! Am̀ka!	Juma, Juma, it's daybreak, Mister! Get up!
Juma	
mapema	early, soon
Sitaki kuam̀ka mapema hivi.	I don't want to get up so soon as all this.
Asha	
dirisha (MA)	window
Hebu angalia dirishani, jua lawaka.	Please, will you look out the window! The sun is shining.
Juma	
Tafadhali usiniam̀she sasa, nitaam̀ka baadaye.	Please don't get me up now; I'll get up later.
Asha	
-lala	to sleep, lie down
Wewe Juma u m̀vivu kweli, wapenda kulala sana.	You're really lazy, Juma. You really like to sleep.
Juma	
-kasirika	to be angry

Unataka kunikasirisha bure tu.	You just want to make me angry for nothing.

Asha

-uso (U-N)	face
-nawa	to wash face/hands
Utanawa uso kwa maji moto au baridi?	Are you going to wash your face with hot water, or cold?

Juma

Kwa maji ya uvuguvugu.	With lukewarm water.

2.

A. Three verbs with subject prefix ku-.

kupambazuka	Kumepambazuka.	Morning has come.
kucha	Kumekucha.	It is dawn.
kuchwa	Kumekuchwa.	The sun has set.

B. yu, u, m̀, tu, ni plus adjective.

Juma	Juma yu m̀vivu kweli.	Juma is really lazy.
wewe	Wewe u m̀vivu kweli.	You are really lazy.
mimi	Mimi ni m̀vivu kweli.	I am really lazy.
sisi	Sisi tu wavivu kweli.	We are really lazy.
ninyi	Ninyi m̀ wavivu kweli.	You are really lazy.
wao	Wao ni wavivu kweli.	They are really lazy.

C. -wa na wivu

Juma	Juma ana wivu sana.	Juma is very jealous.
wewe	Wewe una wivu sana.	You are very jealous.
ninyi	Ninyi m̀na wivu sana.	You are very jealous.

sisi mimi wao

3.

A. Stative *vs.* causative stems.

Kwa nini umekasirika?	Why are you angry?
Kwa sababu umenikasirisha.	Because you have annoyed me.
Kwa nini m̂mekasirika?	Why are you (pl) angry?
Kwa sababu umetukasirisha.	Because you have annoyed us.
Kwa nini amekasirika?	Why is he angry?
Kwa sababu umem̂kasirisha.	Because you have annoyed him.
Kwa nini wamekasirika?	Why are they angry?
Kwa sababu umewakasirisha.	Because you have annoyed them.

B. Causative *vs.* causative-passive stems.

mimi	Sitaki kuam̂shwa mapema kesho.	I do not want to be awakened early tomorrow.
	Usiniam̂she mapema.	Don't wake me up early.
	Sitakuam̂sha mapema.	I'll not wake you up early.
yeye	Hataki kuam̂shwa mapema kesho.	He does not want to be awakened early tomorrow.
	Usimwam̂she mapema.	Don't wake him up early.
	Sitamwam̂sha mapema.	I'll not wake him up early.
sisi	Hatutaki kuam̂shwa mapema kesho.	We do not want to be awakened early tomorrow.
	Usituam̂she mapema.	Don't wake us up early.
	Sitawaam̂sheni mapema.	I'll not wake you (pl) up early.
wao	Hawataki kuam̂shwa mapema kesho.	They do not want to be awakened early tomorrow.
	Usiwaam̂she mapema.	Don't wake them up early.
	Sitawaam̂sha mapema.	I'll not wake them up early.

Unit 115

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Asha

udevu (U-N)	a hair of the face
-nyoa	to shave
Utanyoa ndevu leo?	Are you going to shave today?

Juma

kioo (VI)	mirror
wembe (U-N)	razor
Ndiyo, nipatie kioo na wembe.	Yes, get me the mirror and a razor.

Asha

-fagia	to sweep
Ukimaliza kunyoa utanisaidia kufagia?	When you finish shaving, will you help me sweep?

Juma

Hapana, anza kufagia sasa.	No, begin sweeping now.

Asha

vumbi (N)	dust
Hujali vumbi?	Don't you mind the dust?

Juma

Kwanza mwaga maji kidogo, kisha ufagie.	First, sprinkle a little water, and then sweep.

Asha

-oga	to bathe

mwili (MI)	body
~zima	whole
-kawia	to take a long time
Ninakwenda kuoga mwili m̊zima, sitakawia.	I'm going to take a bath; I won't be long.

Juma

m̊swaki (MI)	twig used as toothbrush
Na mimi nitapiga m̊swaki.	And I'm going to brush my teeth.

2.

A. -kawia plus infinitive.

kuoga	Kwa nini ulikawia kuoga?	Why did it take you long to bathe?
kunyoa	Kwa nini ulikawia kunyoa?	Why did it take you long to shave?
kuongea	Kwa nini ulikawia kuongea?	Why did it take you long to converse?
kutembea	Kwa nini ulikawia kutembea?	Why did it take you long to take a walk?
kulala	Kwa nini ulikawia kulala?	Why did it take you long to go to bed?
kupiga	Kwa nini ulikawia kupiga m̊swaki?	Why did it take you long to brush your teeth?

B. 'whole/all'

ng'ombe	Walikula ng'ombe m̊zima.	They ate the whole cow.
kuku	Walikula kuku m̊zima.	They ate the whole chicken.
mbuzi	Walikula mbuzi m̊zima.	They ate the whole goat.
nguruwe	Walikula nguruwe m̊zima.	The ate the whole pig.
nanasi	Walikula nanasi lote.	They ate the whole pineapple.
kabiji	Walikula kabiji yote.	They ate the whole cabbage.

C. ovyo-ovyo

kunyoa	Alijinyoa ovyo-ovyo.	He shaved himself carelessly.
kuoga	Alioga ovyo-ovyo.	He bathed himself carelessly.
kupiga	Alipiga meno m̊swaki ovyo-ovyo.	He brushed his teeth carelessly.
kuandika	Aliandika ovyo-ovyo.	He wrote carelessly.
kulima	Alilima shamba ovyo-ovyo.	He cultivated his farm carelessly.

3.

A. Plurals.

kioo	Nilipata kioo kipya. Twahitaji vioo viwili zaidi.	I got a new mirror. We need two more mirrors.
wembe	Nilipata wembe m̊pya. Twahitaji nyembe mbili zaidi.	I got a new razor blade. We need two more razor blades.
uma	Nilipata uma m̊pya. Twahitaji nyuma mbili zaidi.	I got a new fork. We need two more forks.
ufagio	Nilipata ufagio m̊pya. Twahitaji fagio mbili zaidi.	I got a new broom. We need two more brooms.
kengele	Nilipata kengele m̊pya. Twahitaji kengele mbili zaidi.	I got a new bell. We need two more bells.
kitanda	Nilipata kitanda kipya. Twahitaji vitanda viwili zaidi.	I got a new bed. We need two more beds.
cheti	Nilipata cheti kipya. Twahitaji vyeti viwili zaidi.	I got a new certificate. We need two more certificates.

bunduki	Nilipata bunduki m̊pya. Twahitaji bunduki mbili zaidi.	I got a new rifle. We need two more rifles.
m̊swaki	Nilipata m̊swaki m̊pya. Twahitaji miswaki miwili zaidi.	I got a new tooth brush. We need two more tooth brushes.

Unit 116

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Hamisi

-ng'oa	to uproot
Chukua kofia yako tung'oke bwana.	Take your hat and let's be off. (colloquial)

Adija

niende haja) niende msalani) nikimbie chooni) niende uani)	(Each is offensive to some speakers.)	toilet
Ngoja kidogo niende uani.		Wait a bit while I go to the toilet.

Hamisi

Nimesahau kupiga viatu rangi.	I forgot to shine my shoes.

Adija

Viache, vyenyewe vyang'aa.	Leave them alone, they're shiny!

Hamisi

kiko (VI)	pipe
Kiko changu kiko wapi tena?	Now where is my pipe?

Adija

-nuka	to smell bad
Waniuliza? Hata sikipendi. Chanuka.	(Why) do you ask me? I don't even like it. It stinks.

Hamisi

-nukia	to smell good
-fahamu	to know, bear in mind

Hakinuki, kinanukia, wafahamu? Mimi nakwenda kazini. Kwa heri.	It doesn't stink. It smells good, understand? I'm going to work. Goodbye.

Adija

Usiniache, nakuja.	Don't leave me. I'm coming.

2.

A. ka-tense

viatu	Alirudi nyumbani akapiga viatu rangi.	He went back home and shined his shoes.
vidonge	Alirudi nyumbani akapata vidonge vya dawa.	He went back home and got pills.
nyama	Alirudi nyumbani akapata kipande cha nyama.	He went back home and got a piece of meat.
chupa	Alirudi nyumbani akapata chupa ya pombe.	He went back home and got a bottle of beer.

B. -ahidi kwamba plus future verb.

viatu	Aliniahidi kwamba atanipigia viatu rangi.	He promised me that he would shine my shoes.
nguo	Aliniahidi kwamba atanipigia nguo pasi.	He promised me that he would iron my clothes.
simu	Aliniahidi kwamba atanipigia simu.	He promised me that he would call me on the phone.
sindano	Aliniahidi kwamba atanipiga sindano.	He promised me that he would give me an injection.

C. ni-locatives

m̀to	Twende tukasukume motokaa kutoka m̀toni.	Let's go and push the car from (in) the river.

matope	Twende tukasukume motokaa kutoka matopeni.	Let's go and push the car from the mud.
bonde	Twende tukasukume motokaa kutoka bondeni.	Let's go and push the car from the valley.
barabara	Twende tukasukume motokaa kutoka barabarani.	Let's go and push the car from the highway.

D. ki-tense followed by ta-tense.

m̂saada	Ukihamia huko, utapata m̂saada.	If you move there, you will get help.
nafuu	Ukihamia huko, utapata nafuu.	If you move there, you will recover.

matata kazi shamba

3.

A. -nuka vs. -nukia.

machungwa	Machungwa mabovu yananuka. Mazima yananukia.	Rotten oranges smell bad. Good one smell good.
maembe	Maembe mabovu yananuka. Mazima yananukia.	Rotten mangoes smell bad. Good ones smell good.
ndizi	Ndizi mbovu zinanuka. Nzima zinanukia.	Rotten bananas smell bad. Good ones smell good.
mananasi	Mananasi mabovu yananuka. Mazima yananukia.	Rotten pineapples smell bad. Good ones smell good.

B. -nukia vs. nuka.

chungwa	Chungwa hili zima linanukia. Bovu linanuka. Silipendi.	This good orange smells good. The rotten one smells bad. I don't like it.
embe	Embe hili zima linanukia Bovu linanuka. Silipendi.	This good mango smells good. The rotten one smells bad. I don't like it.

nanasi	Nanasi hili zima linanukia. Bovu linanuka. Silipendi.	This good pineapple smells good. The rotten one smells bad. I don't like it.
ndizi	Ndizi hii nzima inanukia. Mbovu inanuka. Siipendi.	The good banana smells good. The rotten one smells bad. I don't like it.

Conversation Starters

1. Talk about the routine activities of getting up and getting ready for work.

Unit 117

1. Basic Dialogue. Where does this highway go?

Hamisi	
Barabara hii inakwenda wapi?	Where does this highway go?
Hasani	
Inapita Nairobi, Naivasha ḿpaka Kisumu.	It goes past Nairobi and Naivasha to Kisumu.
Hamisi	
-nyoka	to become straight
Yaonekana imenyoka sana.	It seems very straight.
Hasani	
Ndiyo, imenyoka ḿpaka Naivasha.	Yes, it is straight as far as Naivasha.
Hamisi	
Na kutoka Naivasha kuendelea mbele je?	And how [is it] from Naivasha on?
Hasani	
-pinda	to bend
Imejipinda huku na huku.	It winds here and there.
Hamisi	
Hivi ni lázima kuendesha polepole?	So it's necessary to drive slowly?
Hasani	
-pana	broad, flat
Ndiyo, lakini barabara yenyewe ni pana na laini.	Yes, but the road itself is broad and smooth.

2.

A. Relative of me-tense.

kunyoka	Nakusudia kufuata njia iliyonyoka.	I intend to follow a road which is straight.
kupinda	Nakusudia kufuata njia iliyojipinda.	I intend to follow a road which is winding.
˜refu	Nakusudia kufuata njia iliyo ndefu.	I intend to follow a road which is long.
˜pana	Nakusudia kufuata njia iliyo pana.	I intend to follow a road which is broad.
˜embamba	Nakusudia kufuata njia iliyo nyembamba.	I intend to follow a road which is narrow.

B. -nung'unika juu...

njia	Mwandishi M̊kuu anung'unika juu ya njia afuatayo.	The General Secretary grumbles about the road he follows.
matata	Mwandishi M̊kuu anung'unika juu ya matata apatayo.	The General Secretary grumbles about the complications he faces.
fujo	Mwandishi M̊kuu anung'unika juu ya fujo afisini.	The General Secretary grumbles about the disturbances in the office.
m̊shahara	Mwandishi M̊kuu anung'unika juu ya m̊shahara apatao.	The General Secretary grumbles about the pay he gets.
motokaa	Mwandishi M̊kuu anung'unika juu ya motokaa aendeshayo.	The General Secretary grumbles about the car he drives.

3.

A. -onekana

pua	Pua yake imeumia? Inaonekana imeumia sana.	Is his nose hurt? It appears to be seriously injured.

m̀gongo	M̀gongo wake umeumia? Unaonekana umeumia sana.	Is his back hurt? It appears to be seriously injured.

shingo m̀kono kidole

B. afadhali plus subjunctive.

kunyoka	Tufuate njia iliyonyoka au iliyopindapinda? Afadhali tufuate iliyonyoka.	Shall we take a straight road, or a crooked one? We'd better take the straight one.
~pana	Tufuate njia pana, au nyembamba? Afadhali tufuate pana.	Shall we take a wide road, or a narrow one? We'd better take the wide one.
mweusi au mwekundu	Tuchukue m̀zigo mweusi, au mwekundu? Afadhali tuchukue mweusi.	Shall we take a black bag, or a brown one? We'd better take the black one.
mabivu au mabichi	Tule machungwa mabivu, au mabichi? Afadhali tule mabivu.	Shall we eat ripe oranges, or the green ones? We'd better eat the ripe ones.
yote au nusu	Tupeleke gharama yote, au nusu? Afadhali tupeleke yote.	Shall we send the whole amount, or half? We'd better send the whole [thing].

Unit 118

1. Basic Dialogue. Footpaths can be dangerous.

Hamisi

Unajua, hizi njia za miguu ni hatari sana.	You know, these footpaths are very dangerous.

Hasani

Kwa nini?	Why?

Hamisi

tope (MA)	mud, mire
-teleza	cause to come down, be slippery
Mvua ikinyesha, matope hujaa na njia huteleza?	Isn't it true that when it rains, there's a sea of mud, and the road is slippery?

Hasani

-kavu	dry, barren
Ndiyo, lakini wakati wa jua njia hizi ni kavu na zenye vumbi.	Yes, but during the sunny season they are dry and dusty.

Hamisi

(mbao)	(pl. of ubao)
Nyingine zina madaraja ya mbao.	Some have wooden bridges.
m̀sumari (MI)	nail
Madaraja haya yametengenezwa kwa m̀bao na misumari.	These bridges are made with boards and nails.

Hasani

-tumbukia	to break, cut into, to fall into
kijito (VI)	dim. of mto 'river'
Ndiyo, na yakivunjika utatumbukia katika kijito.	Yes, and if they get broken, you'll fall in the stream.

Hamisi

(-vua)	(to save, get out of difficulty)
-vuka	to pass safely over
Lakini njia nyingine hazina madaraja ya kuvukia.	Some have no bridges to (enable one to) pass safely over the streams.

2.

A. -enye

vumbi	Sipendi njia zenye vumbi nyingi.	I don't like very dusty roads.
matope	Sipendi njia zenye matope mengi.	I don't like very muddy roads.
mawe	Sipendi njia zenye mawe mengi.	I don't like very stony roads.
miiba	Sipendi njia zenye miiba mingi.	I don't like very thorny paths.
daraja	Sipendi njia zenye madaraja mengi.	I don't like roads with many bridges.

B. -teleza

njia	Njia hii inateleza sana.	This footpath is very slippery.
ubao	Ubao huu unateleza sana.	This piece of board is very slippery.
barabara	Barabara hii inateleza sana.	This road is very slippery.
mahali	Mahali hapa panateleza sana.	This place is very slippery.
jiwe	Jiwe hili linateleza sana.	This stone is very slippery.

daraja	Daraja hili linateleza sana.	This bridge is very slippery.

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓	Mvua inanyesha sasa.	It is raining now.
kesho	Mvua itanyesha kesho.	It will rain tomorrow.
alasiri	Mvua itanyesha alasiri.	It will rain in the afternoon.
usiku huu	Mvua itanyesha usiku huu.	It will rain tonight.
jana	Mvua ilinyesha jana.	It rained yesterday.
walipofika	Mvua ilinyesha walipofika.	It rained when they arrived.
tutafanya nini?	Mvua ikinyesha tutafanya nini?	If it rains, what shall we do?

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Alipigwa sindano na tabibu.	He was given a shot by the doctor.
usiku huu	Atapigwa sindano usiku huu.	He will be given a shot tonight.
kesho	Atapigwa sindano kesho.	He will be given a shot tomorrow.
juzi	Alipigwa sindano juzi.	He was given a shot the day before yesterday.
ndiye	Ndiye aliyepigwa sindano juzi.	He is the one who was given a shot the day before yesterday.
bado	Bado hajapigwa sindano.	He hasn't yet been given a shot.

C. -angalia plus ki-tense.

kunyoa	Nilimwangalia akinyoa.	I watched him shave.
kulima	Nilimwangalia akilima.	I watched him plow.
kuvua	Nilimwangalia akivua.	I watched him fishing.
kugeuza	Nilimwangalia akigeuza motokaa.	I watched him turn the car.

kufagia	Nilimwangalia akifagia.	I watched him sweeping.
kutumbukia	Nilimwangalia akitumbukia m̀toni.	I watched him fall into the river.

Unit 119

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Hasani

-telem̊ka	to descend
m̊situ (MI)	land covered with bushes, small trees
Kule m̊situni kuna njia nyembamba sana.	There in the forest, there are some very narrow paths.
Zinatelem̊ka chini ya milima.	They lead down the mountains.

Hamisi

shimo (N)	pit, hole
Lakini nyingine zina mashimo mengi, sivyo?	But some have a lot of holes (in them) don't they?

Hasani

siafu (N pers.)	army ants (kind of red ant)
Hasa, hata siafu wapitapita njiani humo.	Yes, indeed, (and) even army ants pass back and forth over the path.

Hamisi

tundu (MA)	nest, hole
Je, unaweza kuyaona matundu ya siafu?	Can you see the nests of the ants?

Hasani

Pengine, ikiwa kama unatembea polepole utayaona.	Sometimes, if you walk very slowly you'll see them.

Hamisi

Wanyama wanapitia njia hizi vile vile?	Do wild animals pass along these paths?

Hasani

Ndiyo, wanapotaka kuwinda.	Yes, when they want to hunt.

2.

A. hu-tense.

Siafu hukaa matunduni.	Red ants live in holes.
Siafu hula wanyama wadogo.	Red ants eat small animals.
Siafu hupitapita njiani.	Red ants pass back and forth on the path.
Siafu ni hatari.	Red ants are dangerous.

B. -pitia.

wanafunzi	Wanafunzi wapitia njia hii.	Students pass along this way.
wengi	Wengi wapitia njia hii.	Many pass along this way.

wanyama ng'ombe siafu

C. -po- 'when'

kuwinda	Twapita njiani humu tunapotaka kuwinda.	We use this path when we want to hunt.
kuvua	Twapita njiani humu tunapotaka kuvua.	We use this path when we want to fish.

kuoga kuogelea kwenda m̀situni

3.

A. ku class.

m̀bu	Kuna m̀bu kwenu? Ndiyo bwana, kuna wengi.	Are there mosquitoes at your place? Yes, there are many.

siafu	Kuna siafu kwenu? Ndiyo, bwana, kuna wengi.	Are there ants at your place? Yes. There are many.

chuo mawe vijito matope milima wanyama vumbi

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Nilim̀peleka hospitali pamoja na m̀jomba.	I took him to the hospital together with my uncle.
ndiye	Yeye ndiye niliyem̀peleka hospitali pamoja na m̀jomba.	He is the one I took to the hospital together with my uncle.
kesho	Nitam̀peleka hospitali pamoja na m̀jomba.	Tomorrow I will take him to the hospital together with my uncle.
sasa	Sasa ninam̀peleka hospitali pamoja na m̀jomba.	Now I am taking him to the hospital together with my uncle.

C. Switching tenses.

↓	M̀toto huyu alipigwa sindano.	This child was given an injection.
hapana	M̀toto huyu hakupigwa sindano.	This child was not given an injection.
ndiye	M̀toto huyu ndiye aliyepigwa sindano.	This child was the one given an injection.
kesho	Huyu ni m̀toto ambaye atapigwa sindano kesho.	This is the child who will be given an injection tomorrow.
bado	Huyu ni m̀toto ambaye hajapigwa sindano bado.	This is the child who hasn't been given an injection yet.

Conversation Starters

1. Discuss medium-distance travel within Africa.

Unit 120

1. Basic Dialogue. Firewood.

Hamisi

-pika	to cook
Utaanza kupika lini?	When are you going to begin cooking?

Adija

kuni (N)	firewood
Nitaanza hivi upesi, nikipata kuni.	I'll begin right soon now, when I get firewood.

Hamisi

Utapata kuni wapi?	Where will you get it?

Adija

Nitakwenda m̀situni kuziokota.	I'm going to the forest to gather it.

Hamisi

Huwezi kukata miti ya kuni?	Can't you cut trees [suitable] for firewood?

Adija

shoka (MA)	axe
Ninaweza, nikiwa na shoka na panga.	I can, if I had an axe and a panga.

Hamisi

Chukua shoka hili na panga.	Take this axe and panga.

Adija

kamba (N)	rope, cord
Asante. Na kamba ya kufungia kuni je?	Thanks. And what about a rope for tying the firewood up?

Hamisi

-fupi	short
-azima	to borrow, lend
Kamba yetu ni fupi sana. Nitaazima nyingine.	Our rope is very short. I'll borrow another.

2.

A. nusu

kuni	Nipe nusu ya kuni zako, nitazilipa.	Give me half of your firewood; I will pay for it.
kamba	Nipe nusu ya kamba yako, nitailipa.	Give me half of your rope; I will pay for it.
dawa	Nipe nusu ya dawa yako, nitailipa.	Give me half of your medicine; I will pay for it.
misumari	Nipe nusu ya misumari yako, nitailipa.	Give me half of your nails; I will pay for it.
kipande	Nipe nusu ya kipande chako, nitakilipa.	Give me half of your piece; I will pay for it.
mbegu	Nipe nusu ya mbegu zako, nitazilipa.	Give me half of your seeds; I will pay for them.

B. -pasuka

shati	Shati langu limepasuka.	My shirt is torn.
nguo	Nguo yangu imepasuka.	My dress is torn.

ngoma shuka chandalua

C. robo

mafuta	Alinitilia robo ya mafuta yake.	He poured me out a quarter of his oil.

m̀tama	Alinitilia robo ya m̀tama wake.	He poured me out a quarter of his millet.

m̀chele dawa kinywaji chumvi

D. Imperative plus negative subjunctive.

kupotea	Lindeni ngoma hizi zisipotee.	Take care of these drums so that they don't get lost.
kuanguka	Lindeni ngoma hizi zisianguke.	Take care of these drums so that they don't fall.
kupasuka	Lindeni ngoma hizi zisipasuke.	Take care of these drums so that they don't get split.
kuharibu	Lindeni ngoma hizi zisiharibike.	Take care of these drums so that they don't get spoiled.

3.

A. -enda plus ka-tense.

shoka	Shoka liko barazani. Nendeni m̀kalichukue.	The axe is on the veranda. Go to get it.
kamba	Kamba iko barazani. Nendeni m̀kaichukue.	The rope is on the veranda. Go and bring it.
kuni	Kuni ziko barazani. Nendeni m̀kazichukue.	The firewood is on the veranda. Go and bring them.
kikapu	Kikapu kiko barazani. Nendeni m̀kakichukue.	The basket is on the veranda. Go and bring it.
viti	Viti viko barazani. Nendeni m̀kavichukue.	The chairs are on the veranda. Go and bring them.

B. Switching Tenses.

↓	Anaokota kuni m̀situni.	He is collecting firewood in the forest.
utamwona	Utamwona akiokota kuni m̀situni.	You will see him collecting firewood in the forest.

nilimwona	Nilimwona akiokota kuni m̀situni.	I saw him collecting firewood in the forest.
ndiye	Ndiye niliyemwona akiokota kuni m̀situni.	He is the one I saw collecting firewood in the forest.

C.

↓	Alikwenda mwituni akaangusha miti.	He went in the forest to fell trees.
kesho	Atakwenda mwituni kuangusha miti.	He will go in the forest to fell trees.
hapana	Hatakwenda mwituni kuangusha miti.	He will not go in the forest to fell trees.
jana	Hakuenda mwituni kuangusha miti.	He didn't go in the forest to fell trees.
bado	Hajaenda mwituni kuangusha miti.	He hasn't gone in the forest to fell trees.
nilim̀zuia	Nilim̀zuia asiende mwituni kuangusha miti.	I prevented him from going in the forest to fell trees.

Unit 121

1. Basic Dialogue. Fetching water.

Hamisi

-chota	to take a little water/firewood
kisima (VI)	well, water hole
Mwambie Adija akachote maji kisimani.	Tell Adija to go draw some water at the well.

Asha

m̀tungi (MI)	earthen pitcher/water jar
-toboa	to bore a hole in
M̀tungi wetu umetoboka.	Our water jar has a hole in it.

Hamisi

Unalo tundu kubwa?	Does it have a big hole?

Asha

-vuja	to leak
Ndiyo, lavuja sana.	Yes, it leaks quite a bit.
ndoo (N)	bucket
Amesema atatumia ndoo.	She said she will use a bucket.

Hamisi

m̀fereji (MI)	ditch for carrying water
-teka	to draw water
Vizuri, pengine anaweza kuteka maji pale m̀ferejini.	Good. Maybe she can get some water there at the ditch.

Asha

m̀stari (MI)	line
Naona kuna watu wengi m̀ferejini waliofanya m̀stari.	I see there is a line of people at the ditch. ('there are many people there who formed a line.')

2.

A. *pa*-class concord

maji	Pale m̀ferejini hapana maji.	There at the ditch, there is no water.
m̀tu	Pale m̀ferejini hapana m̀tu.	There at the ditch, there is nobody.

m̀stari ndoo m̀tungi

B. *ka*-tense

kuchota	Mwambie Adija akachote maji.	Tell Adija to go and take up water (a little at a time).
kuchukua	Mwambie Adija akachukue pasi.	Tell Adija to go and take the iron.
kufungua	Mwambie Adija akafungue m̀lango.	Tell Adija to go and open the door.
kufunga	Mwambie Adija akafunge dirisha.	Tell Adija to go and close the window.

C. *-ngojea*

kisima	Wapagazi wanakungojea kisimani.	The porters are waiting for you at the well.
baraza	Wapagazi wanakungojea barazani.	The porters are waiting for you on the veranda.

barabara daraja m̀lima boma

3.

A.

m̀tungi	M̀tungi wako umetoboka?	Is your water-jar leaking? (Has your water-jar a hole?)
	Ndiyo, unalo tundu kubwa.	Yes, it has a big hole.
ndoo	Ndoo yako imetoboka?	Is your bucket leaking?
	Ndiyo, inalo tundu kubwa.	Yes, it has a big hole.

bakuli taa

B. Imperative plus ka-tense.

mimi	Nataka maji.	I want some water.
	Nendeni m̀kanitekee maji bombani.	Go and bring me some water from the water tap.
sisi	Twataka maji.	We want some water.
	Nendeni m̀katutekee maji bombani.	Go and bring us some water from the water tap.

yeye wao

Unit 122

1. Basic Dialogue. Planning a hunting expedition.

Butler

tarehe (N)	date
safari (N)	journey
Mwezi ujao tarehe kumi nitakwenda safarini.	On the tenth of next month, I'm going to go on a trip.

Sangai

-elekea	to be directed towards
Utasafiri kuelekea wapi?	Which way are you going?

Butler

Nitasafiri kwenda mwituni kuwinda wanyama.	I'm going to make a trip to the forest to hunt game.

Sangai

Unakusudia kuwinda wanyama gani?	What kind of game do you plan to hunt?

Butler

kifaru (VI-an.)	rhino
nyati (N-an.)	buffalo
simba (N-an.)	lion
tembo (N-an.)	elephant
Kama kifaru, nyati, simba, tembo na wengineo.	[Things] like rhino, buffalo, lion, elephant and such like.

Sangai

-kali	sharp, fierce

Hao ni wanyama wakali sana.	Those are very fierce animals.

Butler

˜nene	thick, stout
Ndiyo, tena ni wanene sana.	Yes, and moreover, they are very big.

Sangai

m̊kuki (MI)	spear
Utawawinda kwa bunduki au kwa m̊kuki?	Will you hunt with a gun, or with spears?

Butler

risasi (N)	lead, tin, solder, bullet
Kwa bunduki. Hata risasi nimenunua.	With a gun. I've even bought bullets.

2.

A. ˜ingineo

kifaru	Niliona kifaru, nyati, simba, na wengineo.	I saw rhino, buffalo, lion, and such.
walimu	Niliona walimu, wanafunzi, makarani, na wengineo.	I saw teachers, students, clerks and such.
minazi	Niliona minazi, michungwa, miembe na mingineyo.	I saw coco palms, orange trees, mango trees and such.
nguo	Niliona nguo, suruali, kofia na nyinginezo.	I saw cloths, trousers, hats and such.
sahani	Niliona sahani, vikombe, bilauri na vinginevyo.	I saw plates, cups, glasses and such.

B. Various translations for ˜kali

kifaru	Kifaru huyo ni m̊kali sana.	That rhino is very fierce.
kisu	Kisu hicho ni kikali sana.	That knife is very sharp.

pombe	Pombe hiyo ni kali sana.	That beer is very strong.
jua	Jua ni kali sana.	That sun is very hot.
mwalimu	Mwalimu huyo in m̀kali sana.	That teacher is very severe.
maneno	Maneno hayo ni makali sana.	Those words are very harsh.

C. ~*nene*

m̀toto	M̀toto huyo ni m̀nene sana.	That child is very fat.
m̀nyama	M̀nyama huyo ni m̀nene sana.	That animal is very fat.
m̀ti	M̀ti huo ni m̀nene sana.	That tree is very thick.
m̀kono	M̀kono huo ni m̀nene sana.	That arm is very thick.
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe huyo ni m̀nene sana.	That ox is very fat.

3.

A. The root *b-d-l*: *badala* and *-badili*.

kalamu	Nipe kalamu yako badala ya yangu.	Give me your pen in place of mine.
	Nataka kubadili kalamu yangu na yako.	I want to exchange your pen for mine.
kitabu	Nipe kitabu chako badala ya changu.	Give me your book in place of mine.
	Nataka kubadili kitabu changu na chako.	I want to exchange your book for mine.

shati kijiko foronya

B. The root *s-f-r*: *safari* and *safiri*.

mimi	Nilisafiri m̀paka Amerika.	I traveled to America.
	Safari yangu kwenda Amerika. ilichukua muda wa wiki mbili.	My trip to America took two weeks.
sisi	Tulisafiri m̀paka Amerika.	We traveled to America.
	Safari yetu kwenda Amerika ilichukua muda wa wiki mbili.	Our trip to America took two weeks.

yeye wao

C. The root z-d: zaidi and -zidi.

kuku	Nina kuku wengi zaidi kuliko wako.	I have more chickens than you.
	Kuku wangu wamezidi kushinda wako.	My chickens have increased more than yours.
m̀punga	Nina m̀punga mwingi zaidi kuliko wako.	I have more rice than you.
	M̀punga wangu umezidi kushinda wako.	My rice has increased more than yours.

pesa watoto matata

Unit 123

1. Basic Dialogue. May I go along?

Sangai

Nikiazima bunduki, utakubali niende nawe?	If I borrow a gun, will you let me go with you?

Butler

Ndiyo, ningependa mwenzi wa kwenda naye.	Yes, I'd like a companion to go with.

Sangai

Kuwinda kwangu si kuzuri lakini tutakwenda tu.	My hunting isn't so good, but at least we'll go along.

Butler

umaskini (U)	poverty
Kama si umaskini tungekwenda kwa motokaa.	If it weren't for poverty, we'd go by car.

Sangai

m̀pumbavu	a fool, a dupe
Usinifanye m̀pumbavu bwana, pesa unazo!	Don't take me for a fool, mister, you've got the money!

Butler

-sadiki	to believe
Hunisadiki?	Don't ('can't') you believe me?

Sangai

-danganya	to cheat, deceive

m̊danganyifu	a cheat, deceiver
Hapana, m̊danganye mwingine!	No, cheat someone else.

Butler

Usisahau, tutaondoka baada ya juma moja.	Don't forget, we're going to leave in a week.

Sangai

Kwa heri, bwana.	Good-bye.

2.

A. A common way of using applied stems.

chupa	Nataka chupa ya kutilia mafuta.	I want a bottle to put some oil in.
sanduku	Nataka sanduku la kuwekea pesa.	I want a box to put some money in.
birika	Nataka birika la kutengenezea chai.	I want a kettle to make some tea in.
m̊tungi	Nataka m̊tungi wa kuchotea maji.	I want a water-jar to put some water in.
m̊shahara	Nataka m̊shahara wa kutosheleza mahitaji yangu.	I want pay sufficient for my needs.
nafasi	Nataka nafasi ya kufanyia kazi yangu.	I want a chance to do my work.
karatasi	Nataka karatasi ya kuandikia barua.	I want a sheet of paper to write a letter [on].

B. Infinitives in a noun slot.

kuwinda	Kuwinda kwake si kubaya.	His hunting is not bad.
kusoma	Kusoma kwake si kubaya.	His reading is not bad.
kuandika	Kuandika kwake si kubaya.	His writing is not bad.

kulima	Kulima kwake si kubaya.	His cultivating is not bad.

C.

kusema	Kusema kwake kumenikasirisha.	His talking has annoyed me.
kufika	Kufika kwake kumenikasirisha.	His arrival has annoyed me.

kulewa kuongea kulia kushangilia kuingia

3.

A. kama si

magugu	Pana magugu mengi hapa.	There are a lot of weeds here.
	Kama si magugu, maua yako yangeonekana vizuri.	If it were not for weeds, your flowers would be seen clearly.
hatari	Njia utakayofuata ni hatari sana.	The road you'll follow is very dangerous.
	Kama si hatari, ningekwenda pamoja nawe.	If it were not for danger, I would go with you.
nauli	Nauli ya kwenda Nairobi ni kubwa.	The fare to Nairobi is much.
	Kama si hivyo, ningekwenda huko.	If it were not for that, I would go there.
miiba	Njia hii ina miiba mingi.	This road has many thorns.
	Kama si miiba, ingekuwa nzuri.	If it were not for thorns, it would be good.

B. Numbers between 20 and 100. (Add 5 to the number in the first sentence.)

28	Nimesoma kurasa ishirini na nane.	I have read twenty-eight pages.
	Mimi nimesoma thelathini na tatu.	I have read thirty-three.
37	Nimesoma kurasa thelathini na saba.	I have read thirty-seven pages.

	Mimi nimesoma arobaini na mbili.	I have read forty-two.
46	Nimesoma kurasa arobaini na sita.	I have read forty-six pages.
	Mimi nimesoma hamsini na moja.	I have read fifty-one.
59	Nimesoma kurasa hamsini na tisa.	I have read fifty-nine pages.
	Mimi nimesoma sitini na ǹne.	I have read sixty-four.
66	Nimesoma kurasa sitini na sita.	I have read sixty-six pages.
	Mimi nimesoma sabini na moja.	I have read seventy-one.
77	Nimesoma kurasa sabini na saba.	I have read seventy-seven pages.
	Mimi nimesoma themanini na mbili.	I have read eighty-two.
88	Nimesoma kurasa themanini na nane.	I have read eighty-eight pages.
	Mimi nimesoma tisini na tatu.	I have read ninety-three.

Unit 124

1. Basic Dialogue. Hunting.

	Sangai
Sasa, m̀ŋyama akija nifaŋyeje?	Now, if any game comes, how do I act?
	Butler
-ficha	to hide something
-sikiliza	to listen
Sikiliza, lázima kwanza ujifiche asikuone.	Listen, first you have to hide [yourself] so that it can't see you.
	Sangai
-toroka	to run away
Na akitoroka je? Nim̀pige risasi?	And how about if it runs away? Shall I shoot it?
	Butler
-lenga	to aim
Ukisha jificha, lenga bunduki.	When you've finished hiding yourself, aim the gun.
-changa	to collect
-changaŋyika	to be mixed together
-chagua	to choose
ama ... ama	either ... or ...
Wakiwa wamechanganyika m̀chague um̀takaye, kama ŋyati ama tembo.	If they are all mixed up, choose the one that you want, whether a buffalo or a elephant.

Sangai

Halafu?	Then?

Butler

shabaha (N)	target
sawasawa	equally, just the same
Kama umelenga shabaha sawasawa, piga risasi.	If you've aimed at the target just right, shoot.

Sangai

-fa	to die
M̂nyama akianguka maana yake amekufa?	If the animal falls, does that mean it is dead?

Butler

Kwa kawaida, lakini usim̀kimbilie.	Generally, but don't run up to him.

2.

A. Affirmative subjunctive followed by negative subjunctive.

kuficha	Ilikuwa lázima wajifiche ili wasipigwe risasi.	It was necessary for them to hide so that they would not be shot.
kulala	Ilikuwa lázima walale chini ili wasipigwe risasi.	It was necessary for them to lie down so that they would not be shot.
kutoroka	Ilikuwa lázima watoroke ili wasipigwe risasi.	It was necessary for them to escape so that they would not be shot.
kuangalia	Ilikuwa lázima waangalie ili wasipigwe risasi.	It was necessary for them to look out so that they would not be shot.

kukimbia	Ilikuwa lázima wakimbie ili wasipigwe risasi.	It was necessary for them to run away so that they would not be shot.
kugeuka	Ilikuwa lázima wageuke ili wasipigwe risasi.	It was necessary for them to turn around so that they would not be shot.
kupinda	Ilikuwa lázima wapinde ili wasipigwe risasi.	It was necessary for them to make a turn so that they would not be shot.

B. -changa

Bw. Hassani	Sultani anataka kuchanga fedha kwa Bwana Hassani.	The chief wants to collect money for Mr. Hassani.
askari	Sultani anataka kuchanga fedha kwa askari.	The chief wants to collect money for the soldiers.

wapagazi makarani vyakula

C. -changanya

m̀chele	Usichanganye m̀chele na m̀tama.	Don't mix rice with millet.
maji	Usichanganye maji na petroli.	Don't mix water with petrol.
machungwa	Usichanganye machungwa na maembe.	Don't mix oranges with mangoes.
vitabu	Usichanganye vitabu vyako na vyangu.	Don't mix your books with mine.
maua	Usichanganye maua na magugu.	Don't mix flowers with weeds.
risasi	Usichanganye risasi na misumari.	Don't mix bullets with nails.

vijiko	Usichanganye vijiko na nyuma.	Don't mix spoons with forks.

3.

A. kama ... ama ...

ndizi	Pana ndizi nyingi. Ichague uitakayo, kama hii ama hii.	There are many bananas. Choose the one you want, whether this or that.
vyumba	Pana vyumba vingi. Kichague ukitakacho, kama hiki ama hiki.	There are many rooms. Choose the one you want, whether this or that.
bunduki	Pana bunduki nyingi. Ichague uitakayo, kama hii ama hii.	There are many guns. Choose the one you want, whether this or that.

kamba kengele kufuli miundo mito funguo nyembe

mashoka maua

Unit 125

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Butler

-chungulia	to examine carefully
Kitu cha kwanza ni kum̀chungulia kwanza.	The first thing is to take a good hard look at him.

Sangai

-jongea	to move, make motion
-kamata	to seize
Nikiona hajongei naweza kum̀kamata?	If I see that he isn't stirring, can I take hold of him?

Butler

dakika (N)	a minute
Ndiyo, baada ya dakika chache.	Yes, after a few moments.

Sangai

Kama si wewe, ningem̀kimbilia akianguka.	If it weren't for you, I'd have run up to him when he fell.

Butler

-choka	to become tired
Unawaona wale wamechoka, watembea polepole.	You see those are tired. They are walking slowly.

Sangai

-fukuza	to pursue
-ua	to kill

twiga (N-pers)	giraffe
Tuwafukuze, sitaki kuwaua twiga.	Let's go after them. I don't want to kill giraffe.
Butler	
mbio (N)	speed, running
Unafikiri unaweza mbio za twiga?	Do you think you can [duplicate] the speed of a giraffe?
Sangai	
Siwezi, lakini napenda kumwona akikimbia.	I can't, but I like to watch him run.
Butler	
sauti (N)	voice
Unasikia sauti za tembo?	Do you hear the trumpeting of the elephants?
Sangai	
-nguruma	to rumble, roar
Ndiyo, wananguruma kwa sauti sana.	Yes, they are roaring with a great voice.

Review Sentences, Units 1 - 125

1.	Ungependa tubadilishane kalamu?	Would you like to trade pens [with me]?
2.	Bilauri iliyohitajiwa iko hapa juu ya meza.	The glass that was needed is here on the table.
3.	Magari ya abiria yalifika saa nane leo alasiri.	The passenger lorries arrived at 2 p.m. today.
4.	Mtoto hataki maziwa wala maji ya machungwa.	The child doesn't want milk or orange juice.
5.	Ilikuwa lázima wajifiche wasishikwe na askari.	It was necessary for them to hide so as not to be seized by the policeman.
6.	Pale ng'ambo ya mto pamepatikana simba wengi.	Lots of lions have been found over there on the other side of the river.
7.	Kabla ya kuondoka tutachukua pesa za kutosha.	Before we leave, we'll take enough money.
8.	Choma karatasi zote zisizohitajiwa.	Burn all the papers that aren't needed.
9.	Mwaka ujao tutahamia huko Unguja.	We're going to move to Zanzibar next year.
10.	Wanafunzi wote waliojifunza huko Ulaya wamerudi makwao.	All the students who studied in Europe have returned to their homes.
11.	Je, wadhani atarudi hapa tena?	Do you think he will return here again?
12.	Itamlazimu kurudi hapa mapema sana.	He will have to return here very soon.

13.	Chakula hicho kilikuwa kimeiva sana.	That food was quite thoroughly cooked.
14.	Inafaa uangalie mbele unapoendesha motokaa.	It's a good idea to look ahead when you drive a car.
15.	Juma alisema ya kwamba, anataka nguo isiyotumiwa.	Juma said that he wants brand new clothes.
16.	Watu wa Ufaransa wanaongea upesi kuliko watu wa Kenya.	The people of France speak more rapidly than the people of Kenya.
17.	Nyumba aliyonunua ilikuwa haina mapambo mengi.	The house that he bought didn't have much furniture.
18.	Rafiki yangu amejiumiza kwa kisu.	My friend hurt himself with a knife.
19.	Watu wengi walikusanyika katika uwanja wa mpira.	Many people were assembled on the football field.
20.	Alifunga nyumba kwa ufunguo ili watoto wasiweze kufungua.	He locked the house with a key so that the children wouldn't be able to unlock [it].
21.	Amekwisha tembelea nchi zote za Afrika ya Mashariki.	He has already visited all the countries of East Africa.
22.	Anaweza kuongea lugha zote za Afrika ila Kiswahili.	He can speak all African languages except Swahili.
23.	Ukijaribu kutoroka askari atakupiga risasi.	If you try to run away, the policeman will shoot you.
24.	Mletee mchele badala ya nyama ya nguruwe.	Bring him rice instead of pork.
25.	Wao wana pesa nyingi sana.	They have a very large amount of money.
26.	Usimkimbize mtoto kwa mbio hivyo.	Don't make the child run so fast.

27.	Wafanyi kazi wa Idara ya Elimu wananung'unika juu ya mishahara yao.	The workers in the Ministry of Education are complaining about their wages.
28.	Fuata barabara iliyonyoka mpaka kwenye mto.	Follow the straight road to where there is a river.
29.	Anakijulia Kiswahili barábara.	He knows Swahili perfectly.
30.	Twendeni sokoni, au m̊jini?	Shall we go to market, or to town?
31.	Afadhali twende m̊jini.	It will be better if we go to town.
32.	Safari yangu ya kwenda Afrika ilichukua muda wa siku tano tu.	My trip to Africa took only five days.
33.	Wazazi wake ni maskini sana.	His parents are very poor.
34.	Anataka kalamu ya kukuandikia barua.	He wants a pen to write a letter with.
35.	Wasingalifanya hivyo, nisingaliwaambia waondoke.	If they hadn't done like that, I would not have told them to leave.
36.	Ukitaka kazi ni lázima kuitafuta.	If you want work, you have to look for it.
37.	Kama si wewe, ningempiga yule mtoto.	
38.	Chagua nguo utakayo, kama hii ama hiyo.	Choose whichever cloth you want, whether this or that.
39.	Ningejifunza Kiswahili ningejua kukiongea.	If I studied Swahili, I would know how to speak it.
40.	Hayo ndiyo niliyokuwa nikiongea juu yake.	That is what I was saying about him.
41.	Wakati wa joto umekwisha fika.	The hot season has already arrived.
42.	Alituingilia tulipokuwa tukila.	He burst in on us while we were eating.

43. Nyumba yake imejaa mapambo ya nyumba.	His house is full of furniture.
44. Alipokuwa ametembelea jimbo la Indiana nilifanya kazi peke yangu.	While he was visiting Indiana, I worked on my own.
45. Penye moto hapakosi moshi.	Where there is fire, there is no lack of smoke.

Directions for use of Units 126 - 150

The last 25 units of this course are based on a series of spontaneous conversations recorded by Swahili speakers in Dar es Salaam. The editing of these texts which was done by speakers of Swahili in Washington, D. C., has been limited to the breaking up of long sentences into short ones, preserving insofar as possible the words which appear in the original. A free translation into English has been provided in lieu of grammatical notes.

It is suggested that the student listen several times to the unedited version before looking at the simplified version and translation which appear in the book. Having done so, the student may practice saying the sentences of the printed text after a tutor, with his book still closed.

Upon opening his book, the student should underline those Swahili words which are new to him, and also write them in the left-hand margin, if they do not already appear there. He should not write the English equivalent under or over the Swahili word in the body of the text.

At the next stage, the student should try to give each Swahili sentence in response to a cue taken either from the list of new words in the margin, or from the English translation. This in turn should lead to temporary memorization of 6 - 8 consecutive lines at a time.

Going beyond memorization, the student should collect, with the help of a tutor, several useful sentences containing each new word. Next, the student should listen again to the original unedited dialogue.

Finally, student and tutor may engage in a conversation which covers the same subject matter, but with no attempt at verbatim reproduction of the original.

Unit 126: Hospitali za mjini.

	Naam, Bwana Yusufu.	Hello, Yusufu.
	Naam bwana.	Hello.
tangu	Habari za tangu jana?	How are you today?
	Nzuri sana.	Very fine.
	Habari za nyumbani?	How are things at home?
	Salama tu.	Just fine.
-jisikia	Je, wasikiaje mwenzangu?	How do you feel, my friend?
-choka	Oh, nimechoka sana.	Oh, I'm very tired.
kule	Namna gani kule nyumbani? Hawajambo wote?	How are things there at home? Is everyone all right?
	Watoto wote hawajambo,	All the children are fine
isipokuwa	isipokuwa mwanangu mdogo ana homa.	except that my youngest has a fever.
-fikiri	Unafikiri ni homa gani hiyo?	What kind of fever do you think it is?
mbu	Bila shaka ni homa ya mbu.	It is undoubtedly malaria.
-wahi	Je, umewahi kuonana na daktari?	Have you seen the doctor at all?
-peleka	Sasa hivi nampeleka hospitalini.	I'm just now taking him to the hospital.
	Mnakwenda hospitali gani?	Which hospital are you going to?
	Tunakwenda hospitali ya Mnazimoja.	We're going to Mnazimoja Hospital.
unayo	Je, unayo shilingi moja?	And do you have one shilling?
	La, sina.	No, I haven't.
gharama saa hizi	Hujui kuwa kuna gharama ya shilingi moja saa hizi?	Don't you know that there is a one-shilling charge at this time of day?

mfanyakazi	Mimi ni mfanyakazi wa Serikali.	I'm a government employee.
huwa	Huwa sitoi gharama ya hospitali.	I don't generally pay the hospital fee.

Unit 127 (Inaendelea)

-tozwa	Hivi wafanya kazi wa serikali huwa hawatozwi pesa?	That is to say that government employees are not made to pay?
	Hawatozwi!	They are not charged.
-danganywa	Kumbe mimi nimedanganywa siku nyingi.	Then I've been cheated for a long time.
-pata	Hujapata kwenda hospitali hata siku moja?	Haven't you ever been to the hospital even once?
mara	Nimepata kwenda mara nyingi.	I've had the occasion many times.
kila	Lakini, kila wakati nimekwenda saa tatu.	But I've always gone at 9 o'clock.
ndio	Najua saa tatu ndio wakati ambao hawatozi pesa.	I know that 9 is the time when they don't charge.
ye yote	Mtu ye yote anayefanya kazi serikalini ni lázima aende hospitali saa moja na nusu asubuhi.	Whoever works in the government is supposed to go to the hospital at 7:30 a.m.
-andikiwa	Akiandikiwa karatasi yake hupata dawa bila gharama yo yote.	If his sick sheet is signed, he gets medicine entirely free of charge.
-jitahidi	Nitajitahidi siku nyingine.	I'll try some other day.

mtumishi	Lakini, Bwana Yusufu kwa nini hata ukiwa mtumishi wa serikali unatozwa pesa?	But, Yusufu, why is one charged even when one is a government employee?
-wahi	Mimi nimewahi kulipa mara mbili au mara tatu hivi.	I've already paid two or three times.
-tegemea	Inategemea hali ya mtu mwenyewe.	It depends on the [financial] condition of the individual himself.
-lalia thamani	Kuna wengine wanataka kulalia vitanda vya thamani.	There are many [who] want to occupy the most expensive beds.
kawaida	Wengine hulalia vitanda vya kawaida.	Others occupy ordinary beds.

Unit 128 (Inaendelea)

	Vitanda vya kawaida ndio vitanda vya namna gani?	What are the ordinary beds like?
vile ambavyo	Vitanda vya kawaida ni vile ambavyo wanalala watu wote wasiokuwa na pesa.	The ordinary beds are those which are occupied by anyone who lacks money.
kama	Kama watu gani?	For instance?
wale	Ni wale wanaotoka mashamba.	They are those who come from rural areas.
wageni	Wako wengine wageni wasiokuwa na pesa.	There are some transients who have no money.
wale wale	Lakini, kumbuka, wale wale washamba wanaweza kulalia vitanda ghali.	But remember that some rural people are able to occupy expensive beds.
ikiwa	Wanaweza ikiwa wana pesa.	They can if they have money.

-dhani	Oh, Mimi nilidhani mtu ye yote anayetoka shamba halipi pesa!	Oh! I had the impression that anyone from the country didn't pay!
	La, bwana!	No!
wenye	Vile vile nakumbuka kule shamba kuna watu wenye pesa nyingi.	I also remember that out there in the countryside there are people with lots of money.
tuliopo	Wana pesa nyingi kuliko hata sisi tuliopo hapa mjini.	They have more money than even those of us who are here in town.
hivyo	Bila shaka ni hivyo!	No doubt about it!
	Asante sana Bwana Yusufu.	Thanks a lot, Yusufu.
-potezea	Sitaki kukupotezea wakati.	I don't want to waste your time.
	Mtoto wako ni mgonjwa.	Your child is ill.
-faa	Sasa yafaa uchukue karatasi hii umkimbilie Bwana Mganga.	Now it's best that you take this paper and get to the doctor in a hurry.
mganga		
-wezekana	Mkimbilie upesi iwezekanavyo.	Run to see him as fast as you can.
	Vyema. Nitakavyosikia nitakuja kukuambia. Kwaheri!	All right. I'll come and tell you what I find out. Good bye!
	Asante, kwaheri bwana!	Thanks! Good bye!

Unit 129: Uuzaji wa vyakula sokoni

Karibu Bwana Juma!	Welcome, Juma!
Oh, asante sana!	Thanks!
Je, unataka nini leo?	And what do you want today?
Leo nataka machungwa bwana.	Today I'd like some oranges.

	Leo machungwa ni ghali sana.	Oranges are very high today.
	Chungwa moja ni senti kumi, bwana.	Oranges are -/10 apiece.
wakati	Unajua, siku hizi ni wakati wa mvua.	You know, this is the rainy season.
gari	Magari mengi huwa hayafiki hapa upesi.	Not many lorries get here on schedule.
uhaba	Kwa hiyo tuna uhaba wa machungwa.	For that reason, we're having a shortage of oranges.
mlimaji kwenu	Lakini walimaji wa machungwa ni wengi sana sehemu za kwenu.	But there are a lot of orange growers in the vicinity!
	Kwanini yanakuwa ghali hivi?	Why are they so expensive?
uchukuzi	Kwa sababu gharama za uchukuzi ni kubwa mno!	Because the transport charges are excessive.
ingawaje -chukua	Lakini, ingawaje gharama za uchukuzi ni kubwa mno, huwezi kuchukua chungwa moja kwa gharama ya senti tano!	But even though the cost of transportation is too high, you can't sell a single orange for five cents!
	Aaaa, wewe ni rafiki yangu.	Oh well, you're my friend.
zamani	Wewe ni mnunuzi wangu wa zamani.	You've been my customer from way back.
-fanyia	Nitakufanyia chungwa moja senti tano.	I'll make you [a special price of] 5 cents an orange.

Unit 130 (Inaendelea)

Je, unataka nini zaidi -	And what else do you want?
Unataka ndizi au viazi ulaya?	Would you like bananas, or (Irish) potatoes?

vipo	Oh, napenda sana viazi ulaya kama vipo.	Well, I like potatoes very much, if there are some.
hebu	Hebu nitazame ------	Let me have a look ------
mbona ~embamba	Lakini mbona vingine vidogo na vyembamba sana.	But some are small and very irregular in shape.
~nene	Vingine sio vinene kama kawaida.	Some are not nice and round as [they] usual[ly are].
gunia	Ah, bwana, sisi tuendapo madukani kununua, tunanunua katika magunia.	Ah, my friend, when we go to the shops to buy, we buy [them] in sacks.
-chagua	Hatuwezi kuchagua kuwa gunia hili lina viazi vikubwa au vidogo.	We aren't able to select whether this sack [or that] has large potatoes [in it].
kwenu	Lakini viazi hivi vinalimwa sehemu za kwenu, au vinatoka mbali sana?	But are these potatoes grown nearby, or do they come from quite a distance?
-danganyika	Ah, watu wengi wanadanganyika.	Ah! Lots of people are fooled [by that].
-dhani	Wakisikia 'viazi ulaya,' wanadhani vinalimwa Ulaya.	When they hear 'Europe potatoes', they think they are grown in Europe.
	Hivi havilimwi Ulaya, bwana.	These aren't grown in Europe, my friend.
wenyewe	Tunavilima sisi wenyewe hapa hapa Tanganyika.	We grow them ourselves right here in Tanganyika.
pande	Vingine vyatoka karibu tu hapa pande za Morogoro.	Some come from right nearby, right around Morogoro.
	Hivi Morogoro pia kunalimwa viazi ulaya?	You mean that Irish potatoes are grown at Morogoro too?
	Naam!	Certainly!

Unit 131 (Inaendelea)

	Je, wataka nazi?	Do you want some coconuts?
	Nazi, nataka sana, kwa sababu mke wangu anazipenda sana.	Yes, I do want some coconuts, because my wife likes them very much.
Kimbo	Mimi nilidhani unatumia Kimbo!	But I thought you used Kimbo!
harufu	Kimbo sitaki, kwa sababu harufu yake hainipendezi sana.	I don't like Kimbo, because I don't particularly care for its smell.
	Sasa wasemaje	Well, what do you say, Friend Juma?
-funga	Nifunge, au unataka kununua nyama pia?	Shall I wrap [it] up, or do you want to buy some meat, too?
kifaa	Nitanunua nyama na vifaa vidogo vidogo.	I'll buy some meat and a few little items.
	Nadhani vinanitosha maana kikapu changu si kikubwa sana.	I think that will be enough, because my basket isn't very big.
-kaanga	Je, samaki wa kukaanga, unataka?	And do you want some fried fish?
kopo	Siwapendi, napenda samaki wa makopo tu.	I don't like them; I only like canned fish.
-pa	Mimi naona labda hutaki kumpa kazi nyingi bibi yako nyumbani.	I see perhaps you don't like to give your wife a lot of work around the house.
	Bila shaka, kwa sababu juzi juzi hapa amepata mtoto.	Quite right, because just a few days ago she had a baby.
-paa	Kupaa samaki itakuwa kazi kubwa.	Cleaning fish would be a big chore.

~bichi	Unajua kuwa samaki wabichi wana vitamin?	Do you know that fresh fish have vitamins?
-faa	Pia unajua kuwa ni chakula cha kufaa kwa watoto?	And do you also know that it is good food for children?
-tiwa	Niliambiwa na mzungu mmoja kuwa wale samaki wa makopo hutiwa vitamin.	I was told by a European that that canned fish has vitamins added.
haja	Sina haja ya kumsumbua sana mke wangu.	I have no need to put my wife to a lot of trouble.

Unit 132 (Inaendelea)

~bichi	Je, maharagwe mabichi, hutaki?	And you don't want any [nice] fresh beans?
	Napenda maharagwe mabichi, nitachukua.	I like fresh beans; I'll take [some].
-chukua	Lakini, siwezi kuchukua mengi.	But I can't take many.
ulicho	Nitachukua kila ulicho nacho, kidogo kidogo.	I'll take just a little bit of everything you have.
wewe	Nitachukua kwa sababu wewe ni rafiki yangu.	I'll take it because you are my friend.
ratli	Haya bwana. Sasa nifunge maharagwe ratli ngapi?	O.K. How many pounds of beans shall I wrap up?
	Ratli mbili tu zinatutosha.	Just two pounds will be enough for us.
taabu	Wewe huoni kuja huku kila siku ni taabu?	[But] don't you find that coming here every day is tiresome?
	Ungechukua maharagwe ya kutosha kwa siku kumi!	You could take enough beans for ten days!
	Hapana, bwana, haya yanatosha kwa leo.	No, my friend, these are enough for today.

zaidi	Nini tena zaidi, Bwana Juma?	And what else?
haja	Basi! Sina haja ya kitu kingine zaidi; asante sana.	That's all. I don't need anything else. Thank you very much.
	Haya, lete kikapu chako sawa sawa tufunge.	All right, bring your basket [hold it level] and we'll tie it up.

Unit 133 (Inaendelea)

hapa	Kikapu changu hiki hapa.	Here's my basket.
	Funga vizuri sana.	Tie it up very carefully.
kamba	Weka kamba chini na juu.	Tie it below and above.
pikipiki	Nitakapofunga kwenye pikipiki yangu, kikapu hakitaweza kuanguka njiani.	When I tie it to my motorcycle, the basket won't be able to fall off in the street.
kumbe	Kumbe una pikipiki, bwana?	Oh, you've got a motorcycle?
-tarajia	Mimi nilitarajia kumpa mtoto akuletee nyumbani.	I was intending to give it to a boy to carry home for you.
	Oh, asante, sina haja ya mtoto, pikipiki ninayo.	Oh, thanks a lot, I don't need a boy, I've got a motorcycle.
kwenye	Haya basi nitamwambia mtoto akuletee kwenye pikipiki yako ufunge.	I'll tell the boy to take it to your motorcycle so that you can tie it on.
-onana	Tutaonana kesho, bwana.	See you tomorrow!
	Asante.	Thank you.
wee	Wee mtoto, funga vizuri hapo.	You, boy, tie it well there!
nyuma	Nyuma kusiwe na matata.	There mustn't be any trouble back-there!

Unit 134: Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam

	Bwana Yusufu!	Yusufu!
	Naam bwana!	Hello!
	Loo, ni bahati yangu nzuri.	I'm lucky.
-ongoza	Nilidhani sitampata mtu wa kuniongoza.	I thought I wouldn't find anyone to direct me.
	Ninakwenda Msimbazi, bwana.	I'm going to Msimbazi.
tangu	Siku nyingi zimepita tangu nitoke hapa.	Many days have passed since I left here.
-fuata	Sikumbuki vyema ni barabara gani nitafuata.	I don't remember very well which road to take.
	Unaweza kuniongoza?	Can you direct me?
	Ulikuwa wapi siku zote?	Where have you been all this time?
mwaka	Bwana, kwa muda wa miaka mitatu iliyopita, nilikuwa Nairobi.	I've been in Nairobi for the past three years.
uhamisho	Unajua nilipewa uhamisho kutoka hapa mpaka Nairobi!	You know, I was given a transfer from here to Nairobi!
kumbe	Ahaa, kumbe!	Oh, is that so!
	Unataka kwenda Msimbazi, sivyo?	You want to go to Msimbazi, don't you?
	Naam bwana.	Yes.
-alikwa kufunguliwa jengo	Nimealikwa kwenda kule kuhudhuria kufunguliwa kwa jengo jipya.	I was invited to go there to attend the opening of a new building.
	Jengo jipya hilo ni la Community Centre.	The new building is (of) the Community Center.

nje	Ulikuwa nje kwa muda mrefu, kiasi cha miaka mitatu.	You've been outside the country for a long time--three years.
vigumu	Nadhani itakuwa vigumu sana kwenda peke yako.	I think it would be very difficult for you to go by yourself.
-elekeza	Nitakuelekeza namna ya kufika huko.	I'll show you the way to get there.
-shukuru	Nitashukuru sana, Bwana Yusufu.	I'll be very grateful, Yusufu.

Unit 135 (Inaendelea)

forodha	Hapa ulipo ni forodhani.	Here where you [now] are is the customs house.
	Forodhani--hapa najua.	The customs house--I know this place.
-itwa	Barabara hii inaitwa Azania Front.	This road is called Azania Front.
	Ukitoka hapa Azania Front utakwenda moja kwa moja mpaka Main Avenue.	When you leave here, you go straight ahead as far as Main Avenue.
	Naam bwana.	Yes.
mwisho	Halafu utafika mwisho wa Main Avenue.	Then you get to the end of Main Avenue.
pale	Pale mwisho utaona pana majumba mawili.	There at the end you will see where there are two buildings.
pahali	Jumba moja lina pahali pameandikwa 'Railway Station.'	One building has a place [where] is written 'Railway Station.'
-andikwa	Jumba jingine lina pahali pengine pameandikwa 'Police Station.'	A sign on the other says 'Police Station.'

	Naam Bwana.	Yes.
-shika machweo	Pale Police Station utashika barabara inayoelekea machweo ya jua.	There at the Police Station you will take a road which runs west.
penye	Utakwenda moja kwa moja mpaka penye 'Keep Left.'	Go right ahead to where there is a traffic circle.
kibao	Hapo pana kibao kilichoandikwa 'Keep Left.'	There, there is a small sign with the words 'Keep Left.'
hapo	Hapo napakumbuka bwana.	I remember that place.
	Ehee, pale penye 'Keep Left' pamebadilika.	That place at the circle has changed.
sura	Sura yake imekuwa mpya.	The place looks different. ('Its face has become new.')
-chukua	Utachukua barabara hiyo moja kwa moja mpaka Ring Street.	You take that road straight ahead to Ring Street.
kuwa	Ulipoondoka, pale Ring, hapakuwa na 'Keep Left.'	When you left, they didn't have a traffic circle at Ring.
ipo	Ah, hivi siku hizi pale ipo?	Oh, there is one there nowadays?
	Ndiyo, ipo!	Yes, there is.
hapo	Baada ya hapo, endelea tu mpaka Msimbazi Street.	From there, just continue on to Msimbazi Street.
mpya	Pale Msimbazi Street pana 'Keep Left' mpya.	There at Msimbazi Street there is another 'Keep Left.'
-tengenezwa	Hapo barabara imetengenezwa vizuri sana.	There the road has been surfaced very nicely.
kupendeza	Barabara hiyo ni safi ya kupendeza.	That road is delightfully smooth.

Unit 136 (Inaendelea)

matokeo	Loo, Bwana Yusufu, matokeo hayo yote yametokea katika miaka hii mitatu?	Say, Yusufu, all this progress has come about in these three years?
nyuma	Matokeo makubwa sana yametokea hapa nyuma.	Great progress has taken place lately.
orofa	Zipo nyumba za orofa nyingi na kubwa.	There are many and large [multi-story] buildings.
uzuri	Nyumba hizo, kidogo kama Amerika, kwa uzuri wake.	Those buildings are a little like America[n buildings] with respect to their beauty.
	Kweli?	You don't say?
kabisa	Kweli kabisa!	Yes, indeed.
pale	Na nasikia pale Mnazimoja pamejengwa majumba.	And I also hear that buildings have been put up there at Mnazimoja.
-kubwa	Majumba hayo ni makubwa ya orofa.	Those buildings have many stories.
	Kabisa!	That's quite true.
-zidi	Sasa ukisha toka Msimbazi Street utazidi kwenda moja kwa moja.	Now, after you get past Msimbazi Street, you continue straight ahead.
kwenye	Baadaye utafika kwenye barabara inayokwenda Kigogo.	Then you will come to where there is a road that goes to Kigogo.
pana	Hapo pia pana 'Keep Left.'	There's another circle there.
	Vizuri sana Bwana Yusufu!	Very good!
kushoto	Kwa mkono wa kushoto wa barabara ya Kigogo kuna nyumba kubwa.	On the left side of the Kigogo road, there is a large building.

Boma	Nyumba hiyo kubwa iliyojengwa ni Boma.	That large [recently built] building is the District Office.
-acha	Mbona Boma hilo nililiacha Acacia Avenue!	('Why, I left that Boma on Acacia Avenue!')
-hamishwa	Imekuwa kuwaje likahamishwa?	How did it happen that it got moved?
-hama	Oh, limehamishwa huko kwa sababu siku hizi mji umekuwa mkubwa sana!	It was moved there because nowadays the city has become very large.

Unit 137 (Inaendelea)

-fanya	Wanafanyia kazi gani katika jumba lile kubwa kule Acacia Avenue?	What kind of work do they use that large building on Acacia for?
	Unajua, kazi za serikali ni nyingi sana.	You know, the work of the government is very extensive.
-gawanya	Kazi hizo za serikali zimegawanywa kwa ma - D.C.	These duties have been divided among the D.C.'s.
-karibia	Sasa ukitoka pale Kigogo, nenda moja kwa moja mpaka ukaribie daraja la Kigogo.	Now, when you leave Kigogo, go straight ahead until you get near the Kigogo Bridge.
-pita	Halafu pita mkono wa kushoto wa daraja hilo.	Then bear left past the bridge.
-andika	Utaona pahali pameandikwa 'Msimbazi.'	You will see a sign saying 'Msimbazi.'
-kuta mlinzi	Pale bila shaka utamkuta mlinzi atakayekuelekeza njia.	There, you will no doubt run into a watchman who will show you the way.

ugeni -karibisha	Tafadhali mwonyeshe kadi yako ya ugeni na utakaribishwa.	Show him your visitors card and you will be made welcome.
	Asante sana, Bwana Yusufu.	Thanks a lot!
-wahi jengo	Je wewe umewahi kufika katika jengo hilo, likoje?	And you, have you ever been in that building? What is it like?
-penda	Oh, ni zuri la kupendeza zuri sana.	Oh, it's lovely - very beautiful.
-onekana mbali	Je, linaweza kuonekana kwa mbali kidogo?	And is it visible from any distance?
umbali	Naam! Hata umbali wa maili moja unaweza kuliona.	Yes! You can even see it from a mile off.
-lingana	Je, Bwana Yusufu, unalilinganishaje na Arnautoglu Community Centre?	How do you compare it with Arnatoglu Community Center?
kwa	Kwa kweli siwezi kulilinganisha sana.	I can't really compare it.
siku	Siwezi kulilinganisha kwa sababu Arnautoglu ni la siku nyingi.	I can't compare it because Arnatoglu has been there for some time.
mazoea	Watu wamekuwa na mazoea nalo.	People have become accustomed to it.
jipya	Hilo la Msimbazi ni jipya.	The one at Msimbazi is new.
matokeo	Hatujui matokeo yake yatakuwa namna gani.	('We don't know what will come of it.')
	Asante sana Bwana Yusufu.	Thanks!
-ona -ondoa	Nadhani tutaonana kabla sijaondoka kurudi Nairobi.	('I'll see you before I go back to Nairobi.')

Unit 138 (Inaendelea)

-shukuru	Ningeshukuru sana kama ungefika nyumbani kwangu.	I'd be most grateful if you would drop by the house.
-fika	Hivyo tafadhali fika.	So please do come.
jambo	Hilo ni jambo zuri sana Bwana Yusufu.	That's very kind [of you], Yusufu!
-kawia -hama	Lakini, kama unavyojua sisi watu wa mjini hatukawii kuhama.	But as you know, we city dwellers change our residence frequently.
mtaa	Hivi wakati huu uko mtaa gani?	So what street are you living on right now?
	Mimi sasa ninakaa Msimbazi Street.	Right now, I'm living on Msimbazi Street.
mwenyewe	Nyumba yangu nimejenga mwenyewe.	I built my own house.
orofa	Nyumba hiyo ni nzuri na ina orofa moja.	The house is very nice, and it has an upstairs.
tajiri	Lo! Bwana Yusufu umekuwa tajiri sana.	Hey! You've been doing all right for yourself!
mara	Mara umekwisha jenga nyumba!	You've already built a house.
	Ehe, kwa sababu ya kulima!	Yes, because of farming.
-hama hasara	Aaa, kumbe sisi ambao tunahamishwa kutoka hapa kwenda hapa tunapata hasara tu.	Ah, [yes], so those of us who are transferred hither and thither just lose out!
-furahi	Nitafurahi sana kuiona nyumba yako.	I'll be very glad to see your house.

mpango	Vyema! Na nitakueleza mipango mingi.	Fine! ('I'll fill you in on all the details!)

Unit 139: Duka la nguo

	Habari Bwana Salumu?	How are you, Mr. Salumu?
	Oh, nzuri sana, Bwana Juma. Karibu bwana!	Oh, very well. Come in!
	Asante sana, bwana!	Thanks very much.
-funga	Karibu bwana! Siku hizi nimefungua duka kubwa sana.	Come in! In the last few days I've opened a large store.
duka mbali mbali	Ni duka la nguo, vitu vya kula, na vitu vingine mbali mbali.	It's a [combination] dry goods store, grocery, and general emporium.
kuna	Kuna nguo gani unauza?	What kind of clothes do you sell?
aina	Kuna nguo za aina nyingi ambazo ninauza.	There are a lot of kinds that I sell.
kanga fulana za ndani	Ninauza kanga, shuka za kitanda, mashati fulana za ndani, na fulana ndogo za watoto.	I sell kangas, bed linens, shirts, undershirts and baby clothes.
	Pia ninauza nguo nyingine nyingi.	I also sell many other [kinds of] clothes.
-toka	Nimepata nguo hizo kutoka Mombasa.	I've gotten these dry goods from Mombasa.
-agiza	Nguo hizo niliziagiza.	I ordered those goods.
kaptura	Nataka nguo za watoto - kaptura na shati.	I want some children's clothing- shirts and shorts.
mimi	Tena ningependa mashati mawili, yangu mimi mwenyewe.	I'd also like two shirts for myself.

khaki	Vile vile ningependa suruali mbili za khaki ya Amerika, na koti moja.	I'd also like two pair of trousers [made] of American khaki, and a coat.
-shona	Je, una fundi anayeweza kushona koti?	Do you have a tailor who can make a coat?
mwenyewe	Ah, mimi mwenyewe na mke wangu tunashona.	Oh! My wife sews, and so do I.
-fanya	Baada ya kufunga duka, huzifanya kazi hizi sisi wenyewe.	We do this work ourselves after hours.
taabu	Huwa tunazifanya bila ya kupata taabu ya kumpa fundi.	We ordinarily do it without the bother of giving [it] to a tailor.
kwisha	Lakini kumbuka kuna nyingine ambazo zilikwisha shonwa kabisa.	But bear in mind that we also have other [clothing] which is ready-made.
hebu	Hebu jaribu moja katika hizi!	Try one of these.

Unit 140 (Inaendelea)

-stiri	Bwana, wasema 'nguo iliyoshonwa haistiri mtu.'	[But] they say that a ready-made garment does not cover one properly.
-penda	Nisingependelea kuchukua nguo iliyokwisha shonwa.	I wouldn't like to take a ready-made garment.
-pima	Ningetaka kupima mimi mwenyewe.	I'd like to be measured in person.

mawazo kizamani	Oh, kumbe bado una mawazo yale yale ya kizamani!	Oh so! You still have old-fashioned ideas!
-vaa	Tazama shati nililovaa mimi.	Look at the shirt that I'm wearing.
Japan	Shati hili limetengenezwa Japan.	This shirt was made in Japan.
-penda	Shati hili ni zuri na la kupendeza sana.	This shirt is nice and very good-looking.
-chukua	Kushona kwake kunachukua wakati mrefu.	Sewing it takes a long time.
wewe -pata	Shati, kama unavyohitaji wewe, hulipati mpaka kesho.	A shirt, as you want it, you won't get before tomorrow.
tayari pale pale	Lakini, ukitaka lililoshonwa tayari, unanunua na kuvaa pale pale.	But if you want a ready-made shirt, you buy it and put it on right on the spot.
-enda -ona	Kweli, lakini kabla hatujaendelea mbele, waonaje Bwana Salumu!	True, but before we go any further, what do you think? ['how do you see?']
ile ile	Bei hii ni ile ile kama ya mwezi jana?	Is this price the same as last month's?
-panda	Au bei hii imepanda kidogo.	Or has it gone up a little?
ushuru forodha	Nasikia kuwa ushuru wa forodha umepanda siku hizi.	I hear that the customs duty has gone up recently.
kuwa	Kwa kuwa ushuru umepanda bei ya nguo imekuwa ghali sana.	Because of the fact that the duty has increased, the price of clothes has become very high.
	Je, vipi?	What about that?
-angalia maneno	Usiangalie hayo; ni maneno ya watu tu.	Don't pay any attention to that! It's only a rumor.

hotuba	Watu wengine hawakuweza kuelewa ile hotuba ya Waziri Mkuu.	Some people misunderstood that speech of the Prime Minister's.

Unit 141 (Inaendelea)

	Waziri Mkuu alisema 'Bei ya vitu itapanda.'	He said, 'The price of things is going to rise.'
maana	Lakini watu wengine hawakuelewa maana ya maneno hayo.	But some people didn't understand the meaning of those words.
maadam -panda -panda	Maadam Bwana Waziri alisema bei itapanda, walianza kupandisha bei.	Because the minister said that prices would rise, they began to raise prices.
kila mara	Lakini mimi kila mara nilikuwa nikienda kwenye Baraza la Taifa.	But I was attending the National Assembly regularly.
-sikia mapato	Nilikuwa nikienda kusikiliza wanasema nini juu ya mapato.	I was going [in order] to listen to what they say about income.
-panda	Kwa sababu hiyo sikuweza kupandisha bei yangu.	For that reason I couldn't raise my price[s].
wakati	Wakati huu bei ni ile ile.	At the present time the price is the same.
faida	Napata faida ndogo sana.	I make a very small profit.
kwa	Napata senti ishirini na tano au thelathini kwa kila shati.	I make 25 or 30 cents on each shirt.
kwanza humu	Kumbe! Nadhani hii ni mara yangu ya kwanza kuingia humu dukani.	Really, I think this is my first time to be in this shop.

mwananchi -panda	Hili ni duka la mwananchi ambaye mpaka sasa hajapandisha bei.	This is the shop of a fellow African who up to now hasn't raised prices.
-fahamu wenye	Nafahamu, Bwana Salum, kuna wananchi wachache sana wenye maduka.	It seems to me, Salum, that there are very few Africans who have shops.
kutopandisha	Hivyo basi, wewe ulikuwa mtu wa kwanza kutopandisha bei.	And so you were the first person not to raise prices. [-to- is used to form negative infinitives. It stands immediately after ku-.]
Waarabu mahali	Waarabu wamekwisha pandisha bei kila mahali.	The Arabs have already raised prices everywhere.
hebu	Hebu, Bwana Salumu, kuna nguo za wanawake?	Well, then, Bwana Salumu, do you have women's clothes?

Unit 142 (Inaendelea)

	Nguo za wanawake ni hizi hapa.	The women's clothes are these here.
hivi hivi	Nyingine unaweza kuvaa hivi hivi kama kanga.	Some you can wear just like a kanga.
vazi	Siku hizi bwana tunataka mavazi ya nchi za magharibi.	Nowadays we like Western clothing.
kwa	Ningependa gauni mbili kwa bibi yangu.	I'd like two dresses for my wife.
itakiwavyo	Je, fundi wako anaweza kushona vizuri itakiwavyo?	And can your tailor sew as nicely as required?
mshono	Oh, kabisa! Pia kuna mishono mingi.	Oh, by all means! Besides there are many styles.

kibwebwe	Kuna mshono wa kibwebwe na mingine mingi ya kila aina.	There is the kibwebwe style, and many others of every kind.
mkeo	Mshono gani mkeo anapenda?	What style does your wife like?
mchinjo	Naona kama anapenda mchinjo.	I think she likes the mchinjo style.
	Waelewa mchinjo ni nini bwana?	Do you understand what mchinjo is?
hitaji	Naelewa sana, maana mahitaji ya watu wengi nayapata hapa.	I know very well, because I ('deal with') the needs of many people here.
	Aha! Basi nataka mchinjo. Mpime, bwana.	Aha! Then I want mchinjo. Measure her, please.
kifua	Nampima kifua thelathini na sita.	I measure [her] bust [at] 36.
kiuno	Pia nampima kiuno ishirini na sita.	And [her] waist at 26.
bega	Pia nampima mabega kumi na nane.	And [her] shoulders at 18.
urefu	Urefu wataka, tuseme, kama arobaini na moja?	The length you want, let's say, about 41?
	Tuseme mpaka hapa. Inatosha.	Let's say to here. This is all right.

Unit 143 (Inaendelea)

-fuata	Je, lini atazifuata nguo hizi?	And when shall she come for these clothes?
-kuta	Leo ni Jumatatu. Nadhani Jumatano ijayo atazikuta tayari.	This is Monday. I think they will be ready next Wednesday.

	Asante sana, Salumu.	Thanks very much.
wakati	Hivi sasa naona kuwa wakati wetu wa kuondoka umefika.	Well, now, I see it's come time for us to leave.
kwenda	Tutakwenda na nguo.	We'll take the clothing with us.
-funga	Tufungie fungie zile nguo.	Could you sort of wrap it up?
-fuata	Hizo nyingine tutazifuata baadaye.	We'll come after those others later.
-sahau	Asante. Lakini umesahau kitu kimoja.	Thank you. But you've forgotten one thing.
mbona	Mbona pesa bado hujanipa.	You haven't paid me yet.
hizi	Aha, pesa hizi! Kiasi gani, bwana?	Oh, of course, the money! How much, sir?
	Ni shilingi thelathini na saba na senti hamsini.	It's Sh. 37.50.
	Haya bwana! Hizi ni shilingi ishirini; hizi sh.; sh. saba; senti hamsini.	O. K.! Here's a 20, a 10, seven shillings and 50 cents.
	Oh, asante sana, bwana, asante.	Thank you very much.
	Haya, kwaheri bwana!	Well, good bye!

Unit 144: Watu wazima na maendeleo

	Naam Bwana Yusufu!	Hello, Yusufu!
	Naam, bwana!	Hello!
	Habari za siku nyingi?	How have you been?
	Nzuri sana bwana.	Very well [thank you].
	Ulikuwa wapi siku hizi?	Where have you been these [last few] days?
safari kazi	Ulikwenda shamba au ulikuwa safarini kazini?	Did you go to the farm or were you on a business trip?

sehemu	Nilikuwa sehemu za Kilosa.	I was around Kilosa.
	Habari za Kilosa?	How are things at Kilosa?
	Habari za Kilosa nzuri sana.	Fine.
jamaa	Hawajambo jamaa wote?	Is everybody fine?
	Hawajambo wote.	[Yes], they're fine.
-nyima	Wanatunyima nini kule?	What do they have more of there than we have?
	Huko wanatunyima mpunga sasa.	They've got more rice than we have.
kidogo vipi	Je, namna gani, umeleta mpunga kidogo au vipi?	Well, what about it? Have you brought a little rice, or what?
-tosha	Nimeleta kidogo; kiasi cha kuwatosha watoto wangu na mimi mwenyewe.	I've brought a little; an amount sufficient for my children and myself.
	Watoto wako tu?	Your children only?
	Naam!	Yes.
	He! Sisi rafiki zako je?	Hey! What about us, your friends?
-karibisha	Ninyi ntakaribishwa siku moja.	You'll be invited one day.
hata	Mimi ningependa hata watoto wako pia waje.	I'd even like for your children to come also.
	Wanaweza kuja siku ya Jumapili saa sita.	They can come Sunday noon.
-karibisha chakula	Ninaweza nikakukaribisheni chakulani.	I can invite you (pl.) for food.
	Asante sana, bwana.	Thank you very much.
tena	Nini tena umeleta?	What else have you brought?
jambo	Mimi sikuleta jambo jingine lo lote.	I didn't bring anything else at all.
-tazama	Nilikwenda kutazama pahali pa kulima.	I went to look at a field.

Unit 145 (Inaendelea)

ukulima	Ukulima wa aina gani?	[For] what kind of farming?
pamoja mbaazi	Eee, nataka kulima mahindi, mtama, mpunga pamoja na mbaazi.	Oh, I want to raise maize, millet, and rice, along with peas.
-acha	Je, Bwana Yusufu, unataka kutuacha nini?	Then I take it you're planning to leave us?
mbona	Mbona una mipango mikubwa mikubwa!	You seem to have great plans!
siyo	Siyo kukuacheni.	It's not a matter of leaving you.
hivyo	Ninafanya hivyo kwa sababu nina watoto wengi.	I'm doing this because I have a large number of children.
	Sasa nina watoto watano.	I have five children now.
-tegemea -tosha	Nikitegemea tu mshahara ninaopata, hauwezi kunitosha.	If I depend entirely on the salary that I'm getting, it won't be enough for me.
namna	Bwana Yusufu, namna gani habari ya kazi huko Kilosa sasa?	Say, what about the work at Kilosa now?
hiyo	Hiyo Community Centre inaendelea vizuri?	Is that Community Center getting along well?
-enda	Inaendelea vizuri sana.	Very well.
-zima	Watu wazima wanasoma.	Adults are studying.
	Wanatumia kitabu kile cha 'Twende Tusome Sote.'	They're using that book called *Twende Tusome Sote*.
kile -anza	Kile kitabu kinachoanzia na 'baba mama.'	That book that begins with *baba*, *mama* [and so forth].
hicho	Kitabu hicho kinaeleza sana mambo mengine vile vile.	That book also contains other subject matter.
	Je, Kiswahili na Kiingereza?	And what about Swahili and English?

-kimbilia	Wengi sana wanakimbilia kwenye Kiswahili kuliko kwenye Kiingereza.	A lot of people are flocking into the Swahili [classes], as compared with the English [classes].
namna	Maendeleo ya wanawake namna gani?	What kind of progress are the women making?
maendeleo	Nasikia maendeleo ya wanawake yamekuja juu sana.	I hear that the level of achievement of the women has risen sharply.
mwanamke	Wanawake wanaendelea vizuri sana.	The women are progressing very nicely.
-staajabu	Kisha inastaajabisha kuona ya kuwa wanawake wanafanya kazi sana.	In fact, it is astonishing to see that the women are working hard.
mwanamume	Wanawake wanafanya kazi sana kuliko wanaume.	The women do a lot more work than the men.
hapa hapa	Basi ni kama hapa hapa Dar es Salaam.	So it's just like here in Dar es Salaam.
darasa	Yale madarasa yetu yanaendelea vizuri sana.	Our classes are getting along very well.
bidii	Wanawake wanaonyesha bidii kuliko wanaume.	The women display more energy than the men.
-tangulia	Wakati wa mtihani, wanawake wanawatangulia wanaume.	At exam time, the women lead the men.

Unit 146 (Inaendelea)

	Je, kuna sababu yo yote?	Is there any reason [for that]?
mambo	Kwanini mambo yanakuwa hivi, Bwana Yusufu?	Why is this so, Yusufu?

sababu	Ndiyo, kuna sababu kubwa mbili:	Yes, there are two important reasons.
nafasi	Kwanza, wanawake wana wakati mwingi zaidi kuliko wanaume.	In the first place, the women have more free time than the men.
pili -fikiri	Pili, wanawake wanafikiri mambo machache zaidi kuliko wanaume.	In the second place, they have fewer things to worry about than men [have].
	Wanaume wanakwenda kazini.	The men go to work.
huwa -rudi	Wanaume huwa wamechoka warudipo kutoka kazini.	The men are generally tired when they come back from work.
pengine	Pengine husema, 'Mimi leo siwezi kwenda shuleni.	Sometimes they say, 'I can't go to school today.'
	Nitakwenda kesho.'	'I'll go tomorrow.'
kumbe	Kumbe wanachelewa!	In that case, they fall behind.
namna	Je, namna gani mpango ule kama huu wa hapa Dar es Salaam?	Say, what about that plan like the one (of) here in Dar es Salaam?
vita ujinga	Mpango ule wa vita vya kupigana na ujinga.	That plan for a war against ['of fighting against] illiteracy?
huo	Mpango huo bado haujaanza huko Kilosa?	Hasn't that plan gotten under way there in Kilosa?
kule	Tunasikitika sana, bwana, kwa sababu kule kuna Community Centre tu.	We very much regret that there's only a Community Center there.
ingawaje jumba	Ingawaje kuna jumba hilo, vita hivyo havijaanza.	Although that building is in existence, that campaign has not yet started.
-tazama karibu	Je, wanatazamia kuanza hivi karibuni?	And are they thinking about starting in the near future?
Bwana Shauri -zungumza	Bila shaka. Nimemsikia Bwana Shauri wa huko akizungumza na wenyeji.	Definitely! I've heard the D. O. of that area discussing it with the local people.

-anza	Wamezungumza juu ya kuanzisha mpango huo.	They have discussed getting that plan under way.

Unit 147 (Inaendelea)

wo wote	Watataka msaada wo wote kutoka hapa?	Will they want any kind of help from here?
-pata	Msaada ni lazima upatikane kutoka hapa.	It is necessary to get aid from here.
-weza	Bila msaada haiwezekani.	Without aid it is impossible.
namna	Haiwezekani, namna gani?	How do you mean, impossible?
uongozi	Jambo lo lote linataka uongozi.	Anything at all requires leadership.
-weza	Bila uongozi haiwezekani.	Without leadership, it's impossible.
-fikiri kule	Wanafikiri hatuwezi kupata viongozi kule Kilosa?	Do they think we won't be able to get leaders there at Kilosa?
kiongozi	Viongozi tunaweza kuwapata.	We'll be able to get leaders, all right.
	Viongozi wanaweza kuja hapa wafunzwe.	Leaders can come here to be trained.
kule kule ndugu	Wakisha onyeshwa watarudi kule kule kuwaonyesha ndugu zao.	Once they have been shown [how], they'll go right back to show their fellow townsmen.
mpango	Sasa Bwana Yusufu, mpango wako unaonyesha kwenda kulima.	Now, then, Yusufu, your plan indicates [that you are] going to farm.

-tazama jamaa	Unatazamia kwenda kuwaongoza jamaa wa Kilosa, au vipi?	Do you anticipate going to lead the people of Kilosa, or what?
-omba	Mpaka niombwe.	If I'm asked.
bila	Bila kuombwa nitasaidia kidogo sana.	I will be of very little assistance if I am not asked.
	Haya, Bwana Yusufu.	Fine, Yusufu.
-tazama	Natazamia baada ya muda mfupi watu watafika huko Kilosa.	I anticipate that people will get to Kilosa within a short time.
mawaidha	Utawapa mawaidha ya kutosha.	You'll [be able to] give them adequate advice.
ule -piga mbele	Bila shaka mpango ule wa vita vya kupigana na ujinga utaendelea mbele.	I'm sure that the literacy campaign will move forward.
-shukuru	Nitashukuru ikiwa watafika.	If they get there, I'll be grateful.
tu	Natumaini watafika tu, Bwana Yusufu.	I think they'll get there all right, Yusufu.
	Haya bwana, asante sana, kwaheri.	Well, thanks a lot. Good bye.

Unit 148: Safari ya kwenda bara

	Habari za siku nyingi, bwana?	How have you been?
	Habari nzuri Bwana Yusufu.	Fine, Yusufu.
-funga	Mbona unafunga funga mizigo, unakwenda wapi?	How come you are packing [your] bags? Where are you going?
bara	Nafunga funga mizigo nataka kwenda bara.	I'm packing [my] bags; I want to go up country.

	Bara! Sehemu gani?	The country? Which part?
Ziwa	Bukoba, huko Jimbo la Ziwa la Magharibi.	Bukoba, in West Lake Province.
fulani ghafla	Nimeambiwa kuwa kumetokea kazi fulani ya ghafla huko.	I've been told that there has come up some kind of unexpected opening there.
kutoka	Hivi kutoka hapa mpaka Bukoba ni maili ngapi?	So how many miles is it from here to Bukoba?
hakika	Bwana Yusufu, siwezi kusema kwa hakika ni maili ngapi.	I can't say for sure how many miles it is.
-pata	Lakini yapata kama maili mia saba na hamsini hivi.	But it's about 750 miles.
-chukua huko	Unachukua muda wa siku ngapi kutoka hapa mpaka huko?	How many days do you take [to get] from here to there?
chombo	Unakwenda kwa chombo gani mpaka huko?	By what means [of transport] are you going there?
muda	Nitachukua muda wa siku tatu hivi.	I'll take (a period of) about three days.
	Nitatoka hapa kwa gari la moshi mpaka Morogoro, Dodoma, Tabora na Mwanza.	I'll go from here by train to Morogoro, Dodoma, Tabora and Mwanza.
-ingia meli	Nikifika Mwanza nitaingia melini.	When I get to Mwanza, I'll take a steamboat.
mle -lala	Mle nitalala siku moja.	I'll be on it over one night.
yake	Asubuhi yake nitafika Bukoba.	The next morning I'll get to Bukoba.
mote daraja	Humo mote utakamosafiri kutoka hapa mpaka Mwanza kwa gari la moshi, utakaa chumba daraja gani?	In all that traveling that you will do from here to Mwanza by train, what class of coach will you take?

-safiri	Utasafiria daraja la pili au la kwanza au la tatu?	Will you travel by second class, or first or third?
-hakikisha -safiri	Bwana Yusufu, siwezi kukuhakikishia ni daraja gani nitakayosafiria.	I can't tell you for sure which class I'll travel [by].
-jua	Mpaka wakati huu sijajua kwa hakika.	Up to this moment I'm not yet sure.
kwamba yaani	Lakini ninalojua ni kwamba nitasafiria daraja la pili, yaani 'second class.'	But what I know is that I'll travel [by] second class.

Unit 149 (Inaendelea)

kitanda	Aha, sasa katika 'second class' mnapata vitanda?	Aha! Now in second class do you get berths.
vimo	Vitanda vimo, Bwana Yusufu.	There are berths in [second class].
chandalua	Hata ukitaka chandalua utapata.	You even get a mosquito net if you want one.
je?	Chakula je?	What about food?
kwa	Chakula unapata kwa pesa.	You pay for the food.
sharti	Ni sharti ulipe, bwana.	You have to pay.
-toa	Ala! Nauli nayo uliyotoa je?	Ala! And what about the fare that you paid?
-safiri -pa	Nauli hiyo unayotoa ni yakukusafirisha tu na kukupa kitanda.	The fare (that you pay) is only for transportation and berth.
huna	Je, wanaweza kukuacha ukiwa huna pesa za kununua chakula?	Tell me, can they leave you behind if you don't have money to buy food?
-ajali	Hiyo, bwana, wao hawajali.	For that, they don't care.

hali sawa	Sasa ufikapo Bukoba, hali ya huko ni sawa ya Dar es Salaam?	Now when you get to Bukoba, is it similar to Dar es Salaam then?
	Aaa, Bwana Yusufu, hapo naweza nikakuhadithia hata kwa siku nzima.	Ah, Yusufu, about that I can tell you a story [that would last] even a whole day.
maana ndiko	Naweza kufanya hivyo kwa maana huko ndiko kwetu.	I can do that because that is where I am from.
hewa	Hali ya hewa ikoje huko?	What is the climate like there?
baridi	Kuna baridi nyingi?	Is it very cold?
sio	Huko baridi sio nyingi sana.	It's not very cold there.
joto -jua	Kule joto hakuna wala halijulikani kama hapa Dar es Salaam.	There there is no heat, and it isn't known, the way it is here in Dar es Salaam.
jani mgomba kijani ~bichi	Kule majani ya miti na migomba ni ya kijani kibichi tu kwa mwaka mzima.	There, the leaves of the trees and bananas are green all year round.
rangi	Kwa hiyo kila kitu kule ni cha rangi ya kijani kibichi tu, sivyo?	Thus, everything there is green, isn't it?
	Naam!	Yes, it is.
sisi	Kwa hiyo ninyi hamna njaa zaidi kama sisi.	And so you don't have more famine than we [have].
kuja bahati	Bwana, kule njaa inakuja kwa bahati mbaya tu.	We have famine there only in the case of very bad luck.
hasa kwenu	Hasa mnatumia chakula gani huko kwenu?	Just what kind of food do you eat there where you live?
kule	Kule chakula kikubwa hasa ni ndizi, maharagwe, nyama, na samaki.	There, the really important food[s] are bananas, beans, meat, and fish.
kula	Hamli wali kama tunavyokula sisi huku?	Don't you eat rice as we do here?

wa	Kule wali tunakula lakini wa njaa tu.	We do eat rice there, but only ('when we can't get anything else.')
	Kwa nini?	Why?
tele	Kwa kuwa kule ndizi ni tele sana.	Because there bananas are very plentiful.

Unit 150 (Inaendelea)

majani	Nimesikia kuwa hamli mboga za majani kwenu.	I've heard that you don't eat green leafy vegetables.
mnyama	Mnasema kuwa ni chakula cha wanyama.	You say that it is food for animals.
	Je, hii ni kweli?	Is that so?
uongo ~tupu	Huo ni uongo mtupu Bwana Yusufu.	That's nothing but a lie!
-elewa	Kule watu wanaelewa.	The people there are not so dumb.
maana	Wanajua maana ya vitamin ni nini.	They know what 'vitamin' means.
-pata	Usipokula chakula cha majani huwezi kupata vitamin.	When you don't eat leafy foods, you can't get vitamins.
-staajabu	Mimi nilistaajabu sana.	I was quite surprised.
	Nilistaajabu niliposikia kuwa kweli watu hawali mboga za majani.	I was surprised when I heard that people really don't eat leafy vegetables.
hiyo hata	Hiyo si kweli hata kidogo.	That's not true at all.
Mungu -tembelea	Omba Mungu uitembelee nchi hiyo siku moja.	Ask God that you may visit that country some day.
-shuhudia	Wewe mwenyewe utashuhudia.	You'll see it for yourself.

-karibia	Bwana Yusufu, sasa naona wakati unakaribia.	I see that the time is approaching, Yusufu.
budi	Sina budi nikimbilie gari la moshi.	I must hurry [to catch] the train.
-andika mara	Vema. Ningefurahi sana kama ungeniandikia barua mara tu ufikapo Mwanza.	Fine. I'd be very happy if you would drop me a line as soon as you get to Mwanza.
habari	Unieleze habari zote za safari uliyosafiri.	Tell me all about the trip you've made.
	Safari ya kutoka hapa Dar es Salaam, Morogoro, Kilosa, Dodoma, Tabora mpaka Mwanza.	The trip from here in Dar es Salaam, Morogoro, Kilosa, Dodoma, and Tabora, as far as Mwanza.
jinsi stima pale	Unieleze jinsi utakavyopanda stima kutoka pale Mwanza mpaka Bukoba.	Tell me how you take the steamer from Mwanza to Bukoba.
	Kwaheri bwana. Safiri salama!	Good bye, and safe trip, ['travel in peace'].
	Kwaheri bwana, asante!	Good bye, and thanks.

SWAHILI

Vocabulary

-A-

abiria	passenger	82
-acha	to leave	99
ada	fee	25
adhuhuri	noon	102
afadhali	it is better	43
afisi (N)	office	103
afya (N)	health	39
-agiza	to order	72
-ahidi	to promise	57
aina (N)	kind, sort	60R
ajabu (N or MA)	amazement	112
-ajabu	to be surprised	106
ajili (N)	cause, reason, sake	80R
~ake	his/her/its	17
akili (N)	ability, intelligence	111
~ako	your	17
alasiri (N)	early afternoon	102
-alika	invite	134
ama... ama...	either...or...	124
-ambia	to tell	66
-ambukizwa	to become infected	59
amekwenda	he is gone	24
-amka	to wake up	114
-amkia	to greet, visit. The essential meaning is 'greet'; it can be used for 'pay a friendly call' but for a visit more formal than one of friendly greeting, as for business etc., -zuru is commonly used.	56
amri (N)	a command; authority, rule	100R
-andika	to write	45
-angalia	to be careful	73
~angu	my	11
-angusha	to cause to fall, drop, even accidentally	47
-anza	begin	30
~ao	their	29
ardhi (N)	soil	111
asante	thank you	10
askari (WA)	policeman	112
asubuhi (N)	morning	1

au	or	14
-azima	to borrow/lend	120

-B-

baada	after	71
baada ya	after	56
baba	father	26
badala (N)	a substitute	113
-badili	to change, exchange	90R
bado	not yet	25
bahari (N)	sea, ocean	60R
bahasha (N)	envelope	103
bahati (N)	luck (good or bad)	113
baiskeli(N)	bicycle	44
bakuli (MA)	bowl, basin	96
balozi	consul	88
bara (N)	the hinterland, 'up-country', country (of); thus Bara Hindi, 'India,' Bara Arabu, 'Arabia.'	70R
barábara	thoroughly very well	39
barabára	road, highway	99
barafu (N)	ice	111
baraza (N)	verandah, place of public council, court	112
baridi (N)	coldness	111
barua	letter	46
basi	nothing more	12
~baya	bad	31
-beba	to carry a child on back or hip	78
bega (MA)	shoulder	142
bei	price	16
biashara (N)	trade, commerce	112
bibi	lady	33
-bichi	unripe	24
bidhaa (N)	merchandise	103
bila shaka	undoubtedly	85
bilauri (N)	glass	47
birika (MA)	pot (tea)	96
~bivu	ripe	17
boma	District Office	25
bonde (MA)	valley, low-lying country	100R
bora	best	108
~bovu	bad (i.e. spoiled)	19
bunduki (N)	gun	112

bure	for nothing	68
bwana	master, sir	1

-C-

-cha	to dawn	114
~chache	few	18
~chafu	dirty	90
-chagua	to choose	124
chai	tea	14
chakula	food	8
chama (VI)	union, party	110R
chandalua (VI)	mosquito net	94
-changa	to collect	124
~changa	young	78
-changanya	to mix	70R
cheche (N)	a small slice	120R
-chelewa	to be late	63
-chemsha	to heat	70R
cheti (VI)	certificate	112
-cheza	to play	70
chini (N)	below, under	107
-choka	to become tired	125
-chosha	to make tired	90R
-choma	to burn, apply fire to	100
chombo	vessel. Used of utensils and ships at sea	47
-chota	to take a little water/firewood	121
chumba (VI)	room	104
chumvi (N)	salt	36
-chunga	to care for	99
-chungulia	to examine carefully	125
chungwa (MA)	orange	9
chuo (VI)	Alone usually means 'school,' chuo kikuu 'college or university'	51
chupa (N)	bottle	48
chweo (MA)	appears in plu. machweo 'sunset, west'	135

-D-

dada	sister	65
dakika (N)	a minute	125
damu	blood	62
-danganya	to cheat, deceive	123
dansi	dance	70

daraja (MA) or (N)	bridge	105
darasa	class	51
dari (N)	upper floor	104
dawa (N)	medicine	26
debe (MA)	a four-gallon tin	100R
desturi (N)	a custom, practice	73
-dhani	to think	17
-dhuru	to harm	83
dini (N)	religion	51
dirisha (MA)	window	114
dobi	laundryman	90
~dogo	small	20
duka (MA)	shop	60R

-E-

ee	a casual way of saying 'yes'	10
~ekundu	red	81
-elekea	to be directed toward	122
-elewa	understand	21
-eleza	explain	27
-elimisha	to educate	80R
elimu (N)	education	31
~embamba	narrow	100R
embe (MA) or (N)	mango	9
-enda	go	23
-endelea	to continue	30
endeleo	appears in plu. maendeleo 'progress'	145
-endesha	to run (cause to go)	67
-enea	to fit	86
~enyewe	-self	45
-epa	to avoid, escape	99
~erevu	shrewd, clever	111
~eupe	white	86
~eusi	black	81

-F-

-faa	to be suitable	60
-fa	to die	124
-fagia	to sweep	115
-fahamu	to know, bear in mind	116
faida (N)	profit, advantage	90R
-fanana	to resemble one another	70R
-fanya	make, do	23
farasi	horse	40
fedha (N)	money	102
-ficha	to hide something	124
-fika	to arrive	80

-fikiri	to think	47
fitina (N)	jealousy, discord	111
forodha (N)	customs house	135
foronya (N)	pillowcase	93
-fua	to launder	91
-fuata	to follow	71
fujo (MA)	disturbance	76
-fukuza	to pursue	125
fulana (N)	undervest	138
fulani	such-and-such	90R
fundi	skilled worker of any kind	44
-funga	to lock	104
-fungua	to unlock	104
-funika	to close	63
-funua	to open	64
funzo (MA)	course of instruction	80R
˜fupi	short	120
furaha (N)	rejoicing	70
-furahi	be happy	28
-futa	to wipe up	43

-G-

gani?	what kind?	8
gari la moshi	train	40
gavana	governor	60R
-gawanya	to divide up, distribute	90R
-geuka	to turn	101
ghali	expensive	60R
gharama	expense	69
giza (sg. of MA)	darkness	48
godoro (MA)	mattress	93
gogo (MA)	log	105
-goma	to refuse; to strike (work)	110R
gugu (MA)	weed	98
˜gumu	hard, difficult	69
gunia (MA)	gunny sack	130

-H-

haba	few	69
habari (N)	news	1
hafifu	poor in quality	108
haja (N)	need	131
haki (N)	justice	68
hakika (N)	certainty	56

hali (N)	condition	59
-hama	to move from one place to another	57
Hamisi	given name (male)	12
hamu (N)	desire, longing	68
hapa	here	21
hapana	no	16
haraka (N)	haste	49
-haribika	to get broken	44
-haribu	to injure	44
harufu (N)	scent	131
harusi (N)	wedding (see arusi)	80
hasa	exactly, very much	78
hasara (N)	loss, damage	100R
hatari (N)	danger	99
hati (N)	document	113
haya	O.K.	85
hazina (N)	treasury	110R
hebu	'well, then!'	107
hesabu (N)	arithmetic	51
heshima (N)	respect	111
-hitaji	we need	18
-hitimu	to finish training	65
hodari	clever	33

hoja (N)	necessity	67
homa (N)	fever	58
hotuba (N)	a speech	140
-hudhuria	to attend	66
huko	there	38
huo	that	20
huwa	generally	146

-I-

idara (N)	department	31
ijapokuwa	even so, even if, although	41
ikiwa	if, whether	24
ila	except, unless, but	111
ili	in order that	70R
~ingi	many	18
-ingia	to enter	48
~ingine	some, other	33
-isha	finish	24
ishara (N)	signal	101
-ishi	dwell	37
isipokuwa	except that	126
-ita	to call	88
'itakiwavyo	as is desired	142

-J-

-ja	come	27
-jaa	to fill up	38
-jali	to give honor to	100
-jalia	to assist, enable, show favor to, of God's will	51
jamaa (N. pers.)	family	29
jambo (MA)	matter, affair, trouble (pl. mambo)	1
jana	yesterday	36
jani (MA)	leaf	75
-jaribu	to try	42
jasho (MA)	sweat	103
je	(used to introduce a yes-no question)	8
-je	how? how about?	19
jembe (MA)	hoe	74
-jenga	to build	110R
jengo (MA)	building	134
-jeruhi	to bruise, wound	62
jibu (MA)	answer, reply	73
-jifunza	to study	39
jiko (MA)	stove, oven, kitchen, cooking place (pl. meko)	42
jimbo (MA)	province	29

jina (MA)	name	34
jino	tooth (pl. meno)	61
jinsi (N)	way, method (often used with concords of VI class)	80R
jioni	evening	48
-jitahidi	try hard	127
jiwe (MA)	stone (pl. mawe)	22
-jongea	to move, make a motion	125
jozi (N)	pair	108
jua (MA)	sun	100
-jua	know	16
juhudi (N)	effort, exertion	80R
-julikana	to be known	70R
Jumamosi	Saturday	70
Jumatano	Wednesday	56
jumba (MA)	Generally used of very large buildings, mansions (Government House or the Sultan's Palace) etc.	
jumla (kwa) jumla	altogether	90
-jumlisha	add	66
juu (N)	on, concerning, top	35
juzi (MA)	day before yesterday	65

-K-

-kaa	live (reside), remain	20
-kaanga	fry	131
kabáti	cupboard	97
kabila (MA)	tribe	37
kabisa	quite	19
kabla (N)	before	70R
kadhalika	likewise, similarly	90R
kahawa (N)	coffee	14
kalamu (N)	pen	45
~kali	sharp, fierce	122
kama	as	60R
-kamata	to seize	125
kama vile	for example	60R
kamba (N)	rope, cord	120
kanga (N)	woman's garment	139
kanisa (MA)	church	41
kanuni (N)	a general rule	102
kaptura (N)	shorts	138
karatasi (N)	paper	103
karibu (N)	near	10
-kasirika	to be angry	114

kasisi	priest	80
kaskazini (N)	north	21
-kata	to cut	46
kati (N)	between, among	110
katika	in	29
katikati (N)	in the midst	60R
-kauka	to get dry	92
~kavu	dry	70R
kawaida (N)	custom	17
-kawia	to take a long time	115
kazi (N)	work	30
kelele (MA)	noise	94
kengele (N)	bell	101
kesho (N)	tomorrow	40
kiasi (VI)	amount	82
kiazi (VI)	potato	18
kibarua	day labor, one day laborer (VI anim.)	35
kibao (VI)	a small board	135
kiberiti (VI)	match	49
kibwebwe (VI)	style of women's dress	142
kichwa (VI)	head	25
kidole (VI)	finger, toe	62
kidonge (VI)	tablet	58

kifaa (VI)	a household necessity	131
kifaranga (VI anim.)	chick (dim.)	100
kifaru (VI anim.)	rhino (also faru (N anim.))	122
kifua (VI)	chest	142
kifungo (VI)	button	92
kijana (VI anim.)	young fellow	35
kijiji (VI)	village	22
kijiko (VI)	spoon	95
kijiti (VI)	small tree, underbrush	74
kijito (VI)	dim. of mto 'river'	118
kikapu (VI)	basket	83
kike	femininity (see Unit 55.)	55
kiko (VI)	pipe	116
kikombe (VI)	cup	47
-kimbia	to run away	99
kinanda (VI)	stringed instrument, gramophone	104
kinywaji (VI)	a drink	50
kiongozi (VI anim.)	leader	110R
kioo (VI)	piece of glass, mirror	115
kipande (VI)	piece	86
kipimo (VI)	measurement	86
kisahani (VI)	saucer, small plate	47
kisasa	modern-style	87
kisehemu (VI)	a small section	90R
kisima (VI)	well, water hole	121
kisu (VI)	knife	53
kitabu (VI)	book	63
kitambaa (VI)	cloth, material	87
kitambo (VI)	early	75
kitanda (VI)	bed	93
kiti (VI)	chair	43
kitoweo (VI)	a relish	70R
kitu (VI)	thing	23
kiturguu (VI)	onion	32
kiume	masculinity (See Unit 55.)	55
kiuno (VI)	waist	81
kiwanja (VI)	plot of ground	90R
kizaramo	(language of the WaZaramo)	37
kodi (N)	tax	25
-kohoa	to cough	60
-kopa	to borrow	73
kopo (MA)	metal vessel	131
kosa (MA)	a mistake	64
-kosa	to lack, err	67

koti	coat	90
-kua	to grow	100
-kubali	to accept, to agree	67
~kubwa	large	20
kufuli (N/MA)	padlock	104
kuku (N anim.)	chicken	90R
kuliko	than, Lit. 'where there is/are' used particularly in comparisons	60R
kumbe!	(expression of surprise)	34
-kumbuka	to remember	46
kumi (MA)	ten	19
kuna	there is	8
kuni (N)	firewood	120
-kunja	to fold, wrap up, crease	120R
-kusanyika	to be gathered together	110R
kusini (N)	south	21
-kusudia	plan	40
-kuta	to find	88
-kutania	to meet one another	110R

~kuu	big, principal	39
kwa	by, with, at	15
kwa heri	with peace, to, with, in happiness	44
kwa hivyo	therefore	32
kwamba	that, Lit. 'to say;' also 'ya kwamba'	57
kweli	true	55
kwenye	where there is	81

-L-

la	no	13
labda	perhaps	56
laini	soft, smooth	74
lakini	but	15
-lala	to sleep, lie down	114
-laza	to cause to lie	120R
lázima	necessary	42
-lazimu	to be necessary	45
-lea	to rear	100
-lenga	to aim	124
leo	today	13
-leta	bring	16
-letea	to bring for/to	8
-lewa	to become drunk	52

-lia	to cry, weep, roar	78
-lima	to cultivate	74
-linda	to protect	99
-lingana	be alike	137
lini?	when?	39
-lipa	pay	25
livu	leave time	56
-loweka	to wet something	91
lugha (N)	language	30

-M-

maadam	since	141
maana (MA)	because	57
maana (N)	meaning (sometimes MA pl.)	64
maarufu	famous	60R
mabishano (MA)	dispute	110R
mafua (MA)	cold in the head	61
mafuta (MA)	kerosene; any oil or fat	48
magharibi (N)	west	21
mahali (PA)	place	41
maharagwe (MA)	beans	32
mahari (N)	Nowadays used for 'bride price' as well as Islamic 'dower, dowry'	79
mahindi (MA)	maize (more than one ear)	19
mahitaji (MA)	needs	31
makaa (pl. MA)	coal, charcoal	120R
maji (MA)	water	43
-maliza	to finish	50
mama (N pers.)	mother	41
mambo	matters (pl. of jambo)	27
manufaa (MA)	useful things, tools	100R
mapema (MA).	early, soon	114
mapumziko (MA)	place/time of resting	103
mara (N)	time	30
mashariki (N)	east	21
mashtaka (pl. MA)	accusations	110R
mashuhuri	famous	95
maskini	misfortune, a poor man	42
matata (MA)	complications	76
matembezi (MA)	outing	40
matoke (pl. MA)	type of food	70R
mavuno (MA)	harvest	72

mawaidha	advice (also, mavidha)	147
mazao (MA)	crops	33
maziwa (MA)	milk	14
mbaazi (N)	peas	145
mbali-mbali	various	60R
mbavuni	by the side	78
mbegu (N)	seed	75
mbele (N)	ahead	88
mbeleko (N)	cloth or sling for carrying a child	78
mbio (N)	speed	125
mboga (N)	(general word for leafy vegetables)	36
mbolea	fertilizer	72
mbona?	why? Lit. 'do I observe' and should only be used when this sense fits.	58
mbu (N anim.)	mosquitoes	59
mbuzi (N anim.)	goat	90R
mchezo (MI)	game	40
mchinjo (MI)	style of womens dress	142

mchumba (WA)	boy/girl friend fiancé(e)	79
mchuzi (MI)	gravy, soup, sauce	70R
mdanganyifu (WA)	a deceiver	123
-mea	to grow	98
meza (N)	table	46
-meza	to shoot out	75
mfereji (MI)	ditch for carrying water	121
mganga (WA)	doctor	128
mgeni (WA)	guest	93
mgongo (MI)	back	76
mgonjwa (WA)	a sick person	26
mguu (MI)	leg, foot	53
mia	hundred	69
mimi	I	14
mji(MI)	town	20
mjomba (WA)	kinship term used reciprocally by brother and son of a woman	113
mjumbe (WA)	messenger, representative	110R
mkasi (MI)	scissors	98

mkate (MI)	bread	11
mke (WA)	wife	29
mkono (MI)	arm, hand	53
mkono wa kulia	right hand	89
mkono wa kushoto	left hand	88
mkubwa (WA)	the chief	20
mkuki (MI)	spear	122
mkulima (WA)	farmer	32
mlango (MI)	door	62
mlima (MI)	mountain	110
mlimaji (WA)	grower	129
mlinzi (WA)	guard	137
mmea (MI)	plant	32
mno	much	108
mnunuzi (WA)	customer	85
mnyama (WA)	wild animal	113
-moja	one	19
moto (MI)	fire	92
motokaa (N)	automobile	40
moyo (MI)	heart	73
mpagazi (WA)	laborer	35
mpaka	to, until	51

mpaka (MI)	boundary	110
mpango (MI)	plan, arrangement system	70
mpishi (WA)	a cook	34
mpumbavu (WA)	a fool, dupe	123
mpunga (MI)	rice	32
msaada (MI)	assistance	67
mshahara (MI)	pay	31
mshipa (MI)	vein, artery, nerve, tendon	62
mshono (MI)	style, cut	142
msitu (MI)	land covered with bushes, small trees	119
mstari (MI)	line	121
msumari (MI)	nail	118
mswaki (MI)	twig used as tooth brush	115
mtaa (MI)	street	138
mtama (MI)	millet	70R
mti (MI)	tree	74
mtihani (MI)	a school examination	65
mto (MI)	pillow	93
mto (MI)	river	110
mtoto (WA)	child	11
mtu (WA)	person	38

mtumishi (WA)	employee	127
mtungi (MI)	earthern pitcher, water jar	121
muda (MI)	period of time	35
muhogo (MI)	cassava	32
muhuri (MI)	postmark Also 'seal.' For 'postmark' generally alma ya posta, chapa ya posta.	46
mume (WA)	husband	80
Mungu	God	51
mvua (N)	rain	32
-mwaga	to spill	43
-mwagika	to become spilled	43
mwaka (MI)	year	32
mwalimu (WA)	teacher	61
mwana-chama (WA)	member	110R
mwana-funzi (WA)	student	69
mwanamke	woman (pl. wanawake)	55
mwana-mume	man (pl. wanaume)	55
mwananchi (WA)	citizen	141
mwandishi (WA)	secretary	39
mwendo (MI)	journey	82
mwenyeji (WA)	the regular possessor, inhabitant	70R
mwenzi (WA)	companion	92
mwezi (MI)	month, moon	68
mwiba (MI)	thorn	98
mwiko (MI)	large wooden spoon	70R
mwili (MI)	body	115
mwisho (MI)	end, last (price)	73
mwishowe	finally	51
mwitu (MI)	forest	110
mwundo (MI)	shape, form	107
mzazi (WA)	parent	26
mzungu (WA)	a European	34

-N-

na	and	8
nafasi (N)	opportunity	56
nafuu (N)	profit, gain	76
namna (N)	kind, sort	59
nanasi (MA)	pineapple	16
nani?	who?	20
nauli (N)	fare	82
-nawa	to wash face/hands	114

nazi (N)	coconut/coconuts	16
nchi (N)	land, country	27
ndani (N)	inside of	93
ndege (N pers.)	bird, airplane	65
ndizi (N)	banana/bananas	9
ndoo (N)	bucket	121
ndugu (N pers.)	kinsman of same generation	53
~nene	thick, stout	122
neno (MA)	word	63
-ng'aa	to shine	92
ng'ambo (N)	on the other side	90
-ng'ang'ania	to stick to	97
~ngapi?	how many?	36
-ng'oa	to uproot	116
-ngoja	to wait	79
ngoma (N)	drum	70
ng'ombe (N anim.)	cow, ox	13
nguo	cloth, clothes	41
-nguruma	to rumble, roar	125
nguruwe	pig	13
ni	is/are	17
-ni	in, at, on	23
nibu (N)	nib	45
nini	what?	19
njaa (N)	hunger	11
nje (N)	outside of	89
njia (N)	path	71
njia panda	junction	88
njugu (N)	groundnuts	19
-nuka	to smell bad	116
-nukia	to smell good	116
-nung'unika	to complain	35
-nunulia	buy for	26
-nunua	buy	23
nyama	meat	13
nyasi (N pl.)	grass	98
nyati (N anim.)	buffalo	122
-nyesha	to rain	72
-nyima	withhold, deprive	144
-nyoa	to shave	115
-nyoka	to become straight	117
-nyonya	to suck	78
nyuma (N)	after, on far side of	110
nyumba (N)	house	22
-nywa	to drink	50

-O-

~o ~ote	any at all	41
-oa	to marry	79
Ochieng	(a Luo surname)	30
-oga	to bathe	115
-ogelea	to swim	38
-okota	to pick up	120
-omba	to request	103
-ona	see	24
-onana	to see one another	98
-ondoa	to get rid of	91
-ondoka	to leave	36
-onekana	to seem	59
-ongea	to converse	63
-ongeza	to increase something, to add to	120R
-ongoza	to lead, cause to go right	110R
-onja	to taste, try	100
orofa (N)	story	89
~ote	all	47
-otesha	raise	32
ovyo	at random, carelessly	111

-P-

-pa	to give	60
-paa	scrape off	131
pahali (PA)	dialect variant of mahali	135
-paka	to apply	103
-pakulia	to divide	47
-palilia	to weed	75
pambo (MA)	furniture, ornament	104
pamoja	together	56
~pana	broad, flat	100R
-panda	take	40
-panda	raise	32
panga (MA)	large knife	74
pasi (N)	iron (for pressing)	92
-pasua	to split something	120
-pata	get	31
-patikana	be available	24
pato (MA)	income (appears in plu. mapato)	141
peke	solitude	47
-peleka	take	33
-penda	like, love	31
pengine	sometimes	17
pesa (N)	coins	49

~pi?	which?	47
pia	also, too	28
-piga	to hit, strike	58
-pika	to cook	70R
pikipiki (N)	motorcycle	133
pilipili (N)	pepper	36
-pima	to measure	77
-pinda	to bend	117
-pita	to pass	71
~pole	kind, gentle	60
-pokea	to accept	80R
pombe (N)	beer	52
-pona	recover from illness or injury	62
-ponda	to crush by pounding	70R
-poteza	to lose	46
povu (MA)	froth, lather, suds	120R
pua (N)	nose	61
-pumzika	to rest	77
-punga hewa	to change air	38
-punguza	to make less	83
pwani	beach	38
~pya	new	40

-R-

rafiki (N pers.)	friend	14
rafu (N)	shelf	104
raha (N)	rest, comfort	100R
rahisi	cheap	84
rangi (N)	color	86
-raruka	to get torn	87
ratli (N)	1 lb.	132
~refu	long, tall	82
risasi (N)	bullet	122
robo (N)	1/4	72
roho or tamaa (N)	spirit	46
-rudi	to return	56
-rudishwa	to be caused to return	57
-ruhusu	to allow	99
-ruka	to fly, jump	65

-S-

saa (N)	hour	36
sababu (N)	reason	41
sabuni (N)	soap	91
-sadiki	to believe	123

safari (N)	journey	122
safi	clean	41
-safiri	to travel	65
-saga	to pulverize	70R
sahani (N)	plate	47
-sahau	to forget	95
-saidia	help	31
salama (N)	with peace	28
-salimia	to convey regards to	60
samaki (N anim.)	fish	13
sana	very much	15
sanduku (N or MA)	box	49
sasa	now	13
sauti (N)	voice	125
sawa	like	61
sawa-sawa	equally, just the same	124
sehemu (N)	section	37
-sema	speak, say	30
senti (N)	cent (E. African), small change	19
serikali (N)	government	27
shabaha (N)	target	124
shamba (MA)	farm	71
-shangilia	to make rejoicing for	80
sheria (N)	law	101
shida (N)	difficulty	106
-shika	grasp, take	84
shilingi (N)	shilling	68
shimo (MA)	pit, hole	119
-shinda	spend the day	40
-shinda	to surpass, overcome	80R
shingo (N)	neck	61
shoka (MA)	axe	120
-shtaki	to accuse, prosecute	112
shughuli (N)	business	60R
-shughulika	be busy	60
shuka (N)	sheet	93
-shuka	to disembark	82
-shukuru	thank	134
shule (N)	school	25
si	is not/are not	17
siafu (N anim.)	'driver ants' (kind of red ant)	119
siagi (N)	butter	15

sifa (N)	praise, reputation	100R
-sifu	to praise	70R
sijambo	I do not have trouble	1
-sikia	hear	37
-sikiliza	to listen	101, 124
-sikitika	to be sorry	58
siku (N)	day	28
-simama	to stand up	80
-simamia	to stand by, oversee	80R
simba (N anim.)	lion	122
simu (N)	telephone, telegraph	81
sindano (N)	needle	58
sinema (N)	cinema	70
sita	six	36
siyo	(negative of ndio)	19
-sogeza	to bring near	96
soko (MA)	market	23
soli (N)	sole	108
-soma	to read, study	51
somo (MA)	an academic subject	51
starehe (N)	welfare, comfort	10
-stiri	to conceal	140
sufuria (N or MA)	a metal cooking pot	120R
-sugua	to polish	92
sukari (N)	sugar	14
-sukuma	to push along	44
-sumbua	to annoy	94
supu(N)	soup	13
sura (N)	appearance	135
suruali (N)	pair of trousers	86

-T-

taa(N)	a light	48
taabu (N)	trouble, toil	110R
tabibu (daktari)	doctor	61
tafadhali	please, I ask you	8
-tafuta	to look for	46
tajiri	rich	138
-taka	want	8
-tamu	sweet, pleasant	70R
-tandika	to spread	93
tangu	since	69
-tangulia	to lead	71
-tano	five	24
-tarajia	to expect	133

tarehe (N)	date	122
-tawanya	to scatter	90R
tayari	ready	24
-tazama	look at	26
-tegemea	depend	127
-teka	to draw water	121
-telemka	to descend	119
-teleza	cause to come down; be slippery	118
-tembea	to go for a walk	38
-tembelea	to visit	95
tembo (N anim.)	elephant	122
tena	again	37
-tengeneza	to repair	44
thamani (N)	price, value	127
thumni (N)	50¢ piece	90
-tia	pour	48
-tii	to obey	100
-toa	to take away	42
-toboa	to bore a hole in	121
tofauti (N)	difference, discrepancy	90R
-toka	come from, go from	27

tokeo (MA)	results (appears in plu. matokeo)	136
-tolewa	to be put out, be taken out, produced	67
tope (MA)	mud, mire	118
-toroka	to run away	124
-tosha	be sufficient	15
-toza	make to pay	127
tu	only	12
-tuma	to send	65
-tumaini	to hope	51
-tumbuka	to have a cut or hole made in	118
-tumia	to use	14
-tumwa	be sent	27
tunda (MA)	a piece of fruit	8
-tundika	to hang up, suspend	120R
tundu (N or MA)	nest, hole	119
-tunza	to care for	77
tunzo (MA)	care	77
-twa	to set (of the sun)	80
twiga (N anim.)	giraffe	125

-U-

-ua	to kill	125
ua (MA)	flower	98

ua (U)	hedge, yard	93
ubao (U-N)	blackboard, board, plank	64
udevu (U-N)	a hair of the face	115
udongo	mud	22
ufunguo (U-N)	key	104
ugali (U)	stiff porridge	70R
ugonjwa (U)	illness	59
uji (U)	porridge	8
ujinga (U)	ignorance	146
ukarani (U)	the work or status of being a clerk	31
ukurasa (U - N)	page	63
Ulaya (U)	Europe	65
-uliza	to ask	93
uma (U-N)	rake, fork (gardening)	74
umaskini (U)	poverty	123
umbali (U)	distance	137
-umia	be hurt	53
umri (U)	age	55
unga (U)	flour, meal	70R
-unga	to join	80

-ungua	to burn	42
upande (U)	direction	21
upesi (U)	quickly	87
upishi (U)	work or status of a cook	34
urefu (U)	length	86
usaha (U)	pus	62
ushuru (U)	tax, duty	140
usingizi (U)	sleep	94
uso (U-N)	face	114
utetezi (U)	politics	51
~vuguvugu	lukewarm	91
-uza	sell	19

-V-

-vaa	to put on clothes	41
vazi (MA)	garment	142
vile-vile	also	60R
-vimba	swell	62
vita (VI)	war	146
~vivu	lazy	111

-vua	to fish	113
-vunjika	to become broken	45
-vuja	to leak	121
-vuka	to pass safely over	118
vumbi (N)	dust	115

-W-

-wa	be	36
-wahi	be in time, be ready	126
wakati (U-N)	time, occasion	52
-wala	neither, nor	76
wali (U)	cooked rice	70R
wanga(U)	starch	91
wapi?	where?	20
-washa	to ignite	48
wasiwasi(U)	doubt	73
wazi	open, evident	100R
wazo	thoughts - appears in plu. mawazo	140
wee	you	133
-weka	to put	46
wembe (U-N)	razor	115
wewe	you	32
-weza	to be able	44
wiki (N)	week	80
wilaya (N)	district, province	90R
-winda	to hunt (game)	112
wino(U)	ink	45
wivu (U)	jealousy, envy	111

-Y-

ya kwamba	that...	65
yaani	that is to say	80R
yai (MA)	egg	8
yeye	he	29

-Z-

-zaa	bear (fruit, seed)	77
zaidi	many	69
zamani	time, ancient times	80R
-zidi	to increase	69
-zima	good (i.e. not rotten)	19

-zito	heavy	81
-zoea	to become familiar with	90R
zoea	habit - appears in plu. mazoea	137
-zuia	to prevent	79
-zunguka	to go around and around	100R
-zungumza	to converse	146
-zuri	good	17

☆ U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE : 1963 O - 652216 (74)